FM 3-28 (Version 6.4)

30 April 2010 (Draft)

CIVIL SUPPORT OPERATIONS
Revised Final Draft—Version 6.4

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: **Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited**.

Headquarters, Department of the Army

Field Manual
No. 3-28 (Draft Version 6.4)

Headquarters
Department of the Army
Washington, DC, (Draft)

CIVIL SUPPORT OPERATIONS
Revised Final Draft—Version 6.4

DRAG Version

Contents

Page

PREFACE ..... **vi**

INTRODUCTION ..... **viii**

Chapter 1 THE DOMESTIC ENVIRONMENT **1-1**
The Army and civil support Operations 1-1
The United States Constitution and the Army 1-3
Components of the Army and Civil Support 1-4
Key Aspects of Domestic Operations 1-7
Primary Civil Support Tasks 1-11
Fundamentals of Civil support 1-13
Training for Civil Support Operations 1-16

Chapter 2 A COMPREHENSIVE APPROACH FOR CIVIL SUPPORT **2-1**
National Guidance for Domestic Emergencies 2-1
Tiered Response 2-11
National Guard Civil Support 2-20
Department of Defense Support of Civil Authorities 2-22

Chapter 3 PROVIDE SUPPORT IN RESPONSE TO A DISASTER **3-30**
The Nature of a Disaster 3-30
Response to domestic Disasters 3-31
National Guard Response 3-33
Response by Federal military forces 3-37
Phases of Disaster Response 3-42
Considerations for disaster repsonse 3-43

Distribution Restriction:

***This publication supersedes FM x-xx-x**

Chapter 4 DOMESTIC CBRNE CONSEQUENCE MANAGEMENT 4-1
CBRNE Threats 4-1
National Guard CBRNE Response 4-7
Department of Defense CBRNE Response 4-9
Pandemics 4-13
Agricultural Diseases 4-17
Considerations for CBRNE Consequence Managment 4-18

Chapter 5 SUPPORT TO CIVILIAN LAW ENFORCEMENT AGENCIES 5-1
Review of Military Support to Law Enforcement 5-1
Types of Support to Law Enforcement 5-4
Law Enforcement Considerations 5-8

Chapter 6 PROVIDE OTHER SUPPORT AS REQUIRED 6-1
National Events 6-1
Support Provided Directly to a Federal Agency 6-2
Protect Critical infrastructure 6-3
Provide Wildland firefighting Support 6-3
Planned Community Support 6-4

Chapter 7 LEGAL CONSIDERATIONS 7-1
Powers of a State Governor 7-1
Authorities for Federal Military Support 7-2
the Posse Comitatus Act 7-5
The Insurrection Act 7-6
The National Emergencies Act 7-6
Mobilization of the Reserve Component 7-7
Rules for the Use of Force 7-7
Intelligence Oversight – rules and restrictions 7-10
Explosive Ordnance Disposal Support 7-13
Isolation and Quarantine 7-13
Liability 7-14

Chapter 8 SUSTAINMENT—LOGISTICS AND PERSONNEL SERVICES 8-1
Deployment of Forces 8-2
Logistics in Civil Support 8-4
Base Support Installation 8-9
Logistics Considerations 8-10
Personnel Support 8-19

Chapter 9 ARMY HEALTH SERVICE SUPPORT 9-1
Emergency Medical Support 9-1
Medical logistics 9-9
US Army Medical Command Specialized Response Capabilities 9-10

Appendix A PLANNING CHECKLISTS A-1

Appendix B SAFETY B-1

Appendix C NATIONAL GUARD CIVIL SUPPORT TEAMS C-1

Appendix D NATIONAL GUARD CBRNE ENHANCED RESPONSE FORCE D-1

Appendix E CBRNE CONSEQUENCE MANAGEMENT RESPONSE FORCE E-1

Appendix F AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL F-1
Appendix G SEARCH AND RESCUE G-1
Appendix H UNMANNED AIRCRAFT SYSTEMS IN CIVIL SUPPORT H-1
Appendix I INCIDENT COMMAND SECTIONS AND SUPPORT FUNCTIONS I-1
Appendix J AUTL CROSS WALK FOR STABILITY AND CIVIL SUPPORT J-1
Appendix K MEDIA CONSIDERATIONS K-1
GLOSSARY Glossary-1
REFERENCES References-1
INDEX Index-1

Figures

Introductory Figure – Full Spectrum Operations viii
Figure 1-1. Range of Response 1-2
Figure 1-2. Civil support tasks with examples 1-11
Figure 2-1. NIMS incident command system staff 2-4
Figure 2-2. Example of NIMS unified command and management structure 2-5
Figure 2-3: Expanding command and coordination under NIMS 2-5
Figure 2-4. A broad overview of emergency response under the Stafford Act 2-7
Figure 2-5. FEMA regions and headquarters 2-17
Figure 2-6. An example Joint Field Office showing command staff, sections, and branches 2-18
Figure 2-7. An example of National Guard organization within a state 2-21
Figure 2-8. Example of DCO and DCE organization 2-24
Figure 2-9. USNORTHCOM and USARNORTH structure 2-26
Figure 2-10. A Pre-scripted mission assignment for Communications Support 2-29
Figure 3-1. Forces required for a typical incident or emergency 3-31
Figure 3-2. Military requirements in a major catastrophe 3-32
Figure 3-3. State response and National Guard echelons—Illinois example. 3-35
Figure 3-4. Multiple area commands and National Guard forces 3-35
Figure 3-5. The Federal Request for Assistance (RFA) process 3-39
Figure 3-6. Example of USNORTHCOM structure for DSCA 3-40
Figure 3-7. USNORTHCOM phases of disaster response 3-42
Figure 3-8. Example parallel command structure 3-46
Figure 3-9. Multi-state disaster requiring major commitment of Federal military forces 3-47
Figure 4-1. World health Organization pandemic influenza phases 4-14
Figure 6-1. Geographic Area Control Centers for Wildland Fire Fighting 6-4
Figure 7-1. An Example of a Dual-Status Command 7-5

Figure 7-2. Illustration of the continuum of force 7-9
Figure 7-3. Example RUF Card carried by National Guard forces 7-9
Figure 8-1. FEMA logistics centers 8-5
Figure 8-2. USARNORTH sustainment structure 8-7
Figure 8-3. Example BSI selection 8-10
Figure 8-4. FORCE PROVIDER module for 550 persons 8-17
Figure 8-5. Example joint movement center organization 8-18
Figure D-1. Example of CERFP organization D-2
Figure D-2. Example of CERFP patient flow D-3
Figure E-1. The WMD-CST, CERFP, and CCMRF E-1
Figure E-2. Organization of the CCMRF E-2
Figure E-3. Joint disaster response phases E-4
Figure I-1. The fully manned joint field office I-1
Figure I-2. The Emergency Support Functions (ESF) and their lead agencies I-2
Figure I-3. The Operations Section of a Joint Field Office I-3
Figure I-4. The plans branch of a Joint Field Office I-4
Figure I-4. The Logistics section of a Joint Field Office I-5
Figure I-5. The Finance and Administration section of a Joint Field Office I-6

Tables

Introductory Table-1: Quick reference terms, acronyms, and abbreviations x
Table 1-1. Comparison of State Active Duty, Title 32, and Title 10 Status 1-7
Table 1-2: Key Military Aspects of Domestic Operational Environments 1-8
Table 2-1. Emergency support function annexes 2-8
Table 2-2. National planning scenarios 2-11
Table 4-1. National planning scenarios related to CBRNE 4-2
Table 4-2. National Guard CBRNE response capabilities 4-7
Table 4-3. DOD CBRNE response capabilities 4-10
Table 7-1. Individuals and groups protected by intelligence oversight rules 7-10
Table 7-2. Intelligence oversight authorities 7-10
Table 7-3. Current Incident awareness and assessment support modules 7-11
Table 7-4. Prohibitions on information acquisition 7-12
Table 8-1. USARNORTH Phase I sustainment actions 8-7
Table 8-2. USARNORTH Phase II sustainment actions 8-8
Table 8-3. USARNORTH Phase III sustainment actions 8-8
Table 8-4. USARNORTH phase IV sustainment actions 8-9
Table 8-5. Costs eligible for reimbursement 8-13
Table 8-6. Costs ineligible for reimbursement 8-14
Table 8-7. Mortuary services under ESF #8 8-15
Table 9-1. Functional support areas covered by ESF #8 9-1

Table 9-2. DOD public health and medical support responsibilities in ESF #8 9-2
Table 9-3. Integrated medical surveillance tasks 9-5
Table 9-4. Disaster-related health threats 9-6
Table 9-5. Common emotional and physical symptoms related to disaster response 9-7
Table 9-6. Examples of preventive measures for behavioral health 9-7
Table 9-7. Examples of preventive measures for handling human remains 9-7
Table 9-8. Veterinary concerns affecting public health 9-8
Table 9-9. Precautions related to handling animal carcasses..... 9-8
Table A-1. Planning checklist for S1, human resources A-4
Table A-2. Planning checklist for S2, intelligence. A-5
Table A-3. Initial planning checklist for S3, operations A-6
Table A-4. Planning checklist for S4, sustainment.....A-7
Table A-5. Planning for command and control systems.....A-8
Table G-1. Comparison of disaster response and civil search and rescue..... G-2
Table J-1. Stability and civil support AUTL cross walk..... J-1

Preface

PURPOSE

This manual provides keystone Army doctrine for civil support operations. It follows FM 3-0 and expands on the fourth element of full spectrum operations – civil support. This manual's focus is about the conduct of civil support operations – planning, preparation, execution, and assessment of operations conducted within the United States and its territories. It discusses the role of Army forces within the domestic operational environment, with particular emphasis on how operations conducted by Army forces within the U.S. differ from full spectrum operations conducted overseas.

All military civil support operations support civil authorities within the United States. The mechanisms for providing this support exist in law, policy, and directive. Civil support operations require Army leaders to understand an environment shaped by federal, state, local, and tribal organizations. Nowhere is this more relevant than in understanding the roles of the National Guard. In sharp contrast to stability operations, Army forces may conduct civil support operations with National Guard forces responding under the direction of a Governor; or alongside active duty forces as part of a coordinated Federal response. FM 3-28 explains the reasons for this division of force, and provides a range of considerations for the entire Army, consisting of all three components; Regular Army, Army Reserve, and Army National Guard.

Civil support doctrine informs and guides employment of Army forces providing civil support. It cannot, however, be prescriptive. To a greater degree than any other element of full spectrum operations, state and federal law, military directive (DOD and National Guard), and government policy impose constraints and restraints on civil support operations. In all cases where Army doctrine differs with law, policy, and directive, the latter take precedence.

SCOPE

Soldiers provide civil support in different capacities. Civil support spans both Defense Support of Civil Authorities (DSCA) and National Guard Civil Support (NGCS). Civil support doctrine applies to the Regular Army, the Army National Guard, and the Army Reserve. It guides Department of the Army Civilians, together with Army contractors supporting elements of the Army conducting civil support operations. This doctrine does not apply to Army forces engaged in counter-terrorism operations, nor does it apply to any state defense force that is not part of the National Guard. It also does not cover operations of the Army Corps of Engineers, a direct reporting unit (DRU) of the Army that exists to provide civil support in accordance with U.S. law and its other applicable regulations. Finally, it does not apply to activities within a military installation.

Although two Combatant Commands, USPACOM and USNORTHCOM) conduct DSCA this manual uses USNORTHCOM terminology and methods throughout. Users located in the USPACOM Area of Responsibility (AOR) should refer to theater plans and standard operating procedures for specific DSCA procedures in that theater. The fundamentals of civil support operations remain the same, but the unique characteristics of the Pacific region alter some of the details of DSCA and NGCS within the USPACOM AOR.

The manual's primary focus is on the operational Army echelons that conduct civil support operations. These include battalions, brigades, division headquarters, and Army service component headquarters. However, these echelons require extensive support from the generating force, and the FM addresses that support as applicable.

APPLICABILITY

This publication applies to the Active Army, the Army National Guard, and U.S. Army Reserve unless otherwise stated. The target audience for this manual is broad. It includes the commanders, leaders, and staff of Army forces involved in civil support operations. It also provides general information to civil authorities at federal, state, local, and tribal levels for use when coordinating with Army forces engaged in civil support operations. This manual is suitable for use by other services coordinating with Army forces engaged in civil

support operations and other organizations (including the U.S. Coast Guard) providing support to civilian agencies.

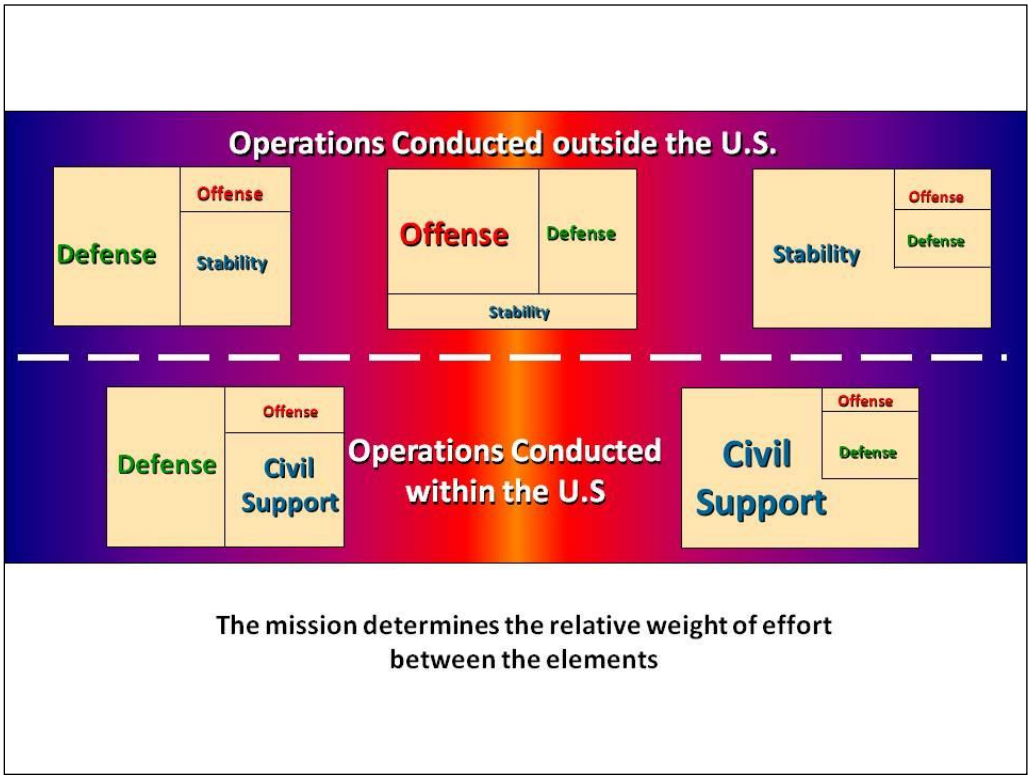
ADMINISTRATIVE INFORMATION

Headquarters, U.S. Army Training and Doctrine Command, is the proponent for this publication. The preparing agency is the Combined Arms Doctrine Directorate, U.S. Army Combined Arms Center. Send written comments and recommendations on a DA Form 2028 (Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms) to Commander, U.S. Army Combined Arms Center and Fort Leavenworth, ATTN: ATZL-CD (FM 3-28), 300 McPherson Avenue (Building 463), Fort Leavenworth, KS 66027-2337. The point of contact for FM 3-28 is the Combined Arms Doctrine Directorate at (913) 684-4884; or by e-mail: michael.d.burke@conus.army.mil.

Introduction

Protecting the United States from direct attack is the highest priority of the Department of Defense. Since the First World War, the armed services have focused primarily on defending the United States by projecting power overseas. However, when civil authorities request assistance or if directed by the President, the Armed Forces also have great capability to respond to domestic emergencies and disasters. The Department of Defense conducts these operations under civilian control in accordance with the Constitution of the United States. Based on the Constitution, and consistent with America's history, the military does not lead the federal response except by the direction of the President, under conditions of extreme domestic emergency, or threat of war.

FM 3-0 states that "Army forces combine offensive, defensive, and stability or civil support operations simultaneously as part of an interdependent joint force to seize, retain, and exploit the initiative, accepting prudent risk to create opportunities to achieve decisive results. They employ synchronized action—lethal and nonlethal—proportional to the mission and informed by a thorough understanding of all variables of the operational environment. Mission command that conveys intent and an appreciation of all aspects of the situation guides the adaptive use of Army forces." Soldiers need to understand how civil support differs from the other elements of full spectrum operations and how the Army conducts civil support operations. Civil support operations encompass support provided by the components of the Army to civil authorities within the United States and its territories. This includes support provided by the Regular Army, Army Reserve, and National Guard. They conduct civil support operations, either in combination with offensive and defensive operations, or singly, in support of civil authorities.



Introductory Figure – Full Spectrum Operations

Stability operations and civil support have similar tasks. Both revolve around the civilians on the ground within land areas of operation. Both stability and civil support tasks require Army forces to provide essential services and work with civilian authorities. However, domestic operational environments are quite different in terms of law, military chain of command, use of deadly force, and the interagency process.

When operating overseas, the distinction between the three components of the Army – Regular, Reserve and National Guard – is irrelevant. All are conducting full spectrum operations under a single joint force commander. When operating overseas the National Guard is federalized and operates under the same rules, regulations, and guidance as the Regular Army. The majority of active component soldiers will have most of their interaction with the National Guard in this environment and will see them operate under exactly the same rules and conditions as themselves. However, this is not the case when the Regular Army, Army Reserve, and National Guard conduct civil support operations. There are important differences in the rules, regulations, laws, and guidance that guide employment of the components of the Army when operating within the United States, its trusts and territories. This manual highlights those differences and explains why it is important for each component to understand what these differences are and how they affect the conduct of civil support operations.

For military forces conducting civil support operations, there is a Federal response under the control of the President; and a state response, under the control of that states' governor. The Federal military forces (referred to as Federal military forces) operate under the command and control of the President, the Secretary of Defense, and the supported combatant commander. The state's military forces (referred to as State military forces) operate under the command and control of the governor, exercised through a state joint force headquarters which is headed by the Adjutant General of that State. While federal and state forces operate in proximity to one another, they remain under their respective chains of command. Unity of command, as the military defines it, is not applicable to the broader structure of American Government, and between state and federal government agencies in these circumstances. It is also not applicable to the federal and state military forces, unless the President and the Governor formally agree to appoint a dual-status commander. Therefore achieving unity of effort in civil support operations becomes essential.

Federal military forces normally operate under a Joint Task Force (JTF) formed by the combatant commander and deployed in support of a primary federal agency. Combatant Commanders have authority to alert forces under their command to prepare for civil support, but actual conduct of civil support operations requires authorization from the Secretary of Defense or designated authority. Federal military forces normally respond in support of another federal agency, to supplement Federal ability to provide assistance to state and local governments. The response effort typically begins with a declaration of a disaster or emergency by the President, but may also be initiated by a request for assistance from another Federal Agency or a state governor.

Federal military forces: Regular Army, Navy, Marine and Air Force personnel and units; mobilized Army, Navy, Air Force and Marine Reserve forces and personnel, and any National Guard forces and personnel mobilized for Federal service in accordance with Title 10 USC. The President of the United States is their Commander in Chief.

State Military Forces: Air and Army National Guard personnel and units that are serving under state control, in accordance with Title 32 USC. The Governor of their each respective state has overall command responsibility for the National Guard in that state and is their Commander in Chief. State military forces do not include State defense forces organized outside of the National Guard.

State military forces normally operate as part of a state military JTF formed from units of the state's Air National Guard and Army National Guard. The Governor of each state has overall command and has the authority to alert and deploy their state's National Guard units to support state agencies. The National Guard provides the Governors with military capabilities that are less restricted by law for any emergency in their state. State and local responders, to include National Guard forces, are typically the first to respond to disasters. Because of their proximity, the National Guard is typically the first military force to respond to domestic emergencies. The President may mobilize the National Guard for Federal Service within the United States, but the law restricting the domestic operations of the Regular Army also regulates National Guard Soldiers in Federal service. Unless placed in Title 10 status, the National Guard continues to operate under the command of the State Governor and state military chain of command.

Supported combatant commanders communicate through the National Guard Bureau to the National Guard Joint Force Headquarters - State (JFHQ-State). The NGB as it serves as the "channel of communications" to the several states. If the Adjutant General establishes a subordinate task force (TF) or joint task force (JTF), the supported combatant commander may be given direct liaison authority (DIRLAUTH) with the TF or JTF. In a disaster response situation, the combatant commander may receive permission to coordinate directly to the states or to subordinate commands within the states.

The Department of Defense (DOD) conducts Homeland Defense with support from other agencies. In turn the DOD supports the Nation's homeland security effort led by the Department of Homeland Security (DHS). In both efforts, the Army conducts civil support operations.

Homeland Defense (HD) is the protection of U.S. sovereignty, territory, domestic population, and critical defense infrastructure against external threats and aggression, or other threats as directed by the President. In homeland defense, the nation is under concerted attack from a foreign enemy. The Department of Defense is the primary supported agency of the United States Government, and agencies such as the Department of Homeland Security and Department of Justice provide support to military forces through an interagency process directed by the Secretary of Defense. Within homeland defense, Army forces may combine offensive, defensive, and civil support operations as part of a joint operation to defend the U.S. from external attack or other threats.

Homeland Security (HS) is the concerted national effort to prevent terrorist attacks within the United States; reduce America's vulnerability to terrorism, major disasters, and other emergencies; and minimize the damage and recover from attacks, major disasters, and other emergencies that occur. Responsibility for HS is shared across the USG; however DHS and DOJ are the principle departments responsible for HS. Homeland security is a National Enterprise that includes Federal and State-led efforts, and a vast range of other participants. The enterprise is distributed and decentralized, so no single entity is responsible for or directly manages all aspects of it. The President of the United States leads overall homeland security policy, direction and coordination; the lead federal agency for homeland security is DHS. Homeland security is a concerted national effort to ensure a homeland that is safe, secure, and resilient against terrorism and other hazards where American interests, aspirations, and way of life can thrive. Preventing a terrorist attack in the United States remains the cornerstone of homeland security but Homeland Security includes a broad range of activities and missions. The QHSR emphasizes that Homeland security relies on our shared efforts to prevent and deter attacks on the US.

Note: US Coast Guard forces are unique in that they normally operate under Title 14, USC, as part of the Department of Homeland Security, but they may come under the operational control of DOD for some missions. In some homeland security missions the Coast Guard may exercise tactical control of Federal military forces.

QUICK REFERENCE FOR TERMS AND ACRONYMS

The following terms, acronyms, and abbreviations appear in the body of the FM. Unfortunately, civil support is a mission filled with a unique language. It combines military, state, and federal agency information into a polyglot form, which adheres to its own logic. Wherever possible, the Combined Arms Center uses the full term and not the abbreviation or acronym. However, in many cases the abbreviation is easier to say and remember than the full term. In other cases, the term or agency name has become common usage in civil support (e.g. FEMA) and this manual uses it as such. The complete glossary will be located in the back of the book.

Introductory Table-1: Quick reference terms, acronyms, and abbreviations

Term, Acronym, or Abbreviation	*Description*
ANG	Air National Guard; also called the Air Guard
ARNG	Army National Guard
CBIRF	Chemical biological incident response force; Marine rapid response force of approximately 200 personnel

Term, Acronym, or Abbreviation	*Description*
CBRNE	chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear, and high yield explosives
CCMRF	CBRNE consequence management response force; Federal military task force of approximately 6,000 personnel available to DOD to respond to a CBRNE incident. In the future, this force will be designated as Defense CBRN Response Force (DCRF)
CERFP	CBRNE Enhanced Response Force Package. A National Guard task force of about 200 personnel.
USCG; Coast Guard	The United States Coast Guard is the fifth armed service, but it is not part of DOD. The Service is part of the Department of Homeland Security. In wartime, Coast Guard units may operate under Navy control.
CST	Civil Support Team; also called a WMD – CST. A National Guard team of approximately 25 personnel.
DCRF	Defense CBRN Response Force; a Federal military force of 5,000(+), under development
DCO	Defense Coordinating Officer
DHS	Department of Homeland Security
DOD	Department of Defense
DODD #	Department of Defense Directive (numbered publication). These documents provide specific instructions to all DOD personnel concerning the implementation of laws and Presidential directives, etc.
DSCA	Defense Support of Civil Authorities (some references state "to" Civil Authorities)
EMAC	Emergency Management Assistance Compact
ESF	Emergency Support Function
FEMA	Federal Emergency Management Agency
HRF	Homeland Response force; a National Guard Task force for CBRNE incidents consisting of approximately 500 personnel. (under development)
ICS	Incident Command System
NIMS	National Incident Management System
NRF	National Response Framework; the plan that establishes the emergency support functions
PA; primary agency	Primary Agency; this is the term and abbreviation used to refer to that civilian agency which has overall responsibility for federal response. For most Federal response, this will be FEMA.
Regular Army	The Regular Army is the component of the Army that consists of persons whose continuous service on active duty in both peace and war is contemplated by law, and of retired members of the Regular Army. This includes: (1) the officers and enlisted members of the Regular Army; (2) the professors, director of admissions, and cadets of the United States Military Academy; and (3) the retired officers and enlisted members of the Regular Army. (From Title 10, U.S.C.)
SRUF, RUF	Standing rules for the use of force; Rules for use of force.

Term, Acronym, or Abbreviation	*Description*
	These are similar to rules of engagement used by forces in combat, but more restrictive
SECDEF	The Secretary of Defense
Federal military forces	Regular Army, Navy, Marine and Air Force personnel and units; mobilized Army, Navy, Air Force and Marine Reserve forces and personnel, and any National Guard forces and personnel mobilized for Federal service. The President of the United States is their Commander in Chief. Sometimes referred to as “Title 10 forces.”
State Active Duty Status	National Guard personnel called to duty by their respective governor IAW State laws. These personnel remain under state control and are subject to state military justice codes. Funding is provided by that State’s treasury. Sometimes abbreviated as SAD.
State military forces	Air National Guard and Army National Guard personnel and units serving under state control, in accordance with title 32 USC. The Governor of their each respective state has overall command responsibility for the National Guard in that state and remains their commander in chief. Sometimes referred to as “Title 32 forces.”
Title 32 Status	National Guard personnel called to duty IAW title 32 USC by their respective governor, remaining under state control and military justice codes, but funded by the U.S. Treasury.
UCMJ	Uniform Code of Military Justice – Technically, this is Chapter 47 of Title 10, U.S. Code. All military personnel serving in Title 10 status are under the President of the United States and subject to the discipline required by the UCMJ. However, National Guard personnel are not subject to the UCMJ unless federalized.
USACE	U.S. Army Corps of Engineers

Chapter 1

The Domestic Environment

This chapter provides a broad overview of civil support, and how it differs from operations conducted outside the United States. It discusses key aspects of the domestic environment, specifies four primary tasks associated with civil support, and identifies five fundamentals that apply to all components of the Army. The chapter also includes a summary of training requirements.

THE ARMY AND CIVIL SUPPORT OPERATIONS

1-1. Civil support is the fourth element of full spectrum operations. Civil support operations encompass support provided by the components of the Army to civil authorities within the United States and its territories. This includes support provided by the Regular Army, Army Reserve, and National Guard. They may conduct civil support operations either in combination with offensive and defensive operations, as part of homeland defense; or singly, in support of civil authorities.

1-2. Although not the primary purpose for which the U.S. Army is organized, trained, and equipped, civil support operations are a vital aspect of the Army's service to the Nation. The skills that allow Soldiers to accomplish their missions on today's battlefields can support local, state, and federal civilian officials, especially when domestic emergencies overwhelm the ability of these agencies to support fellow Americans. That is not the only thing that the Army can provide. Army equipment developed for combat can assist law enforcement agencies, rescue operations, and a host of other requirements. Army trainers can apply their skills to mentor their civilian counterparts in those things at which the Army excels. The Army has a long history of civil support operations; back to its inception. In any given year, thousands of Soldiers provide support to civilian agencies in missions ranging from disaster response to support for major sporting events.

1-3. Just as commanders need to understand each operational environment in campaigns conducted outside the U.S., they need to understand the domestic operational environments within which they conduct full spectrum operations. However, there are important differences about operations conducted in support of civil authorities, principally the roles of civilian organizations, and the relationship of the military force to federal, state and local agencies. How, when, where, and what support the Army provides depends upon specific circumstances. Soldiers and civilians need to understand what makes this environment so different so that they can employ the Army's capabilities efficiently, effectively, and legally.

DEFENSE SUPPORT OF CIVIL AUTHORITIES

1-4. Joint doctrine defines civil support as "Department of Defense support to US civil authorities for domestic emergencies, and for designated law enforcement and other activities. Also called CS. See also military assistance to civil authorities." This is the current basis for the term, "Defense Support of Civil Authorities (DSCA). Department of Defense Directive (DODD) 5111.13 defines DSCA as:

> *"Support provided by U.S. Federal military forces, National Guard forces performing duty pursuant to reference a [title 10 USC], DOD civilians, DOD contract personnel, and DOD Component assets, in response to requests for assistance from civil authorities or from qualified entities for special events, domestic emergencies, designated law enforcement support, and other domestic activities. Support provided by National Guard forces performing duty in accordance with Reference d [title 32 USC], is considered DSCA but is conducted as a State-directed action. Also known as civil support"*

Note: The DOD Dictionary defines "civil authorities" as: "Those elected and appointed officers and employees who constitute the government of the United States, the governments of the 50 states, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, United States possessions and territories, and political subdivisions thereof."

1-5. The older term for civil support, military support to civil authorities (MSCA), is still included in the current joint definition. This is defined as "a mission of civil support consisting of support for natural or man-made disasters, chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear, or high-yield explosive consequence management, and other support as required." (DODD 3025.1, Military Support to Civil Authorities.)

1-6. Although many civil support operations fall under the broad heading of DSCA, it is not the only definition associated with civil support operations conducted by components of the Army. Military support includes that provided by the Army National Guard both as a part of DSCA, and also that support provided by the ARNG as National Guard Civil Support (NGCS).

NATIONAL GUARD CIVIL SUPPORT

1-7. When the National Guard conducts civil support in a purely state capacity, e.g. that state both controls and pays for the support, the support it provides is technically NGCS and not DSCA. National Guard Civil Support is "Support provided by the National Guard of the several states while in State Active Duty status or Title 32 duty status to civil authorities for domestic emergencies, and for designated law enforcement and other activities. Also called NGCS."

Note. The definitions of DSCA and NGCS will be modified to incorporate the definition of DSCA when a new DODD 3025.1 is signed. The new DODD 3025.1 will supersede the existing version, and the definition of MSCA will be eliminated from the joint dictionary. When updated, National Guard Regulation 500-1 will reflect the new definitions of DSCA and NGCS.

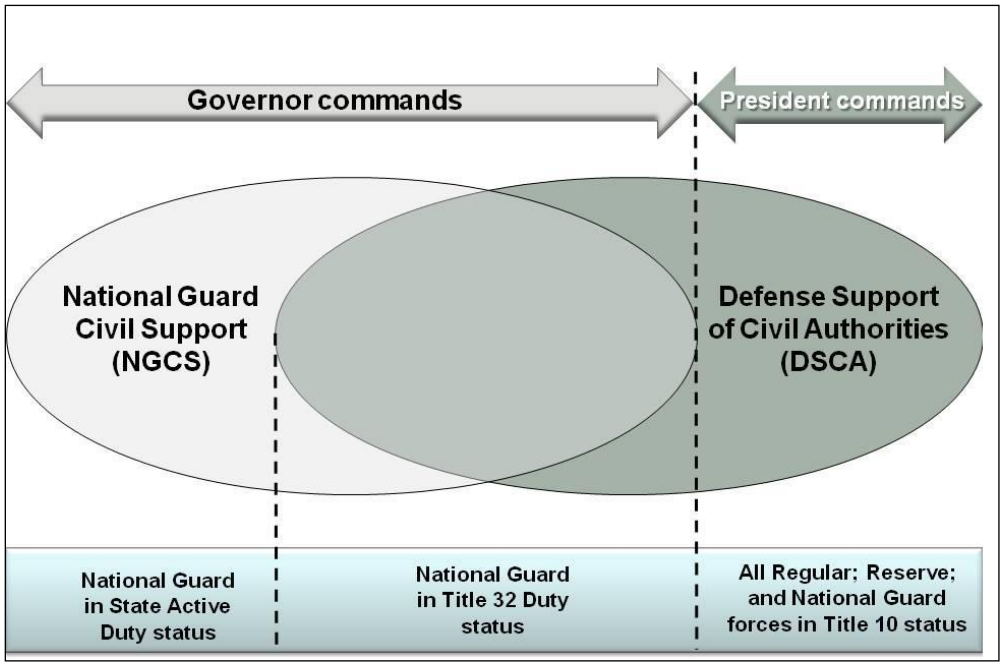


Figure 1-1. Range of Response

1-8. Figure 1-1 depicts the range of response provided by Soldiers. Although the definitions of DSCA and NGCS currently overlap, the most important distinction and the one that affects field operations deals with the status of the forces providing the support. By law, the National Guard remains under the command of the Governor unless federalized; and the all forces in title 10 Status remain under the

President's command. The Army supports elected officials with complementary capabilities when and where needed through a unified effort, despite overlapping definitions. Department of Defense Directive 1200.17, *Managing the Reserve Components as an Operational Force*, states,

> *"Homeland Defense and Defense Support to Civil Authorities (DSCA) are total force missions. Unity of effort is maintained consistent with statutory responsibilities in operations involving Federal forces and non-federalized National Guard forces with Federal forces under Federal command and control and non-federalized National Guard forces under State command and control."*

1-9. Subsequent paragraphs of this chapter explain why State military forces and Federal military forces operate under different chains of command in civil support and summarize some of the impacts in terms of: 1) the structure of the United States under the U.S. Constitution and its impact on the Army; 2) The roles of the components of the Army – Regular, Reserve, and National Guard – and their requirements for providing civil support; and 3) Specific military aspects of the domestic environment that differentiate civil support operations from the other elements of full spectrum operations.

THE UNITED STATES CONSTITUTION AND THE ARMY

1-10. Under the Constitution, the United States is a republic comprising of 50 states, together with various territories and possessions. This system, in which the states share powers with a central national government, is called federalism, and is the basis for division of powers between state and federal government. The Constitution carefully apportions power within the federal government between the branches of the Federal government (executive, legislative, and judicial) and the individual states. This applies to the armed forces, about which the Constitution states,

> *"Congress shall have power... To raise and support Armies…; To provide and maintain a Navy; To make Rules for the Government and Regulation of the land and naval Forces; To provide for calling forth the Militia to execute the Laws of the Union, suppress Insurrections and repel Invasions; To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining, the Militia, and for governing such Part of them as may be employed in the Service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively, the Appointment of the Officers, and the Authority of training the Militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress;*
>
> *"The President shall be Commander in Chief of the Army and Navy of the United States, and of the Militia of the several States, when called into the actual Service of the United States; Article II, Section 3 states the President, "...shall take care that the Laws be faithfully executed."(Article II Section 2)*

1-11. Of particular importance are the framers granted to the states concerning the militia. This requirement is the constitutional basis for the separation of the National Guard from today's Regular Army and Air Force and the basis for authority that the state governors retain command over the National Guard within the domestic environment. There is not a chain of command in the military sense between the President and the Governors. Each has certain powers under the Constitution. The President as head of Executive branch of the Federal Government and military commander in chief may only exercise the authorities granted by the Constitution and U.S. law. Within their respective states, the Governors retain executive authority, to include command over their state's National Guard until the President mobilizes it for federal service. The practical impact of this on the Army forces operating domestically is a legal division between the National Guard and federal military forces. This is unique to domestic operational environments, and commanders at all levels need to understand how it impacts operations.

1-12. The Constitution also frames the antipathy of the founding fathers towards the large militaries of the European powers. The founding fathers viewed a large standing army answering to the head of state as a continuous threat to civil liberty. Although the founders shared a fear of a large standing army, they also saw the necessity of a national army for the common defense. They balanced this requirement by providing the states with military capabilities. They had ample reasons for this balancing act.

1-13. The Articles of Confederation (1784 – 1787) failed to provide the National government with authority and means to act in the National interest. This led to the Constitution convention to restructure the Nation's government. The U.S. Constitution (ratified in 1787) included provisions for federal and state

forces to enforce the law. It was not long before this was tested. In 1794, the "Whiskey Rebellion" forced the first President to use armed forces to restore order. President Washington's guidance was that the military was to support local civil authorities, not pre-empt them. President Washington's response established the fundamental precept that the military supports civil authority and remains in law today.

COMPONENTS OF THE ARMY AND CIVIL SUPPORT

1-14. Civil support provided by Regular, Army Reserve, and Army National Guard units varies according to domestic law and DOD policies. Each component has different civil support capabilities, requirements, and restrictions. Regular Army forces and Army Reserve units always remain under the command of the President of the United States, exercised through the Secretary of Defense and the various combatant commanders. The National Guard (including the Army National Guard and Air National Guard) are state forces and remain under the command of the governors of their respective states, unless mobilized for Federal service under Title 10, USC. This creates a unique environment where Regular Army, mobilized Army Reserve, federalized National Guard, and National Guard forces under state command may conduct civil support operations simultaneously and in proximity while different agencies and under different chains of command. Commanders and civilian agencies need to keep in mind the distinctions between the components of the Army. The following sections highlight the components and their capabilities.

THE REGULAR ARMY

1-15. The Regular Army consists of approximately 550,000 professional Soldiers organized into operational forces – those intended for deployment and ground combat operations; and the generating force – professional Soldiers supported by civilians that sustain, train, and equip not only the Regular Army, but the other components of the Army as well. The operational forces and the generating force provide DSCA as directed by the Secretary of Defense. The Regular Army provides civilian leaders a menu of capabilities that capitalize on their expeditionary and campaign qualities. The most important of these are size, training and equipment levels, flexibility, and endurance.

1-16. The ability of the Regular Army to generate large forces rapidly and sustain them for long periods in an emergency is the component's primary attribute for civil support. The Regular Army can provide large forces in the interim between the time when a Governor calls out the State's National Guard, and the arrival of substantial civilian responders from outside the state (see Chapter 3). When directed and with the support of USTRANSCOM, the Regular Army deploys forces ranging from small detachments to corps-sized formations of 100,000 troops or more, supported by the full resources of the Department of Defense. Because they are professionals, Soldiers of the Regular Army spend much more time in training than their reserve counterparts. They are also not under pressure from civilian employers to return to their occupations. In most cases Regular Army units have more modern equipment than do the reserve components. All these factors make units of the Regular Army highly adaptive and flexible; mission focused and capable of prodigious effort.

1-17. The limitations on domestic employment of Regular forces include proximity, legal, and operational commitments. Regular Army units are concentrated at several large installations spread across the country and may be based far from an incident location. Their ability to respond is less a factor of their readiness than one of intra-theater transportation. While legal considerations affect all Soldiers, there are additional legal limitations on the use of Regular Soldiers, discussed in detail in subsequent chapters. Perhaps the most important limitation on the use of Regular forces is their operational tempo; the rapidity with which Regular Army forces are committed to support ongoing campaigns and other missions outside the US. The nearest or most suitable Regular Army unit may be committed to operations elsewhere, with some or all of its equipment and personnel in route to another theater.

THE ARMY RESERVE

1-18. The Army Reserve is one of two reserve components of the Army. It consists of approximately 206,000 Soldiers. It includes both units and individuals. Although it does not have any brigade combat teams, it does include supporting units of almost every type. Army Reserve units are located throughout the country.

1-19. The law currently restricts the use of Army Reserve units for civil support missions. In general, Army Reserve units can only conduct civil support operations in two circumstances. First, Army Reserve units may be mobilized by the President in response to a CBRNE incident. Second, Army Reserve units already on active duty for training may provide immediate response or other civil support when authorized by DOD. However, any time spent on civil support operations is counted against the total training time for that year, and may not exceed the total active duty for training time allotted for that year.

1-20. Individual call-up and augmentation of Regular Army units conducting civil support follows similar rules to those applied in a limited Presidential call-up. Refer to Chapter 7 for additional discussion on the restrictions on the use of Army Reserve forces for domestic operations.

THE ARMY NATIONAL GUARD

1-21. The Army National Guard is the other reserve component of the Army. It consists of approximately 360,000 Soldiers. Each state, each territory, and the District of Columbia have National Guard forces, for a total of 54 State and Territorial Army National Guard elements. These forces are organized into modular formations identical to those of the Regular Army and Army Reserve. Unlike the Regular Army, however, the Army National Guard has a dual role. As a reserve component of the Army, the President may mobilize the National Guard for Federal service. In this capacity the Army National Guard provides an operational reserve for the Regular Army, including 8 of the Army's 18 division headquarters; 33 of the Army's 73 Brigade Combat Teams (BCT); 47% of the Army's multi-functional support brigades; and 40% of the Army's functional support brigades. Until such time as the President brings any unit of the National Guard into Federal service, National Guard forces remain under the command of their respective state or territorial governor. As state forces, the Army National Guard units provide the majority of the Soldiers committed to civil support, and are critical to the state's support of its citizens.

1-22. Army National Guard units have advantages and disadvantages when employed in a civil support role. Their significant advantages are proximity, responsiveness, knowledge of local conditions, tactical flexibility in civil support missions, and closer association with state and local officials. The important disadvantages of National Guard forces are unit distribution between states, limited endurance, and the ability of the states to fund them.

1-23. Because they are state resources, the Governor can activate National Guard units based on requirements in that state. During an emergency, Army National Guard units often task organize with Air National Guard units from that state in state joint task forces. In state service, the National Guard is more flexible in terms of law enforcement, and in the range of missions they may be assigned in support of first responders. Quite often, their leaders are personal acquaintances of the other key state officials, which tend to speed communication through state channels.

1-24. Possibly the most important limitation of the Army National Guard is its endurance. Each day the National Guardsman is deployed is a day away from civilian employment. Most employers are generous in allowing time for National Guard call-ups, but deployments for annual training, state civil support missions, and deployment overseas, create serious strains. The endurance of the National Guard is also limited by fiscal considerations. The State has limited funds to pay personnel and operational costs, including health care costs. A third limitation is structural. Although the Army tries to align unit organizations as closely as possible within that State's National Guard, units may still be distributed across more than one state. Thus the combat organizations with which National Guard units train in annual training may be different than the units that command them in civil support operations.

UNIT STATUS

1-25. The particular status of a unit, e.g. the legal standing of the organization, determines its chain of command, and in some cases the missions it may undertake within the United States and its territories. Depending on its status, units may be described as "Federal military forces" or "State military forces". However, the inclusion of National Guard forces within either category will vary, as discussed below.

Federal Military Forces (Title 10 Status)

1-26. Title 10, U.S. Code, governs all federal military forces. For the Army, these forces include the Regular Army, the Army Reserve, and all National Guard units ordered to federal Active Duty in Title 10 status. For the other services, Federal military forces include all of their components except the Air National Guard unless it mobilizes for federal service. Federal military forces are federal assets under the command of the President. Forces in Title 10 status are restricted by the Posse Comitatus Act (See Chapters 5 and 7).

1-27. In a large-scale disaster, the President may direct that federal military forces support federal agencies, but these forces will remain under federal, not state command. In most cases, there are separate federal and state chains of command assisting numerous organizations on the ground. Unity of effort across jurisdictions and involving multiple organizations requires significant effort in establishing effective communication.

State Military Forces

1-28. National Guard forces under the control of the Governor may be in either a state active duty status or Title 32 Status. Although there are legal distinctions between the two statuses, there is no difference in their tactical employment. Therefore this manual refers to National Guard forces in either status as State military forces. Some states have uniformed forces that are not part of the National Guard and are not considered State military forces. These are "state defense forces" and are discussed below.

State Active Duty Status

1-29. When the Governor mobilizes the State National Guard, the forces are in state active duty status, under the command and control of the Governor. The state government pays the expenses for forces in state active duty status. National Guardsmen on state active duty conduct all missions in accordance with the needs of the state and within the guidelines of state laws and statutes. National Guardsmen on state active duty receive pay from that state and are subject to the state military codes (not the uniform code of military justice or UCMJ). National Guard forces in state active duty status can perform civil law enforcement missions in accordance with the laws and statutes of their State. Generally, National Guard forces assist with incident management and homeland security operations within the State.

Title 32 Status

1-30. Under certain circumstances, a governor may request that the federal government pay for the costs associated with a state call up of the National Guard for responding to an emergency. When the Secretary of Defense approves, National Guard forces change from state active duty status to Title 32 status. (Title 32, U.S. Code, is the principal Federal statute covering the National Guard.) Even though the National Guard forces are on active duty and funded by the federal government, in Title 32 status, National Guardsmen, remain under the command of the Governor. Although the distinction between funding lines is important to the respective state and federal treasuries, it has no tactical impact. For Army commanders, the important distinction is that National Guard units in Title 32 status remain under state control and therefore have authority for some missions that Regular Army and Army Reserve units do not. Because forces in Title 32 status remain under the command of the Governor, National Guard units may conduct law enforcement missions and are not subject to the restriction of the Posse Comitatus Act.

1-31. The National Guard of one state can assist other states responding to a disaster through formal agreements, such as the Emergency Management Assistance Compact (EMAC). Typically, this occurs in state active duty, and may transition to Title 32 status upon approval by the Secretary of Defense. When requested by the supported state's governor and authorized by the supporting state's governor under a separate memorandum of agreement, National Guard elements deploy to the supported state. The supporting National Guard operates under the operational control of the supported state's Adjutant General. Typically, deployments under an assistance memorandum are limited to a specific period, such as 30 days. Often military and civilian officials refer to all National Guard forces as "State military forces" notwithstanding that some of them may be in a purely state active duty status, without federal funding. Table 1-1 summarizes the types of National Guard duty status.

1-32. State and Territorial National Guard forces have primary responsibility for providing military support to state and local authorities in emergencies. In most civil support situations, the President will not federalize National Guard forces. National Guard units conduct advance planning with civilian responders Together these organizations—civilian and military—establish coordination plans and procedures based on National policy such as the National Incident Management System (NIMS), the National Response Framework (NRF), and national planning scenarios. Command and control follows the authority under which service members are ordered to duty: SAD and State military forces remain under the authority of the respective governor; and Federal military forces under Federal command and control.

Table 1-1. Comparison of State Active Duty, Title 32, and Title 10 Status

	State Active Duty	***Title 32***	***Title 10***
Command & Control	Governor	Governor	President
Where	Within respective State or territory; and IAW EMAC or state to state MOA	Within respective State or territory; and IAW EMAC or state to state MOA	Worldwide
Funded by:	State	Federal funds administered by the state	Federal
Missions	IAW State Law; includes riot control, law enforcement, emergency response	Annual Training, drills, and other Federal military requirements; disaster and law enforcement missions, based on disaster and emergency declarations by the President	Worldwide training and operations, as assigned by Joint CDR
Discipline	State Military Code	State Military Code	UCMJ
Conduct Law Enforcement	Yes (as authorized by the supported Governor)	Yes (as authorized by the supported Governor)	No, (Strictly limited by Posse Comitatus Act, standing EXORDS, and DOD directives)
Pay	Determined by state law	DOD FMR Volume 7A	DOD FMR Volume 7.0
Travel & lodging & benefits	Determined by state law	JFTR, Chapter 10 / Public law	JFTR, Chapter 10 / Public law

State Defense Forces

1-33. Not all individuals wearing an Army uniform are part of the Army. State defense forces may be present during civil support operations. Twenty-four states have a state defense force of some description, organized under a separate provision of Title 32, USC (Section 109(c)). A state defense force may be a "State Organized Defense Force" or "State Guard," or even a named militia unit. However, these forces are not National Guard forces, although they are the responsibility of the state Adjutant General. They are always under the Governor's command. Each state continues to fund its state defense forces regardless of the nature of the disaster response—Title 32 status does not apply. State defense forces may conduct law enforcement missions consistent with states laws and orders by the governor. In some states and territories, the state defense force has law enforcement authority similar to a credentialed law enforcement officer. Many of these units wear standard Army uniforms when in state service. This can lead to confusion, since to civilians they appear to be members of the Armed Forces. The state often employs these elements within their county of residence.

KEY ASPECTS OF DOMESTIC OPERATIONS

1-34. Either a Governor or Federal civilian agencies may request help from the military when the situation exceeds their capacity to respond. However, Department of Defense support, especially the active

components of the military, are only temporary help until local, state, and federal authorities resume their normal roles. Commanders keep in mind that Federal laws require the supported federal agency (such as FEMA) to reimburse the Department of Defense for any support the latter provides. That can be very expensive; Hurricane Katrina expenses billed to FEMA the by Department of Defense exceeded five billion dollars.

1-35. Civil Support operations are generally not the top priority mission of the DOD. War fighting and the Homeland Defense mission are the top priority, but DOD must be prepared with trained and ready forces to conduct Civil Support missions. The Department of Defense is not the lead in civil support operations, but supports a primary agency. The primary agency establishes priorities and maintains overall direction of the civil support. DOD anticipates requirements from the Primary Agency, and plans, prepares, and trains accordingly for such contingencies. Specific requirements are identified within the Defense Support of Civil Authorities Execution Order (DSCA EXORD), published by the Joint Chiefs of Staff. In any DSCA contingency involving Federal military forces, the Defense Coordinating Officer (DCO) is the SECDEF's primary DOD agent for coordinating support to the Federal Coordinating Officer (FCO).

1-36. In Civil Support operations there is a Federally-led response, one or more State-led responses, and one or more local-led (city, county, tribal) responses. The Federal-led response is under the command and control of the President, SECDEF and supported Combatant Command Commander. The State-led response is under the command and control of the Governor. The local-led response is under the control of the mayor/local official. In Civil Support operations, all of these levels of responses, local, State, and Federal, may be occurring simultaneously. Commanders and staffs need to understand key military aspects of the domestic environment. These aspects are summarized in Table 1-2, below.

Table 1-2: Key Military Aspects of Domestic Operational Environments

Military Aspect	Impact on Operations
Civil Support is conducted only in the United States and U.S. possessions and territories. Civil Support is not conducted overseas. If DOD conducts disaster relief operations overseas in support of a foreign nation, it is a stability operation and is either Foreign Humanitarian Assistance (FHA) or Foreign Consequence Management (FCM). The Department of State (DOS), not DOD, is in the lead for this type of overseas USG effort.	Army forces do not conduct stability operations within the United States and its territories. Civil support operations do not include activities occurring solely within a military installation.
DOD is not in the lead agency in Civil Support operation. DOD supports the Primary Agency. The National Guard is not the primary agency for civil support to its respective state. It supports various state agencies.	Although Soldiers always remain under their military chain of command, the primary civilian agency establishes the priorities. Missions develop in response to civilian requests for assistance.
In Civil Support operations there is a Federally-led response, one or more State-led responses, and one or more local-led (city, county, tribal) responses. The Federal-led response is under the command and control of the President, SECDEF and supported Combatant Command Commander. The State-led response is under the command and control of the Governor. The local-led response is under the control of the mayor/local official. In Civil Support operations, all of these levels of responses, local, State, and Federal, may be occurring simultaneously.	There may be two or more distinct military chains of command operating within the same area. Active component and National Guard forces will be supporting and reporting to different agencies, under different commanders. Commanders should also keep in mind that each level of government is sovereign within the limits of the law; e.g. the governor is not “subordinate” to the President, nor is the mayor “subordinate” to the Governor. Organizations support a primary agency, but in most cases are not directly subordinate to that organization.
Civil Support is very different from Homeland Defense and Homeland Security. DOD contributes to Homeland Security by conducting Homeland Defense and Civil Support operations. Within their respective states, the same is true for the National Guard.	Army forces may support Federal and state homeland security requirements, but are not part of the Department of Homeland Security or similar agencies at the state level. Note that although the National Guard is not

Military Aspect	Impact on Operations
	part of the Department of Homeland Security, the Adjutant General of that State may be "dual-hatted" as the state director of homeland security.
Civil Support operations are generally not the top priority mission of the DOD. War fighting and the Homeland Defense mission are the top priority, but DOD must be prepared with trained and ready forces to conduct Civil Support missions.	Civil support is the element of full spectrum operations conducted within the United States. In homeland defense, civil support operations may be conducted simultaneously with offensive and defensive operations. Unless the Nation comes under an attack, In most civil support operations, however, civil support will be the only element actually conducted. Skill required for stability operations are transferable to civil support operations, but the environment is quite different.
DOD anticipates requirements from the Primary Agency, and plans, prepares, and trains accordingly for such contingencies.	Planning and preparation for civil support is continuous. It is based on National policy and Federal Government plans.
In a Civil Support operation, the Defense Coordinating Officer (DCO) is the SECDEF's primary DOD agent for coordinating support to the Federal Coordinating Officer (FCO).	The DCO serves as the principal interface within the Federal Coordinating Office between the supported federal agencies, DOD, and Federal military forces supporting the primary agency.
U.S. Army Federal military forces conduct Civil Support as part of a joint service and interagency effort, under the command and control of the supported Combatant Command Commander (CCDR).	The National Response Framework and National Incident Management System establish how the Federal, state, and local government respond to incidents. The Army works as part of a joint force within the National Guard or as part of a federal military force in support of these government officials.
Coordination with State and Federal Interagency partners is critical.	The structure of civilian government within the United States makes unity of command impractical. Consequently, Commanders must do everything in their power to ensure unity of effort.
State and Federal Laws have a major impact every civil support mission	Military forces operating within the United States must operate within the law. This creates much inefficiency in the employment of military capabilities. Staff judge advocates are critical to mission success.
Civil Support operations require specialized training for military forces, although many of the tasks implemented at the tactical unit level can be similar to some of the tasks conducted in Stability Operations.	Although stability and civil support operations share most tactical tasks, the conditions for these tasks are quite different. Therefore, proficiency in stability tasks must be reinforced with civil support specific training.
Military forces must maintain a detailed record of operations and associated costs.	The law requires that in many cases, civilian agencies reimburse the military for any operational costs associated with civil support missions. This cannot be computed using a rough guess; the military must account for specific actions and associated costs in detail, and present these figures to the appropriate agency for payment.

DIFFERENCES BETWEEN STABILITY AND CIVIL SUPPORT OPERATIONS

1-37. Civil support operations are conducted only within the United States and U.S. possessions and territories. Civil support is not conducted outside the United States. If DOD conducts disaster relief operations in support of a foreign nation, for example, it is a stability operation and is called Foreign Humanitarian Assistance (FHA) or Foreign Consequence Management (FCM). The Department of State (DOS), not DOD, is in the lead for this type of U.S. Government effort.

1-38. Within homeland defense, Army forces combine offensive, defensive, and civil support operations as part of a joint operation to defend the U.S. from external attack or other threats. Within the framework of homeland security, Army forces, as part of a joint response at the state level, federal level, or both, will normally conduct civil support operations exclusively, often employing capabilities developed for other elements of full spectrum operations as part of civil support.

1-39. Stability operations and civil support have similar tasks. Both revolve around the civilians on the ground within land areas of operation. Both stability and civil support tasks require Army forces to provide essential services and work with civilian authorities. However, domestic operational environments are quite different in terms of law, military chain of command, use of deadly force, and the interagency process.

1-40. When operating overseas, the distinction between the three components of the Army – Regular, Reserve and National Guard – is irrelevant. All are conducting full spectrum operations under a single joint force commander. When operating overseas the National Guard is federalized and operates under the same rules, regulations, and guidance as the Regular Army. The majority of active component soldiers will have most of their interaction with the National Guard in this environment and will see them operate under exactly the same rules and conditions as themselves. However, this is not the case when the Regular Army, Army Reserve, and National Guard conduct civil support operations. There are important differences in the rules, regulations, laws, and guidance that guide employment of the components of the Army when operating within the United States, its trusts and territories. It is important for to understand what these differences are and how they affect the conduct of civil support operations.

HOMELAND SECURITY AND HOMELAND DEFENSE

1-41. Civil Support is not synonymous with Homeland Security or Homeland Defense. Civil support contributes to both homeland security and homeland defense. DOD contributes to Homeland Security by supporting Homeland Security and conducting Homeland Defense.

1-42. Joint doctrine defines *homeland security* as a concerted national effort to prevent terrorist attacks within the United States; reduce America's vulnerability to terrorism, major disasters, and other emergencies; and minimize the damage and recover from attacks, major disasters, and other emergencies that occur (JP 3-28).

1-43. The Department of Homeland Security states the following in the 2010 Quadrennial Homeland Security Review (QHSR):

> *Homeland security is a widely distributed and diverse—but unmistakable—national enterprise. The term "enterprise" refers to the collective efforts and shared responsibilities of Federal, State, local, tribal, territorial, nongovernmental, and private-sector partners—as well as individuals, families, and communities—to maintain critical homeland security capabilities. The use of the term connotes a broad-based community with a common interest in the public safety and well-being of America and American society that is composed of multiple actors and stakeholders whose roles and responsibilities are distributed and shared. As the Commander-in-Chief and the leader of the Executive Branch, the President of the United States is uniquely responsible for the safety, security, and resilience of the Nation. The White House leads overall homeland security policy direction and coordination. Individual Federal agencies, in turn, are empowered by law and policy to fulfill various aspects of the homeland security mission. The Secretary of Homeland Security leads the Federal agency as defined by statute charged with homeland security: preventing terrorism and managing risks to critical infrastructure; securing and managing the border; enforcing and administering*

immigration laws; safeguarding and securing cyberspace; and ensuring resilience to disasters. However, as a distributed system, no single entity is responsible for or directly manages all aspects of the enterprise.

1-44. Joint doctrine defines Homeland defense operations as "the protection of United States sovereignty, territory, domestic population, and critical infrastructure against external threats and aggression or other threats as directed by the President" (JP 3-0). The operative phrase is "external threats and aggression". Homeland defense begins far from the territory of the United States, and depends upon U.S. forces and the assistance of America's immediate neighbors including Canada and Mexico. The Department of Defense takes the lead for homeland defense, and other federal government organizations provide support. For more information concerning Homeland Defense, refer to JP 3-27, Homeland Defense.

PRIMARY CIVIL SUPPORT TASKS

1-45. FM 3-28 adds an additional primary task to the three tasks specified in FM 3-0. There are now four primary civil support tasks:

- Provide support in response to a domestic disaster.
- Support chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear, and high yield explosive (CBRNE) consequence management.
- Support civilian law enforcement agencies.
- Provide other support as required.

1-46. The expansion to four tasks recognizes the increased emphasis placed on CBRNE response, particularly if terrorist groups employ weapons of mass destruction (WMD). Incidents involving CBRNE threats require specialized capabilities, and the effects of WMD on domestic operational environments may be considerably more complex than other disasters. Similar considerations apply to pandemic response. Figure 1-2 illustrates the four primary civil support tasks and provides example missions for each.

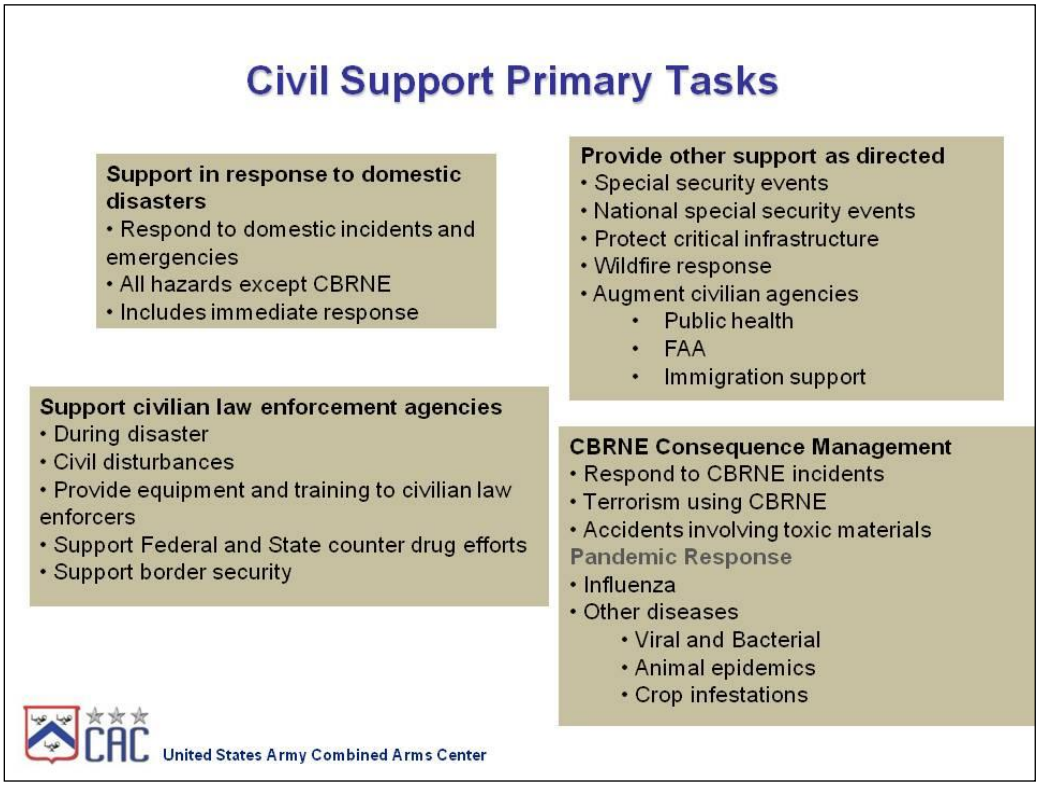


Figure 1-2. Civil support tasks with examples

PROVIDE SUPPORT IN RESPONSE TO DOMESTIC DISASTERS

1-47. There are many types of disasters, but they all have one thing in common: people in the disaster area have their lives upended and all too often, lose loved ones. Natural disasters occur throughout the United States and its territories. Some disasters afford some warning beforehand, such as hurricanes, ice storms, or even volcanic eruptions. The Department of Homeland Security, and specifically FEMA, marshals available support in advance of these events and assists local and state officials with evacuation plans and recovery after the disaster. For other disasters, such as an earthquake or a chemical accident, there is usually no warning. Emergency services and law enforcement at every level respond according to prior planning and the availability of resources. Military response occurs at four levels:

- At the direction of the Governor for state National Guard forces;
- A declaration by the President requested by the governor of the affected state
- At the direction of Service Secretaries for capabilities not assigned to the combatant commanders (for example, bases and installations);
- Through immediate response authority;

CBRNE CONSEQUENCE MANAGEMENT

1-48. Since September 11, 2001, Americans understand the seriousness of an attack on the homeland by terrorists. Congress created the Department of Homeland Security (DHS) to meet this threat in the wake of the attacks in 2001. The most dangerous threats to the homeland come from terrorist groups armed with weapons of mass destruction (WMD). The majority of scenarios in the National Response Framework deal with accidental or deliberate threats posed by CBRNE. In the aftermath of an attack with a WMD, Title 10 and State military forces provide specialized capabilities and general-purpose forces in support of civil authorities.

1-49. Not every CBRNE threat is from terrorists, or even man-made. A pandemic is a global disease outbreak. A pandemic occurs when a new disease emerges for which people have little or no immunity and for which there is no vaccine immediately available. The disease spreads easily person-to-person, produces serious illness, and can sweep across the country and around the world in very short time. “Pandemic influenza”, for example refers to an influenza virus that infects humans across a large area and proves very difficult to contain. The word “pandemic” confuses many people, particularly those who equate it with mass casualties. Actually, the designation of pandemic does not relate to the lethality of the disease, but its spread. Influenza outbreaks are always serious because the virus may mutate into something more lethal as it spreads. Army support to pandemic response is both external and internal. Externally, Army forces respond to lead federal and state agencies request for support in dealing with the disease. Internally, Army installations take all applicable measures to maintain the combat readiness of the force.

1-50. Other outbreaks of infectious disease may prove more serious than a contagious influenza. These include animal diseases such as hoof and mouth disease, and crop infestations caused by fungus, bacteria, or viruses. In these incidents, the Army provides support when requested by agencies such as state and federal the Departments of Agriculture. Although technically not pandemics, these incidents could entail significant support from DOD and the National Guard.

SUPPORT CIVILIAN LAW ENFORCEMENT AGENCIES

1-51. This task applies to the restricted use of military assets to support civil law enforcement personnel conducting civil law enforcement operations within the United States and its territories. These operations are significantly different from operations outside of the boundaries of the United States. Army forces support civilian law enforcement under U.S. Constitutional and statutory restrictions and corresponding directives and regulations. Army leaders must understand the statutes governing the use of military assets for civil law enforcement. By understanding these statutes, Soldiers can avoid violating laws while achieving desired objectives.

PROVIDE OTHER SUPPORT AS REQUIRED

1-52. This task denotes pre-planned, routine, and periodic support not related to a disasters or emergencies. Most often, this is support to major public events, and consists of participatory support, special transportation, and additional security. These events are national special security events (NSSE) such as the Olympics, an Inauguration, or a state funeral. Some missions may involve specific support requested by a Federal or State Agency to augment their capabilities due to labor shortages or a sudden increase in demands. Such support may extend to augmentation of critical government services by Soldiers, as authorized by the President and directed by the Secretary of Defense. For example, President Reagan replaced striking Air Controllers in the Federal Aviation Administration with like skilled military personnel, until newly hired civilians completed training. Other presidents have used Soldiers to move coal during strikes, or even take over key commercial enterprises when the President believed security considerations justified such radical action.

1-53. One of the missions that either Title 10 or State military forces receive on a regular basis is firefighting within state and national lands. This is a hybrid mission, sharing aspects of disaster response and planned support to an agency or community. (See Chapter 6)

FUNDAMENTALS OF CIVIL SUPPORT

1-54. A broad set of fundamentals applies to any of the civil support tasks and guides Army leaders at every echelon. While every civil support mission is unique, these fundamentals shape the actions of commanders and leaders in the accomplishment of any civil support mission. Army forces may or may not be among the first organizations to arrive in an incident response operation. However, Army forces should be among the first organizations to complete their tasks, transition responsibilities to civil agencies, and leave. Civil support operations succeed when they create the conditions for civil authorities and nonmilitary groups to carry on the effort without military support. The fundamentals of Civil support are—

- The primary purposes of civil support are to save lives, alleviate suffering, and protect property.
- The law defines every aspect of civil support operations – who has jurisdiction; who responds; and the restraints and constraints imposed on Soldiers.
- Civilian officials direct civil support operations. They set the priorities. The Army supports them.
- All costs associated with civil support missions must be documented.
- The military end state is reached when civilian authorities can fulfill their responsibilities without military assistance

THE PRIMARY PURPOSES OF CIVIL SUPPORT ARE TO SAVE LIVES, ALLEVIATE SUFFERING, AND PROTECT PROPERTY.

1-55. While there are many potential missions for Soldiers as part of civil support, the overarching purposes of these missions are, in order, to save lives, alleviate suffering, and protect property. Some missions may accomplish these purposes directly. An aircraft crew participating in a search and rescue operation is there to save lives. Regular Army Soldiers fighting fires in a National Forest are guarding public property, as are the National Guard Soldiers patrolling streets in the aftermath of a tornado. Some civil support missions accomplish these purposes indirectly. The Soldiers and civilians assisting with the load-out of medical supplies that are being shipped from an installation to a municipal shelter will not meet the citizens housed there, but their actions help reduce the distress of their fellow citizens. In the absence of orders, or in uncertain and chaotic situations, each Soldier governs their actions based on these three purposes.

THE LAW DEFINES EVERY ASPECT OF CIVIL SUPPORT OPERATIONS – WHO HAS JURISDICTION; WHO RESPONDS; AND THE RESTRAINTS AND CONSTRAINTS IMPOSED ON SOLDIERS.

1-56. The law defines almost every aspect of civil support operations. It prohibits many Soldiers from undertaking certain missions, in particular those associated with law enforcement. The law also specifies

professional requirements for skills such as medical treatment. Commanders should consult with the staff judge advocate before authorizing Soldiers to execute any task outside of the mission received through the chain of command.

1-57. Domestic operational environments are quite different from other environments outside the United States because of U.S. law. Military forces operating in the domestic environment do not have a status-of-forces agreement as they would when deployed overseas. Disregard of the laws regarding civil support can cause military units to enter a legal minefield that will cripple mission accomplishment. Leaders at every level ensure that their Soldiers comply with applicable U.S. law, even when it hampers rapid accomplishment of the mission. For example, an Army unit storing or transporting ordnance and ammunition may be subject to Environmental Protection Agency restrictions. Unless waived by legal authority, laws restrict Army chaplains from conducting religious services for local citizens.

1-58. Every deploying headquarters requires a staff judge advocate or ready access to a staff judge advocate. Army staff judge advocates know and assess the applicability of federal and state laws when Army forces conduct civil support operations. Commanders concentrate particularly on legal limitations, especially those concerning law enforcement support by Regular Army forces and Army National Guard forces serving in Title 10 status. Unless there is an imminent risk to life or limb, commanders in doubt about the legal consequences of an action ask their higher headquarters for clarification.

1-59. Crises can bring out the best and worst in human nature, including military forces. With this in mind, military units, particularly early responding National Guard units, must be prepared to enforce the laws in environments where civilians' behavior is at its worst. The rules for use of force are restrictive, and leaders review them with their subordinates before every mission. All personnel must understand the Standing Rules for the Use of Force (SRUF) and any approved mission-specific rules for the use of force (RUF). The rules for the use of force (RUF) are the equivalent of the rules of engagement (ROE), except that they apply in domestic, noncombat situations. The ROE used in combat are permissive; the RUF are restrictive in nature. They give the same emphasis to rules for the use of force as to rules of engagement in a restrictive environment. Commanders always keep in mind that the first purpose of civil support is to save lives; lethal force is always a measure of last resort. (See Chapter 7)

1-60. In civil support, military capability comprises—

- The ability to perform a task effectively and efficiently;
- The ability to perform a task safely;
- The legal authority to perform a task.

1-61. Soldiers are mission-focused and trained to exercise initiative in combat. Even if they lack resources, Soldiers often accomplish missions through non-doctrinal tactics, techniques, and procedures. Soldiers make up for a lack of resources by combining anything at hand with unlimited effort. While effective, it is inefficient. In civil support operations, commanders maintain a balance between the willingness of their subordinates to tackle any mission against the capability to do it.

1-62. Safety and risk management are paramount. Soldiers sometimes attempt to perform tasks without the appropriate training or equipment. In combat, their action may win the engagement. In civil support operations, it could lead to a lawsuit, legal action, an injury, or all three. Therefore, commanders ensure that Soldiers avoid improvising and adhere to all safety procedures. To illustrate, a collapsed building in the aftermath of an earthquake becomes one of the most hazardous places imaginable. If Soldiers attempt an improvised rescue, they may become victims themselves and kill the trapped survivors. Subsequent investigations may assign liability to the commander that proceeded without authority.

CIVILIAN OFFICIALS DIRECT CIVIL SUPPORT OPERATIONS. THEY SET THE PRIORITIES. THE ARMY SUPPORTS THEM.

1-63. In civil support operations, the military works for the civilian agency. The command of military forces remains within military channels, but missions begin as requests for assistance from the supported civilian authorities. One of the biggest mistakes that tactical commanders may make is to assume that they need to take charge upon arrival at the scene of an incident. Military forces operating freely within civilian jurisdictions risk upsetting the balance between civilian authority and the private sector. While a

commander may view sidestepping local authority as a faster means of accomplishing the mission, long-term recovery may be negatively affected. Commanders begin by viewing their areas of operations as a mosaic of civil authorities, each with primacy in its jurisdiction. While the mission may constitute a specific military task, commanders realize the end state requires that state, territorial, local, and tribal authorities provide effective support to their citizens, with the assistance of military forces.

1-64. Military forces are not organized or equipped to operate efficiently within the domestic environment, although they may be the most effective means of response early in an emergency. For example, a sapper engineer unit can remove enough debris to clear emergency routes, but a commercial construction company can usually do the job better, faster, and more cheaply when they arrive. In addition, the civilian construction contributes to economic recovery by putting local businesses and people back to work.

1-65. The primary civilian agency establishes the priority of effort in any civil support operation. At the federal level, this is typically the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA). At the state level, it is the State Emergency Management Agency (SEMA) or equivalent. However, the civilian agencies do not issue orders to military units. Military planners located within a multi-agency command structure integrate Federal and State military capabilities within priorities established by the primary agency Typically, this is the DCO at the federal field office and the state director of military support (SDOMS) working with the state emergency manager. These individuals and their staffs ensure that military forces receive the correct priority of effort, and then translate the civilian guidance into mission assignments.

1-66. Army forces, regardless of their duty status, plan to accomplish their tasks and hand over any remaining tasks or duties to appropriate civil organizations as soon as feasible. Army forces complete their missions and redeploy in the least amount of time needed civil authorities to resume providing for citizens and carry on the response without military support. Federal military forces normally complete their tasks before the end state of complete recovery. National Guard forces often experience a double transition. In the first phase, they may take over missions previously assigned to joint Federal military forces or National Guard forces sent from other states. In the second phase, they support the transition to a fully civilian-run recovery operation.

1-67. Because the National Guard of each state and territory builds relationships with its civilian counterparts continuously, when National Guard forces arrive to support an incident response they usually integrate with first responders very quickly. Federal forces benefit from the National Guard's contacts to develop amicable and efficient operations with local civil authorities.

ALL COSTS ASSOCIATED WITH CIVIL SUPPORT MISSIONS MUST BE DOCUMENTED.

1-68. Another major distinction in domestic operations is the requirement for supported civilian agencies to reimburse DOD for any support provided by joint forces. All DOD civil support is provided on a reimbursable basis unless otherwise directed by the President, or reimbursement is waived by the Secretary of Defense. Cost reimbursement for civil support is usually IAW Title 31 USC, Section 1535 (commonly called the Economy Act), which mandates cost reimbursement by the federal agency requesting support. The Stafford Act sets the guidelines for reimbursements to federal agencies and states from federal funds set aside to support missions in response to a Presidential declaration. Federal law also mandates that the States reimburse FEMA for a portion (usually 25%) of any request for assistance that is passed to the Federal level. This requires detailed documentation of what civil support State and Federal military forces actually provided. Therefore <u>all</u> military forces engaged in civil support maintain a detailed record of operations, and not just direct expenditures.

1-69. The practical effect on Army commanders is a requirement to document activities in much more detail than they normally would outside the United States. In particular, commanders ensure they document and report all transfers of equipment and supplies (including expendables) to another agency. As a rule, battalion and higher units designate a responsible staff section to document all costs associated with civil support missions and establish procedures for documenting costs within the unit. Subordinate leaders ensure that Soldiers and Marines keep logbooks, automated documentation systems, and reports up-to-date. Even in the initial response to a major catastrophe, leaders urge subordinates to record actions taken and resources transferred from their unit to civilians and other military units.

THE MILITARY END STATE IS REACHED WHEN CIVILIAN AUTHORITIES CAN FULFILL THEIR RESPONSIBILITIES WITHOUT MILITARY ASSISTANCE

1-70. The military end state for civil support missions, tactically and operationally, is based on the capabilities of civilian authorities to discharge their responsibilities without military assistance. Measures of effectiveness should be based upon civilian capability to do that particular task without military assistance. As soon as that threshold is achieved, Commanders report it to the supported agency through the military chain of command. Note that this does not imply a complete return to normalcy; rather, that means other than military are available to do the mission. For example, an Army unit may be tasked to deliver food and water to a community isolated by a disaster. As soon as the roads reopen, civilian relief organizations move in and begin supplying necessities using contracted vehicles. Although life is not back to normal, civilians can meet the communities' most basic requirements without the military.

TRAINING FOR CIVIL SUPPORT OPERATIONS

1-71. Civil Support operations require specialized training for military forces, although many of the tasks implemented at the tactical unit level can be similar to some of the tasks conducted in Stability Operations. Both focus on the civilians within an area of operations. Mission accomplishment depends on the success of civilian agencies, and not on battlefield victory. Both Stability and Civil support stress the employment of non-destructive means rather than the use of traditional lethal combat power that Soldiers employ during combat operations against enemy forces. However, in other aspects, the two elements of full spectrum operations are different. Operations conducted inside the borders of the United States require Army forces to provide support to civilian agencies through a comprehensive approach laid out in National doctrine and directives. Operations are constrained by different laws to a greater degree than that prescribed by the Law of Land Warfare and The Hague and Geneva Conventions. It is accurate to say that both stability operations and civil support operations require similar capabilities, and achieve similar purposes, but Soldiers conduct them under radically different conditions.

COMMON TASKS BY WARFIGHTING FUNCTION

1-72. FM 7-15, The Army Universal Task List identifies a comprehensive list of tasks and groups them into six warfighting functions. The Warfighting Functions (ART 1 through 6) address movement and maneuver (ART1); Intelligence (ART2); Fires (ART 3); Sustainment; (ART4); Command and Control (ART5); and Protection (ART6). Additional larger tasks appear under Army Tactical Task (ART 7), which includes tactical missions, full spectrum operations, and operational themes.

1-73. Appendix J, FM 7-15, provides a breakdown of the tactical tasks and indicates which tasks are common for both stability and civil support operations. It also highlights those tasks unique to stability operations, and those that exclusively belong to civil support. Trainers should note that appendix omits the fires warfighting function, which does not contain tactical tasks directly applicable to stability or civil support operations. Excluding the fires tasks, there is a 78 % correlation between stability and civil support related tasks. That is, over ¾ of the tasks units execute in stability operations also occur in civil support operations. The reverse, tasks unique to civil support, is currently very small (only 5 out of 630). The number of unique tasks will grow as forces cycle through civil support missions and identify additional AUTL tasks. For example, civil support operations require the unit to establish unclassified communication bridges between networks with federal, state, and local agencies.

1-74. Although units will perform the same tasks in either stability or civil support, the conditions and standards required for civil support operations will be different. For example, ART 7.3.1, establish Civil Security, has 19 different measures. Army forces conducting civil support also support civil security, but only in seven measures. The conditions and standards for the task are quite different for security provided in civil support.

TRAINING PRIORITY FOR CIVIL SUPPORT TASKS

1-75. Commanders tasked to prepare for civil support missions assess their unit's proficiency in three warfighting functions; in priority, they are Command and Control, Sustainment, and Protection. These

three take priority because disasters usually occur without warning. The requirement to deploy into a restrictive operational environment, and operate with joint and interagency elements requires a well-drilled command and control system, with flexible Soldiers able to improvise and adapt systems intended for combat into a robust civilian disaster response system based upon National Incident Management System (NIMS). The majority of missions given to Army forces in a disaster will stress the sustainment warfighting function. Mission success will hinge upon the units ability to deliver personnel, medical support, supplies, and equipment, while maintaining their equipment, and their Soldiers. This will normally occur in an area devastated by a disaster and lacking potable water, power, and sanitation. This generates the third priority, protection. Even without the threat of attacks by terrorists, a disaster area is a dangerous place. In the event of a CBRNE incident, it can become a deadly environment for those without proper training and equipment. For those units that have a specific CBRNE mission, this function becomes their top training priority.

Chapter 2

A Comprehensive Approach for Civil Support

This chapter describes the existing system for integration of all government agencies involved responding to domestic emergencies. It gives an overview of the National Incident Management System and the National Response Framework. After that, it clarifies responsibilities and relationships among civil authorities, Department of Defense, and the Army. In conjunction with defense support of civil authorities, the planning, policies, and procedures established in the National-level documents provide a comprehensive approach to civil support.

NATIONAL GUIDANCE FOR DOMESTIC EMERGENCIES

2-1. The National Incident Management System (NIMS) establishes the national concept for incident management across local, state, and federal levels. In military terms, NIMS contains the capstone doctrine for interagency and nongovernmental agency civil support in the United States. The systems described in the NIMS are the foundation for the additional coordination procedures described in the National Response Framework (NRF). The NIMS also provides the foundation for development of planning scenarios ranging from a terrorist nuclear attack to the outbreak of a deadly infectious disease. The Department of Homeland Security (DHS) promulgates and updates the NIMS, NRF, and supporting planning documents. The NIMS and NRF provide policy and guidance for federal agencies, including Department of Defense (DOD). Federal agencies develop supporting plans that implement the requirements established in the NIMS and NRF. Virtually all state, county, and city emergency managers use the NIMS and NRF.

2-2. The United States has a comprehensive approach for responding to domestic emergencies because the NIMS and NRF apply across all levels of government, and nongovernmental agencies adhere to the principles they contain. Unity of effort is often a challenge, particularly in an emergency response. The DHS publishes the NIMS and NRF to provide guidance on how to achieve unity of effort across governmental and non-governmental agencies.

2-3. Incident response is a federally planned but bottom-up response system, usually progressing from local to state to federal level as the magnitude of a particular incident exceeds the resources of the first responders. This is a "tiered response". Local first responders take initial action, whether an incident is a routine small-scale emergency or a major disaster requiring further assistance. Initially, local, state, and tribal officers rely on their own law enforcement, firefighting, and other resources, which may include the State's National Guard. Within each state, local chief executive officers (such as mayors and county commissioners) and tribal chief executive officers assess the situation. If necessary, they then request assistance from a neighboring county or municipality. Normally, assistance from neighboring jurisdictions follows established agreements. If an incident overwhelms these capabilities, the local civil authorities request state assistance. If necessary, the Governor requests federal support. Federal military installations near the disaster may respond when asked by the local civil authorities (see chapter 3); in such instances they may be the first Soldiers at the scene of an incident.

2-4. The leaders of tribal nations have the right to request certain federal assistance directly, bypassing the state in which tribal lands are located. (In general, tribal nations have authority similar to state authority for incident response operations. However, a request for a Presidential declaration under the Stafford Act, must go through the Governor of that state.

2-5. Even though they support civilian authority, all military forces remain under the operational and administrative control of their respective military chains of command. For the National Guard this extends upward through their state military command structure to the governor. Regular Army, mobilized Army Reserve, and Marine forces always remain under the command of the President through the Secretary of

Defense and through the supported combatant commander or Service secretary. Military units support civilian organizations that follow the national policy in the NIMS and NRF (described below), but Soldiers remain under military command and follow military doctrine, including this manual. Thus, a joint task force providing civil support plans according to the principles and processes described in JP 5-0. An Army brigade under operational control of a joint task force follows the Army operations process—plan, prepare, execute, and assess—and uses the military decision making process. Similarly, Army forces exercise command and control through their existing structures; they do not modify their operations center to conform to NIMS. However, they adapt their procedures and liaison arrangements to interface with their civilian counterparts.

THE NATIONAL INCIDENT MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

2-6. The National Incident Management System (NIMS) has five components: preparedness, communications and information management, resource management, command and management, and ongoing management and maintenance. This discussion highlights the central construct of the NIMS—the command and management component. Individual responders and agencies manage and coordinate their efforts using these flexible elements of the NIMS command and management component:

- The incident command system (ICS).
- Multiagency coordination systems (MACS).
- Public information. This field manual does not provide an exhaustive discussion of the NIMS. For the complete document, see FEMA's Web site at http://www.fema.gov .
- NIMS planning process. Broadly similar to the military decision making process (MDMP), the NIMS planning process guides responders in each tier as they respond to the situation with an Incident Action Plan (IAP).

Incident Command System

2-7. The NIMS establishes the incident command system as the standardized organizational structure for managing all domestic incidents. The incident command system includes common terminology, modular organization, management by objectives, reliance on an incident action plan, manageable span of control, and integrated communications (see the NIMS document for a thorough discussion). Every incident command organization shares these characteristics, but each incident command structure adapts to the requirements of situation. In the immediate aftermath of any incident, local responders arrive first on the scene. First responders normally include law enforcement, fire, emergency medical services and hazardous materials teams. At the incident site, local authorities organize the various responders based on the incident command structure.

2-8. Civilian incident management terms such as *single incident command*, *unified command*, and *area command* (explained further later in this chapter) do not include the idea of giving and receiving military orders. A designated civilian incident commander directs subordinates within his or her chain of authority. But for the most part, this civilian commander *manages* other participating organizations and individuals. In this civilian usage of *command*—within a multiagency environment—groups and individuals generally carry out tasks they are willing to perform. Therefore, Army leaders adapt their leadership style not only to cooperate fully with other groups but also to encourage cooperation among all participating organizations and individuals. Army leaders keep in mind that they serve in a supporting role.

2-9. The incident command system prescribes five major functional areas: command, operations, logistics, planning, and finance. As required, information and intelligence functions are located in the planning section. However, if the situation warrants, the incident command system recommends that the organization break intelligence out as a sixth functional area. The incident command system is flexible to accommodate all circumstances including floods, hazardous material accidents, aircraft crashes, earthquakes—it is an all-hazards system. It is flexible enough to manage catastrophic incidents involving thousands of response personnel; several levels of command are possible. Options include a single incident command structure; a unified command structure, and an area command

2-10. A *single incident command* structure refers to situations in which one incident commander has manageable span of control. The single incident commander is normally the senior responder of the local

civilian organization with the responsibility for the incident, such as a fire chief or police chief. When there is only one incident commander, he or she establishes an incident command post at a safe distance from but not near the scene of the emergency to direct operations.

2-11. The incident command system provides the flexibility for agencies to coordinate and combine any number of independent efforts in an effective and efficient response. Based on the situation, a *unified command* structure enables agencies with different legal, geographic and functional responsibilities to plan and coordinate operations. In a unified command structure, the individuals designated by their jurisdictional authorities jointly determine objectives, plans, and priorities and work together to execute them. By working as a team, the unified command overcomes much of the inefficiency and duplication of effort that can occur when agencies from different functional and geographic jurisdictions, or agencies at different levels of government, operate without a common organizational framework.

2-12. The primary difference between the single incident command structure and the unified command structure is that in a single incident command structure, one incident commander is solely responsible for establishing incident management objectives and strategies. Unified command strives for unity of effort as all responding agencies and organizations support the unified command without giving up individual agency authorities, responsibilities or accountability.

2-13. An incident large enough to require DOD support will usually be multijurisdictional and use a unified command structure. In addition, a very large or complex incident may have separate incident command organizations (any combination of single or unified commands). The primary federal agency may establish an *area command* to coordinate separate incident commands responding to a larger emergency. An area command does not have operational responsibilities—it is a management organization. Its functions include setting priorities, allocating resources according to established priorities, ensuring effective communications, and ensuring that incident management objectives are met and do not conflict with each other or with policy. (An area command becomes a *unified area command* when it is managing more than one multijurisdictional incident. This is different from a unified command responding to a single multijurisdictional incident.)

Incident Command Staff

2-14. When an incident requires a team of responders, the incident commander establishes an incident command post as close to the incident as practical. In a small incident command post, the incident command staff typically includes a public information officer, a safety officer, and a liaison officer. Depending on the nature of the incident, the incident commander adds additional staff support as needed. The incident command staff typically consists of operations, planning, logistics, and finance and administration section chiefs. These individuals, along with an incident commander (or unified command) and other qualified emergency management personnel, are known as an incident management team. Figure 2-1 illustrates the incident command staff developed by NIMS. See Appendix I.

2-15. The incident command staff has three sections identified as command staff. These are the Public Information Officer, the Safety Officer, and Liaison Officer. The Public Information Officer is responsible for The Public Information Officer is responsible for interfacing with the public and media and with other agencies with incident-related information requirements. The Public Information Officer assembles accurate, accessible, and complete information on the incident's cause, size, and current situation; the resources committed; and other matters of general interest for both internal and external audiences. The Safety Officer monitors incident operations and advises Incident Command on all matters relating to operational safety, including the health and safety of emergency responder personnel. The Safety Officer is responsible for developing the Incident Safety Plan—the set of systems and procedures necessary to ensure ongoing assessment of hazardous environments, coordination of multiagency safety efforts, and implementation of measures to promote emergency management/incident personnel safety, as well as the general safety of incident operations. The Liaison Officer is Incident Command's point of contact for representatives of other governmental departments and agencies, NGOs, and/or the private sector (with no jurisdiction or legal authority) to provide input on their organization's policies, resource availability, and other incident-related matters. In either a single or unified command structure, representatives from assisting or cooperating organizations coordinate through the Liaison Officer.

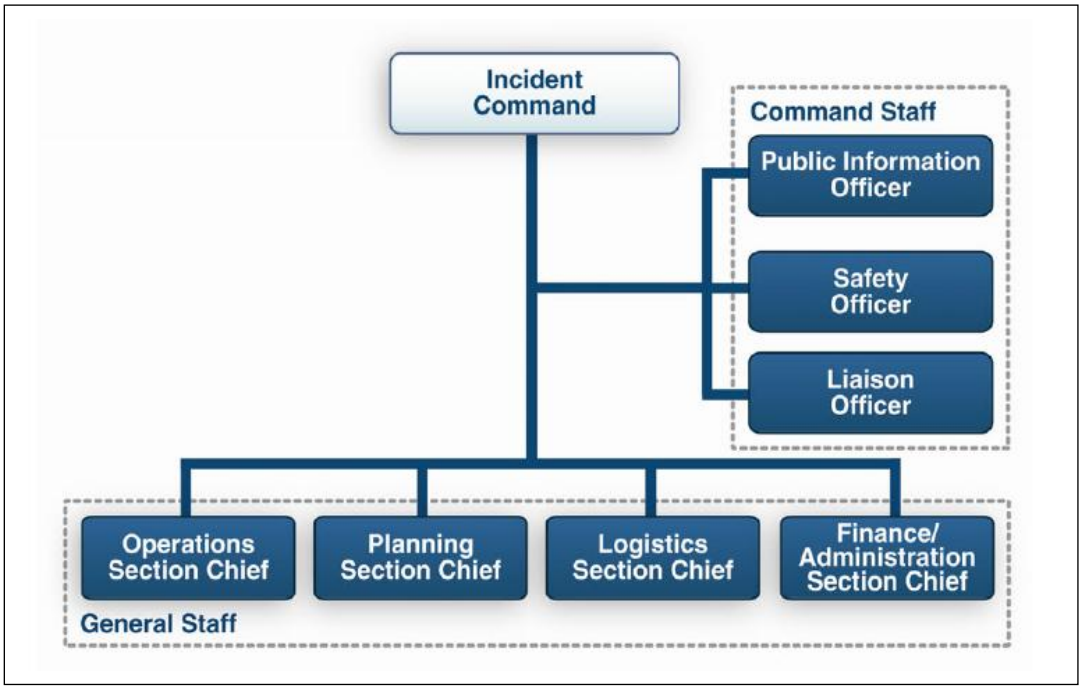


Figure 2-1. NIMS incident command system staff

2-16. An *incident complex* refers to two or more incidents located in the same general area and assigned to a single incident command or a unified command. This management system is used when multiple incidents, such as separate fires burning relatively close together, are more efficiently managed by one incident command system organization

Multi-agency Coordination Systems

2-17. *Multiagency coordination systems* (sometimes referred to as MACS) are flexible coordination processes established among related groups of supporting organizations. These organizations normally coordinate resources above the field level. The two most common elements of NIMS multiagency coordination systems are multiagency coordination groups and emergency operations centers.

2-18. A *multiagency coordination group* is an ad hoc coordination group usually consisting of administrators, executives, or their representatives. They commit agency resources and funds to support an incident response. Multiagency coordination groups, sometimes known as MAC groups, establish coordination procedures (systems) that bridge members' jurisdictional lines and disciplines to support operations on the ground. Multiagency coordination groups communicate and coordinate with the incident command or unified command, often through personnel located at an emergency operations center (see figure 2-3).

2-19. An *emergency operations center*, (EOC), is a physical location at which the coordination of information and resources to support on-site incident management activities normally takes place. An emergency operations center may be a temporary facility or may be located in a permanently established facility. Many cities, most counties, and most states have permanent emergency operations centers. These may be organized by major functional disciplines (e.g., fire, law enforcement, and medical services), by jurisdiction (e.g., federal, state, regional, county, city, tribal), or by some combination (see JP 3-41). An emergency operations center normally includes a full incident command staff performing coordination; communications; resource allocation and tracking; and information collection, analysis, and dissemination. An emergency operations center serves as a central communication point between organizations participating in the incident command system and multiagency coordination groups. In a complex operation, several emergency operations centers may be operating at different jurisdictional levels. An area

command may interface between multiple incident command posts and an emergency operations center (see figure 2-2 and 2-3).

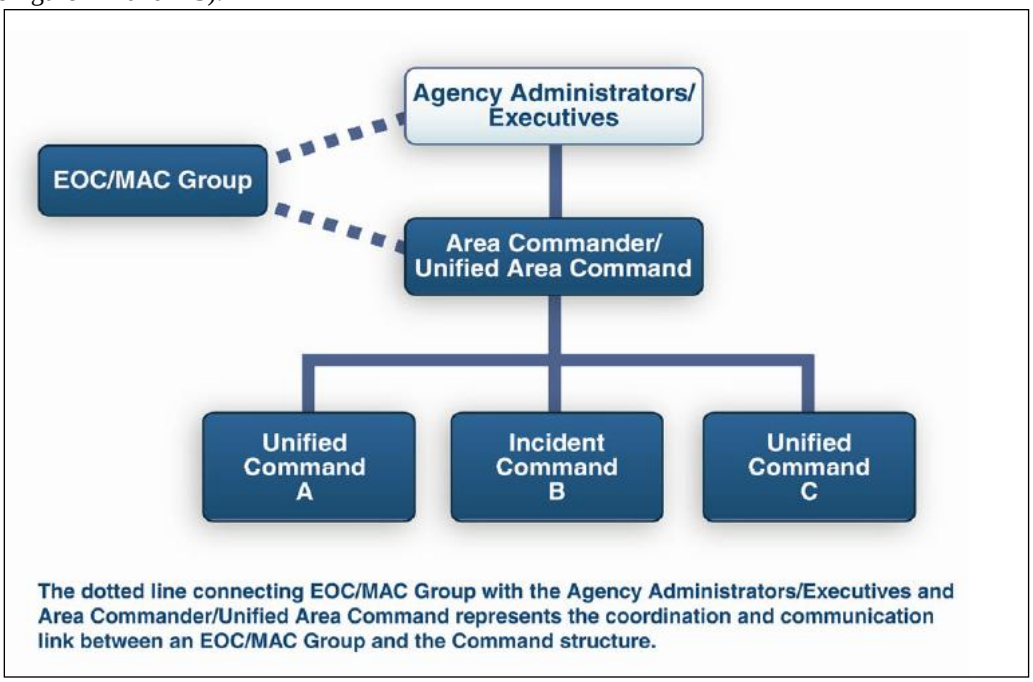


Figure 2-2. Example of NIMS unified command and management structure

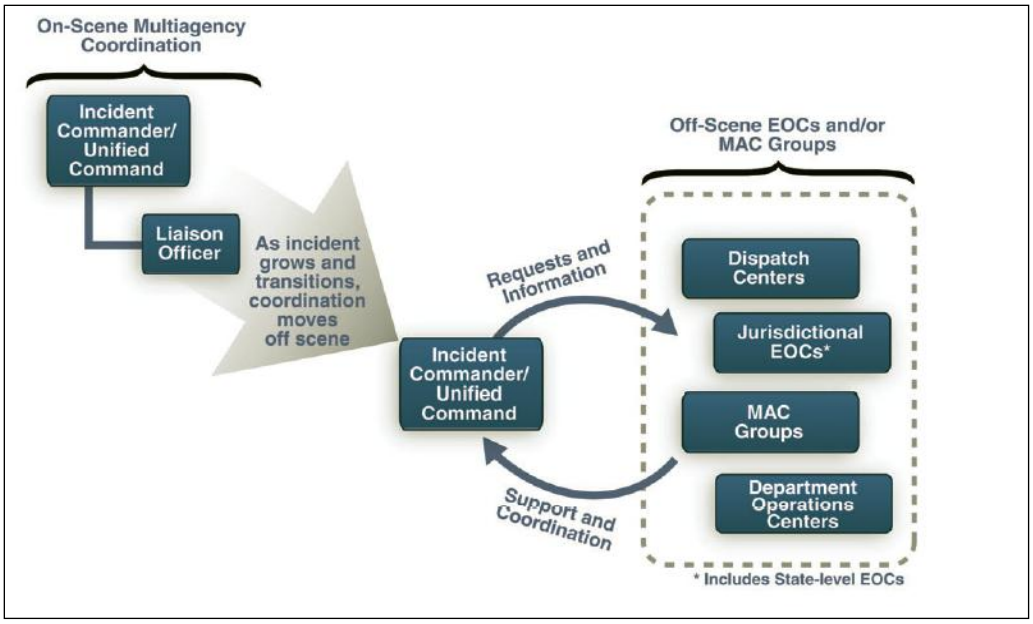


Figure 2-3: Expanding command and coordination under NIMS

Public Information

2-20. In the NIMS, *public information* refers to flexible processes, procedures, and systems used by incident managers to communicate timely, accurate, and accessible information about an incident to the public, responders, and additional stakeholders. In a large, multiagency incident response, the NIMS public information system includes a public information officer, a joint information system, and a joint information center. (The word "joint" means "multiagency" in this context.) A civilian public information

officer supports the incident command and management structure as a member of the command staff (refer to figure 2-2). The public information officer gathers, verifies, coordinates, and disseminates information regarding the incident. This person is responsible for interfacing with the public, the news media, and other agencies.

2-21. A multiagency *joint information center* (a feature of the NIMS communications and information management component) serves as the central location for exchanging public information. A large incident may require more than one joint information center. This component emphasizes the need for a common operating picture (similar to the common operational picture in Army doctrine) and interoperability of systems and components. Participating organizations cooperate to establish communications interoperability and standardize their types of communication and their equipment. (See Appendix K Media Considerations)

The NIMS Planning Process

2-22. Army officers should be familiar with this process to synchronize planning with civilian counterparts. The NIMS planning process represents a template for planning that includes all steps that an Incident Commander(IC)/Unified Command (UC) and other members of the command and general staffs should take to develop and disseminate an Incident Action Plan (IAP). A clear, concise IAP template is essential to guide the initial incident management decision process and the continuing collective planning activities of Incident Management Teams (IMTs). The NIMS describes a planning process for developing an Incident Action Plan. Army officers should be familiar with this process to synchronize planning with civilian counterparts.

2-23. The process contains five primary phases that are designed to enable the accomplishment of incident objectives within a specified time. The planning process may begin with the scheduling of a planned event, the identification of a credible threat, or the initial response to an actual or impending event. The process continues with the implementation of the formalized steps and the staffing in developing a written IAP.

2-24. The IAP must provide clear strategic direction and include a comprehensive listing of the tactics, resources, reserves, and support required to accomplish each overarching incident objective. The comprehensive IAP will state the sequence of events for achieving multiple incident objectives in a coordinated way. However, the IAP is a living document that is based on the best available information at the time of the Planning Meeting. Planning Meetings should not be delayed in anticipation of future information.

2-25. The primary phases of the planning process are essentially the same for the IC who develops the initial plan, for the IC and Operations Section Chief revising the initial plan for extended operations, and for the IMT developing a formal IAP. During the initial stages of incident management, planners should develop a simple plan that can be communicated through concise oral briefings. Frequently, this plan must be developed very quickly and with incomplete situation information. As the incident management effort evolves, additional lead time, staff, information systems, and technologies enable more detailed planning and cataloging of events and lessons learned.

2-26. The five primary phases in the planning process are to understand the situation; establish incident objectives and strategy; develop the plan; prepare and disseminate the plan; and execute, evaluate, and revise the plan.

2-27. *Understand the Situation*. The first phase includes gathering, recording, analyzing, and displaying situation, resource, and incident-potential information in a manner that will facilitate increased situational awareness of the magnitude, complexity, and potential impact of the incident; and help determine the resources required to develop and implement an effective IAP.

2-28. *Establish Incident Objectives and Strategy*. The second phase includes formulating and prioritizing measurable incident objectives and identifying an appropriate strategy. The incident objectives and strategy must conform to the legal obligations and management objectives of all affected agencies, and may need to include specific issues relevant to critical infrastructure. Reasonable alternative strategies that will accomplish overall incident objectives are identified, analyzed, and evaluated to determine the most appropriate strategy for the situation at hand. Evaluation criteria include public health and safety factors, estimated costs, and various environmental, legal, and political considerations.

2-29. *Develop the Plan*. The third phase involves determining the tactical direction and the specific resources, reserves, and support requirements for implementing the selected strategies and tactics for the operational period. Before the formal planning meetings, each member of the command and general Staffs is responsible for gathering certain information to support the proposed plan.

2-30. *Prepare and Disseminate the Plan*. The fourth phase involves preparing the plan in a format that is appropriate for the level of complexity of the incident. For the initial response, the format is a well-prepared outline for an oral briefing. For most incidents that will span multiple operational periods, the plan will be developed in writing according to ICS procedures.

2-31. *Execute, Evaluate, and Revise the Plan*. The planning process includes the requirement to execute and evaluate planned activities and check the accuracy of information to be used in planning for subsequent operational periods. The General Staff should regularly compare planned progress with actual progress. When deviations occur and when new information emerges, it should be included in the first step of the process used for modifying the current plan or developing the plan for the subsequent operational period.

OVERVIEW OF THE NATIONAL RESPONSE FRAMEWORK

2-32. The National Response Framework (NRF) replaced the earlier National Response Plan in 2004 as the all-hazards doctrine for managing domestic incidents.. It provides details concerning the principles in NIMS, focusing on prevention, preparedness, response, and recovery. It provides the structure and mechanisms for coordinating federal support to state and local incident managers and for exercising federal authorities and responsibilities incorporating the NIMS structure.

2-33. The NRF has a number of precepts. The NRF emphasizes a tiered response structure, with the lowest jurisdictional level possible retaining incident management responsibility. Local authorities provide the initial response to every incident, including manmade and natural disasters. When local authorities are overwhelmed, they request assistance from neighboring jurisdictions. When incidents are of such a magnitude that these resources are overwhelmed, local authorities request resources from the state. The state then draws on its own internal emergency response capabilities or requests assistance from neighboring states through mutual-aid agreements. States often deal with large and devastating events this way without any federal assistance. When state resources are overwhelmed, the governor requests federal support.

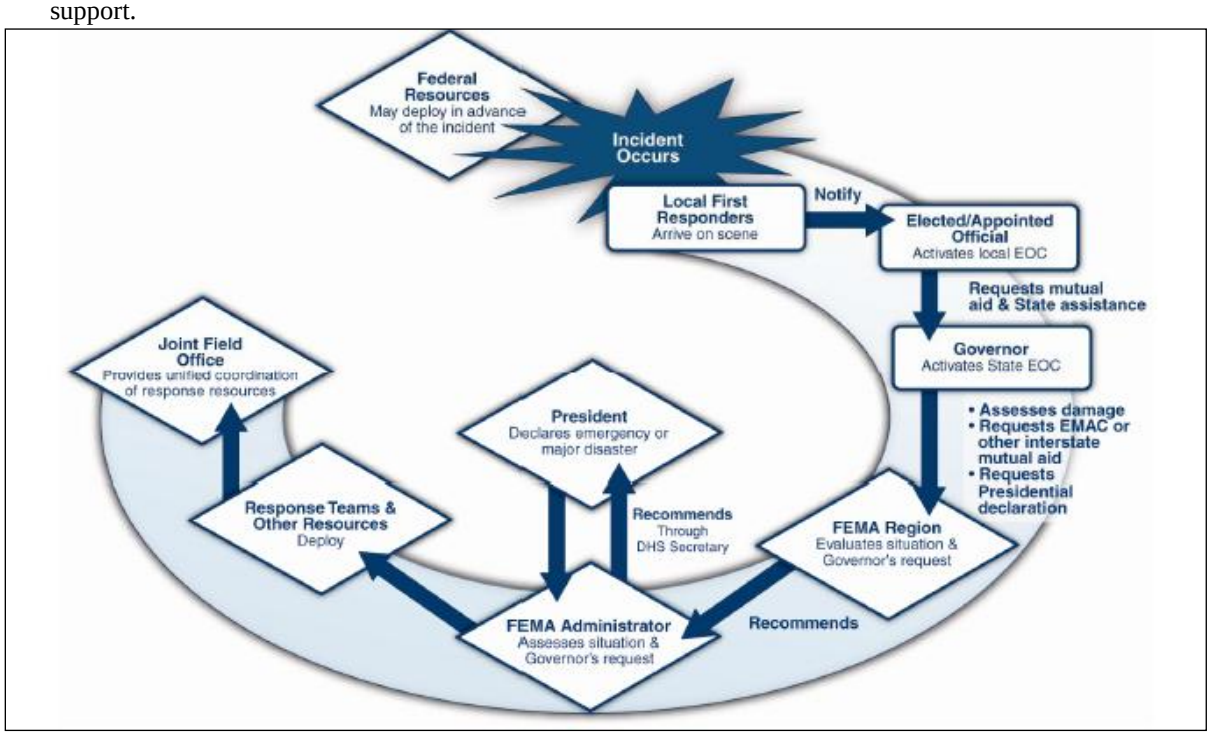


Figure 2-4. A broad overview of emergency response under the Stafford Act

2-34. The NRF establishes a systematic and coordinated approach to incident management at the field, regional, and federal agency headquarters levels. It establishes protocols for such activities as reporting incidents, issuing alerts and notification, coordinating response actions, and mobilizing resources. Though the NRF generally seeks to preserve the primary role of state and local bodies as first responders, it recognizes catastrophic events will require a federal government response.

The Five Principles of the National Response Framework

2-35. According to the NRF, the overarching objectives for incident response center on saving lives, reducing suffering, and protecting property and the environment. Five key NRF principles of operations are the basis of the overarching objectives:

- Leaders at all levels communicate and actively support *engaged partnerships* (cooperation) by developing shared goals and aligning capabilities so no one is overwhelmed in times of crisis.
- Incidents are managed at the lowest possible jurisdictional level and supported by additional capabilities when needed, through a *tiered response*.
- As incidents change in size, scope, and complexity, the response is adapted to meet requirements through *scalable, flexible, and adaptable operational capabilities*.
- Organizations participating in a multiagency or multijurisdictional response achieve *unity of effort through unified command*.
- Individuals, households, communities, and governments maintain *readiness to act* balanced with an understanding of risk.

Emergency Support Functions

2-36. A key component of the NRF is the Emergency Support Function Annexes (referred to as ESFs). The ESFs group federal resources and capabilities into fifteen support categories most likely needed for national incident response. ESFs outline responsibilities agreed to by each participating entity. Each ESF designates one entity as the ESF coordinator (sometimes referred to as the lead). Each ESF also has primary and supporting agencies. Table 2-1 lists the ESFs with the ESF coordinator for each. Below each ESF coordinator are the specific functions organized in that annex. The Department of Defense is a supporting agency for 14 of the 15 emergency support functions, and the ESF coordinator for one – Public Works and Engineering (US Army Corps of Engineers). The ESF coordinators work through the Defense Coordinating Officer (DCO) and Federal Coordinating Officer (FCO) to obtain DOD support for that function when civilian resources are insufficient.

Table 2-1. Emergency support function annexes

ESF #1 – Transportation ESF Coordinator: Department of Transportation
• Aviation/airspace management and control • Transportation safety • Restoration and recovery of transportation infrastructure • Movement restrictions • Damage and impact assessment
ESF #2 – Communications ESF Coordinator: DHS (FEMA)
• Coordination with telecommunications and information technology industries • Restoration and repair of telecommunications infrastructure • Protection, restoration, and sustainment of national cyber and information technology resources • Oversight of communications
ESF #3 – Public Works and Engineering ESF Coordinator: Department of Defense (U.S. Army Corps of Engineers)
• Infrastructure protection and emergency repair • Infrastructure restoration • Engineering services and construction management

• Emergency contracting support for life-saving and life-sustaining services
ESF #4 – Firefighting ESF Coordinator: Department of Agriculture (U.S. Forest Service)
• Coordination of Federal firefighting activities • Support to wild land, rural, and urban firefighting operations
ESF #5 – Emergency Management ESF Coordinator: DHS (FEMA)
• Coordination of incident management and response efforts • Issuance of mission assignments • Resource and human capital • Incident action planning • Financial management
ESF #6 – Mass Care, Emergency Assistance, Housing, and Human Services ESF Coordinator: DHS (FEMA)
• Mass care • Emergency assistance • Disaster housing • Human services
ESF #7 – Logistics Management and Resource Support ESF Coordinator: General Services Administration and DHS (FEMA)
• Comprehensive, national incident logistics planning, management, and sustainment capability • Resource support (facility space, office equipment and supplies, contracting services, etc.)
ESF #8 – Public Health and Medical Services ESF Coordinator: Department of Health and Human Services (HHS)
• Public health • Medical • Mental health services • Mass fatality management
ESF #9 – Search and Rescue ESF Coordinator: DHS (FEMA)
• Life-saving assistance • Search and rescue operations
ESF #10 – Oil and Hazardous Materials Response ESF Coordinator: Environmental Protection Agency
• Oil and hazardous materials (chemical, biological, radiological, etc.) response • Environmental short- and long-term cleanup
ESF #11 – Agriculture and Natural Resources ESF Coordinator: Department of Agriculture (USDA)
• Nutrition assistance • Animal and plant disease and pest response • Food safety and security • Natural and cultural resources and historic properties protection • Safety and well-being of household pets
ESF #12 – Energy ESF Coordinator: Department of Energy (DOE)
• Energy infrastructure assessment, repair, and restoration • Energy industry utilities coordination • Energy forecast
ESF #13 – Public Safety and Security ESF Coordinator: Department of Justice (DOJ)

• Facility and resource security • Security planning and technical resource assistance • Public safety and security support • Support to access, traffic, and crowd control
ESF #14 – Long-Term Community Recovery ESF Coordinator: DHS (FEMA)
• Social and economic community impact assessment • Long-term community recovery assistance to States, tribes, local governments, and the private sector • Analysis and review of mitigation program implementation
ESF #15 – External Affairs ESF Coordinator: DHS
• Emergency public information and protective action guidance • Media and community relations • Congressional and international affairs • Tribal and insular affairs

National Planning Scenarios

2-37. The NRF builds preparedness using the National Preparedness Guidelines and the National Infrastructure Protection Plan. The National Planning Scenarios are part of the National Preparedness Guidelines. Department of Homeland Security provides these scenarios for use at local, state, and national level to conduct exercises and estimate response capabilities. There are currently 15 planning scenarios. Each scenario provides the basis for planning and national level exercises. Table 2-2 lists the scenarios, and illustrates how the scenarios fit into eight key related scenario sets. Additional information is available at the FEMA website: http://www.fema.gov/government/training/index.shtm

Table 2-2. National planning scenarios

Key Scenario Sets	National Planning Scenarios
1. **Explosives Attack** – Bombing Using Improvised Explosive Device	• **Scenario 12:** Explosives Attack – Bombing Using Improvised Explosive Device
2. **Nuclear Attack**	• **Scenario 1:** Nuclear Detonation – Improvised Nuclear Device
3. **Radiological Attack** – Radiological Dispersal Device	• **Scenario 11:** Radiological Attack – Radiological Dispersal Device
4. **Biological Attack** – *With annexes for different pathogens*	• **Scenario 2:** Biological Attack – Aerosol Anthrax • **Scenario 4:** Biological Attack – Plague • **Scenario 13:** Biological Attack – Food Contamination • **Scenario 14:** Biological Attack – Foreign Animal Disease
5. **Chemical Attack** – *With annexes for different agents*	• **Scenario 5:** Chemical Attack – Blister Agent • **Scenario 6:** Chemical Attack – Toxic Industrial Chemicals • **Scenario 7:** Chemical Attack – Nerve Agent • **Scenario 8:** Chemical Attack – Chlorine Tank Explosion
6. **Natural Disaster** – *With annexes for different disasters*	• **Scenario 9:** Natural Disaster – Major Earthquake • **Scenario 10:** Natural Disaster – Major Hurricane
7. **Cyber Attack**	• **Scenario 15:** Cyber Attack
8. **Pandemic Influenza**	• **Scenario 3:** Biological Disease Outbreak – Pandemic Influenza

TIERED RESPONSE

1-76. The National Response Framework is based on the capacity of government to respond to extraordinary situations. Each level of government maintains enough capability to carry out its legal responsibilities specified in law. Each has some reserve capacity to deal with situations out of the ordinary that occur within its jurisdiction. When the situation exceeds the capacity of that level of government, it calls upon the next higher level of government to provide support. The key players in this tiered response are local government, tribal government, state and territorial government, and the federal government. Acting at all levels, non-governmental organizations (NGO) and the private sector work closely with government agencies in response to emergency.

COMPRESSION OF RESPONSE TIMES

1-77. Although tiered response is the guiding principle, actual response can be compressed to such a degree that response begins almost simultaneously at all levels. This is true for the military response to a major catastrophe, especially if the incident is preceded by a warning period, such as a hurricane. State military forces may receive an alert order through State channels at the same time that Federal military forces receive alert and prepare to deploy orders through DOD channels. Although the Stafford Act limits the ability of the Federal government to provide full assistance until requested by the governor of a state, the President and the Secretaries of Homeland Security and Defense have ample authority to prepare to support even before the formal request from the Governor arrives at the President's desk.

FIRST RESPONDERS—LOCAL LEVEL

2-38. No matter how large an incident becomes, almost every response begins at the local level. "First responders" normally include police, fire, and emergency medical personnel from the affected community. Homeland Security Presidential Directive -8, *National Preparedness*, defines "first responder" as those individuals who in the early stages of an incident are responsible for the protection and preservation of life, property, evidence, and the environment, including emergency response providers as defined in section 2 of the Homeland Security Act of 2002 (6 U.S.C. 101), as well as emergency management, public health, clinical care, publics works, and other skilled support personnel (such as equipment operators) that provide immediate support services during prevention, response, and recovery operations".

2-39. First responders are trained and certified to perform their specific duties and responsibilities IAW the NRF, NIMS, and their State and local laws and Emergency Operations Plan (EOP). They participate in multiple types of all-hazard exercises which are appropriate for their locality. The Incident Command System (ICS) is used at the local level. It is important to note that it is not the same as a military command and control (C2) system using echelons such as company, battalion, brigade, or JTF commanders for C2. (Refer to the published National Incident Management System)

2-40. Local first responders, such as police, fire, and emergency management, arrive very quickly and are usually the last to leave an incident site. Their command and management structures follow the incident command system. In any situation that requires multiple departments such as police, fire, and health services, the primary responding agency will designate the incident commander. For example, if a large fire causes injuries and disrupts traffic, the fire chief of the responding fire department becomes the incident commander. He or she will set up an incident command post near the scene and assume control of other assets as they are committed. As other assets arrive, such as fire companies from another city, they report to the incident commander and receive their missions. The incident command post may also receive reinforcements to enable it to increase its span of control and endurance.

2-41. In any major incident, the city or county executive activates an emergency operations center. These centers are usually designated facilities in or near the city hall, police headquarters, or county administration building. Large municipalities may have a purpose-built facility. From this location the local government maintains command and control over first responders, and coordinates requests for assistance. As the situation develops, the EOC may designate additional incident commanders based on geography and different challenges.

Local Chief Executive Officer—Mayor, Administrator, Manager, or Parish President

2-42. 2-1. Response to any incident begins at the local level and expands as each jurisdiction is overtaxed. This section discusses the basic roles of local, state, and tribal governmental organizations involved in domestic incident management. Understanding what local government consists of and their responsibilities leads to better integration of civil support operations. The Homeland Security Act of 2002 "local government" as:

> *a) "a county, municipality, city, town, local public authority, school district, special district, intrastate district, council of governments (regardless of whether the council of governments is incorporated as a nonprofit corporation under State Law), regional or interstate government entity, or agency or instrumentality of a local government;*
>
> *b) An Indian tribe or authorized tribal organization, or in Alaska a Native village or Alaska Regional Native Corporation; and c) a rural community, unincorporated town or village, or other public entity"*

2-43. Local governments (counties, cities, or towns) respond to emergencies daily using their own resources. They also rely on mutual aid and assistance agreements with neighboring jurisdictions when they need additional resources. A mayor or county manager, as that jurisdiction's chief executive, is responsible for the public safety and welfare of the people of that jurisdiction. This individual may also serve as the principal advisor to the State Emergency Director or the HSA. The local chief executive officer—

- Is responsible for coordinating local resources to prevent, prepare for, respond to, and recover from disasters.

- Depending on state and local law, mayors have powers to suspend local laws and ordinances in an emergency. The mayor may establish a curfew, order evacuations, and, in coordination with the local health authority, order quarantines.
- Provides leadership and plays and a key role in communicating to the public, and in helping people, businesses, and organizations cope with the consequences of any type of disaster.
- Negotiates and enters into mutual aid agreements with other jurisdictions to facilitate resource sharing.
- Requests state assistance through the Governor when the situation exceeds the local capability.
- May request emergency assistance to prevent loss of life or property from a nearby military installation.

Tribal Chief Executive Officer

2-44. Tribal governments respond to the same range of emergencies and disasters that other jurisdictions face. They may require assistance from neighboring jurisdictions under mutual aid and assistance agreements and may provide assistance as well. The United States has a trust relationship with Indian tribes and recognizes their right to self-government. As such, tribal governments are responsible for coordinating resources to address actual or potential incidents. When local resources are not adequate, tribal leaders seek assistance from States or the Federal Government. Tribal governments normally work with the State, but as sovereign entities, they can also elect to deal directly with the Federal Government for other types of assistance. In order to obtain Federal assistance via the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (Stafford Act), the State Governor must request a Presidential declaration on behalf of a tribe.

2-45. Native American reservations have a special status within civil support operations. They are neither federal property, such as a military base or national park, nor are they part of the state in which they are located. Within the reservation, that particular Indian Nation controls its own affairs. Most tribes have agreements in place with surrounding jurisdictions to provide emergency assistance such as medical, fire, and hazardous material response. Civil support of tribal authorities, however, remains an extremely sensitive area and occurs only in extraordinary circumstances.

2-46. Both the tribal authorities and the Department of the Interior, specifically the Bureau of Indian Affairs, must approve any military response into a Native American reservation. In a reversal of the normal response sequence, the President could commit Federal resources to an emergency on a reservation, while the National Guard of that state remains in a supporting role, outside the reservation. The tribal chief executive officer is responsible for the public safety and welfare of the people of that tribe. The tribal chief executive officer, as authorized by tribal government—

- Is responsible for coordinating tribal resources to address all actions to prevent, prepare for, respond to, and recover from disasters involving all hazards including terrorism, natural disasters, accidents, and other contingencies.
- May suspend tribal laws and ordinances, and take actions such as establishing a curfew, directing evacuations, and initiating quarantine.
- Provides leadership and plays a key role in communicating to the tribe, and in helping people, businesses, and organizations cope with the consequences of any type of domestic emergency or disaster within the jurisdiction.
- Negotiates and enters into mutual aid agreements with other tribes and jurisdictions to facilitate resource sharing.
- May request assistance directly from the federal government (other than under the Stafford Act), normally through the Bureau of Indian Affairs (BIA).
- May request state assistance through the Governor of the state.

STATE OR TERRITORIAL GOVERNOR

2-47. The State helps local governments if they need assistance. States have significant resources of their own, including emergency management and homeland security agencies, State police, health agencies, transportation agencies, incident management teams, specialized teams, and the National Guard. If

additional resources are required, the State may request assistance from other States through interstate mutual aid and assistance agreements such as the Emergency Management Assistance Compact (EMAC). Administered by the National Emergency Management Association, EMAC is a congressionally ratified organization that provides form and structure to the interstate mutual aid and assistance process. If an incident is beyond the local and State capabilities, the Governor can seek Federal assistance. The State will collaborate with the impacted communities and the Federal Government to provide the help needed.

2-48. As a state or territories' chief executive, the Governor is responsible for the public safety and welfare of the people of that state. The Governor—

- Is responsible for coordinating state resources to address the actions required to prevent, prepare for, respond to, and recover from disasters.
- Under certain emergency conditions, the governor can make, amend, and rescind orders and regulations under certain emergency conditions.
- Provides leadership and plays a key role in communicating to the public and in helping people, businesses, and organizations cope with the consequences of any type of declared emergency within the state.
- Encourages participation in mutual aid from jurisdiction to jurisdiction within the state and enters into mutual aid agreements with other states.
- Encourages tribes and counties to share resources.
- Is the commander-in-chief of state military forces (State National Guard when in state active duty or Title 32 status and the authorized state military forces).
- Requests federal assistance when state capabilities are insufficient or have been exceeded or exhausted.

State-Level Agencies

2-49. Each state has a state emergency director and a state emergency management agency (SEMA), which is the state's counterpart to FEMA. The actual title and office nomenclature varies by state. This individual serves as the principal advisor to the governor for homeland security and coordinates state level emergency response. He or she receives training on emergency planning and management from the federal government and state experts, and is often an emergency professional. In many states, the Adjutant General of the National Guard serves as both the chief of staff of the state National Guard not only as the commanding general but also may serve as the state's director of Homeland Security and the state's Emergency Manager. Each state has an emergency operations center, normally manned at minimum levels but rapidly expansible and organized according to NIMS and NRF principles. Some states have mobile command center capabilities, allowing the state emergency operations center to move into a facility nearer the scene of a large emergency, and every state has some sort of mobile forward command post to allow the Governor and emergency manager to maintain control. The organization of emergency support functions within each state varies somewhat, with many states having more than 15 functions, and some less..

2-50. Each Governor has many capabilities that they may commit to an incident. Most states have corresponding agencies to those of the federal government, and these agencies frequently work together. The state agencies have two limitations – fiscal and manpower. Only the federal government has the funds and personnel to respond to a very large emergency, which is why federal laws such as the Stafford Act regulate so much state and federal interaction.

State Coordinating Officer

2-51. A state coordinating officer, appointed by the Governor, represents the state in the unified coordination group. In addition, a state coordinating officer oversees state-level incident response operations and coordination with local governments, tribal nations, military forces, nongovernmental organizations, and FEMA.

NONGOVERNMENTAL ORGANIZATIONS

2-52. Within the United States, disaster response brings with it a multitude of non-governmental organizations (NGO) and private citizens motivated by a sincere desire to help. Some of these organizations have the charter to do emergency assistance; the American Red Cross, for example, has a charter from Congress to assist in emergencies anywhere in the country. Faith-based organizations often respond to assist with disaster relief. Quite often, ad-hoc groups of concerned citizens travel to a disaster and offer their services to relief organizations. These organizations link their efforts to government agencies through the local and state emergency operations centers, but often simply go to where they perceive a need. Commanders need to coordinate with the leadership of the NGO on the ground, and establish a collaborative working relationship with them, while emphasizing that requests for assistance need to go through the appropriate coordinating office. . Therefore, part of this relationship will depend upon making clear to the NGO leadership what Soldiers in the area can and can't do for them.

Nongovernmental and voluntary organizations

1-78. Nongovernmental and voluntary organizations are essential partners in responding to incidents. Working through emergency operations centers and other structures, nongovernmental and voluntary organizations assist local, tribal, State, and Federal governments in providing sheltering, emergency food supplies, counseling services, and other vital support services to support response and promote the recovery of disaster victims. These groups often provide specialized services that help individuals with special needs, including those with disabilities.

1-79. To engage these key partners most effectively, local, tribal, State, and Federal governments coordinate with voluntary agencies, community and faith-based organizations, and other entities to develop plans to manage volunteer services and donated goods, establish appropriate roles and responsibilities, and train and exercise plans and procedures before an incident occurs.

Private Sector Organizations

2-53. Forming the foundation for the health of the Nation's economy, the private sector is a key partner in local, tribal, State, and Federal response. The private sector is responsible for most of the critical infrastructure and key resources in the Nation and thus may require assistance in the wake of a disaster or emergency. They also provide goods and services critical to the response and recovery process, either on a paid basis or through donations.

2-54. The utility companies throughout the United States have sophisticated emergency response plans and protocols. Their response is multi-tiered, beginning with the utilities within the state and expanding to a national level effort drawing resources from across the nation. In anticipation of a major incident such as a hurricane, or in response to an unexpected disaster, the utility companies (power, water, telephone, etc.) alert and deploy assets to restore essential services. Soldiers will encounter emergency utility teams throughout the affected area. They utility companies coordinate their efforts with the incident commander and local emergency manager as they arrive. In a large disaster, they will provide liaison teams to the state and federal command centers.

2-55. Nongovernmental organizations and private sector representatives are good sources of information. For example, an excellent source for incident awareness is the American Red Cross. The Red Cross has professionals and volunteers across the nation with more response experience than any military organization. The Red Cross usually arrives early in any disaster. Normally, professional Red Cross members operate positions in local and state emergency operations centers. Private sector individuals such as electrical linemen and cable repairmen may also have valuable information about the situation. However, Soldiers need to exercise caution when dealing with personally identifiable information on people outside the military – information such as names, addresses, employers, and descriptions. For further information, see Chapter 3.

FEDERAL RESPONSE

2-56. The Federal Government maintains a wide array of capabilities and resources that can assist State governments in responding to incidents. In addition, Federal departments and agencies may also request and receive help from other Federal departments and agencies. A general understanding of federal government responsibilities helps National Guard, Regular Army, and Army Reserve commanders integrate civil support with civilian efforts. Any commitment of Army forces, regardless of component, is certain to interact with some part of the federal government. Without the comprehensive approach described in the NIMS and the NRF, Army forces might find themselves bombarded by tasking from every level of government. State military forces receive mission guidance through their state joint force headquarters, which works directly with the state emergency operations center. (In many states the Adjutant General is also the state emergency coordinator) Under the NIMS, the Defense Coordinating Officer (DCO) serves as the single point of contact for Federal military forces supporting civil authorities in any disaster.

Department of Homeland Security

2-57. The Homeland Security Act of 2002 established the Department of Homeland Security. The act designated Department of Homeland Security as the lead for natural and manmade crises and emergency and disaster planning. The Department of Homeland Security is the federal agency charged with preventing terrorist attacks within the United States, reducing America's vulnerability to terrorism, major disasters, and other emergencies; and minimizing the damage and recovering from attacks, major disasters, and other emergencies that do occur. The agency with which Army forces deal most frequently is the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA). The United States Coast Guard (USCG) is also part of the DHS. These two agencies are described in more detail below.

2-58. The Secretary of Homeland Security is responsible for coordinating a Federal response in support of other Federal, State, local, Tribal, or territorial authorities as directed in Homeland Security Presidential Directive (HSPD)-5, Management of Domestic Incidents. In this role, the Secretary will coordinate Federal resources utilized in response to a pandemic influenza outbreak when any one of the following four conditions applies:

- A Federal department or agency acting under its own authority has requested DHS assistance;
- The resources of State and local authorities are overwhelmed and Federal assistance has been requested;
- More than one Federal department or agency has become substantially involved in responding to the incident; and,
- The Secretary has been directed to assume incident management responsibilities by the President.

2-59. The Department of Homeland Security includes many different agencies with law enforcement responsibilities. These include Customs and Border Protection (CBP), Immigration and Customs Enforcement, Transportation Security Administration (TSA), Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco and Firearms (BATF), and the United States Secret Service. Any of these agencies may request military support. All of them provide support under the NRF for a variety of federal incident support scenarios. Additional information is available through the Department of Homeland Security web site at http://www.dhs.gov/index.shtm.

Federal Emergency Management Agency

2-60. The Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) is part of Department of Homeland Security. Its missions are planning for disaster response and coordinating disaster responses. The Nation is divided into 10 FEMA regions as shown in Figure 2-5. Alaska falls within Region X; Hawaii and the Pacific territories within Region IX; and Puerto Rico and the Atlantic possessions fall within Region II. The alignment of the islands in Pacific and Atlantic minimizes the likelihood of a disaster in that region impacting the continental and island areas simultaneously.

2-61. Each FEMA region has a regional coordination center (RCC) located within its offices. This center activates during any significant and stays manned until response operations conclude and recovery

operations pass to the control of an on-site recovery center. FEMA coordinates with organizations across each region for preparation and incident response. The agency oversees NIMS, the NRF, disaster response training, and national planning and preparation for all hazard emergencies. DOD works directly with FEMA in each region to plan responses to disasters and terrorist attacks. Defense Coordinating Officers (DCOs) are collocated with each FEMA regional office. For a full listing of their responsibilities, go to http://www.fema.gov/

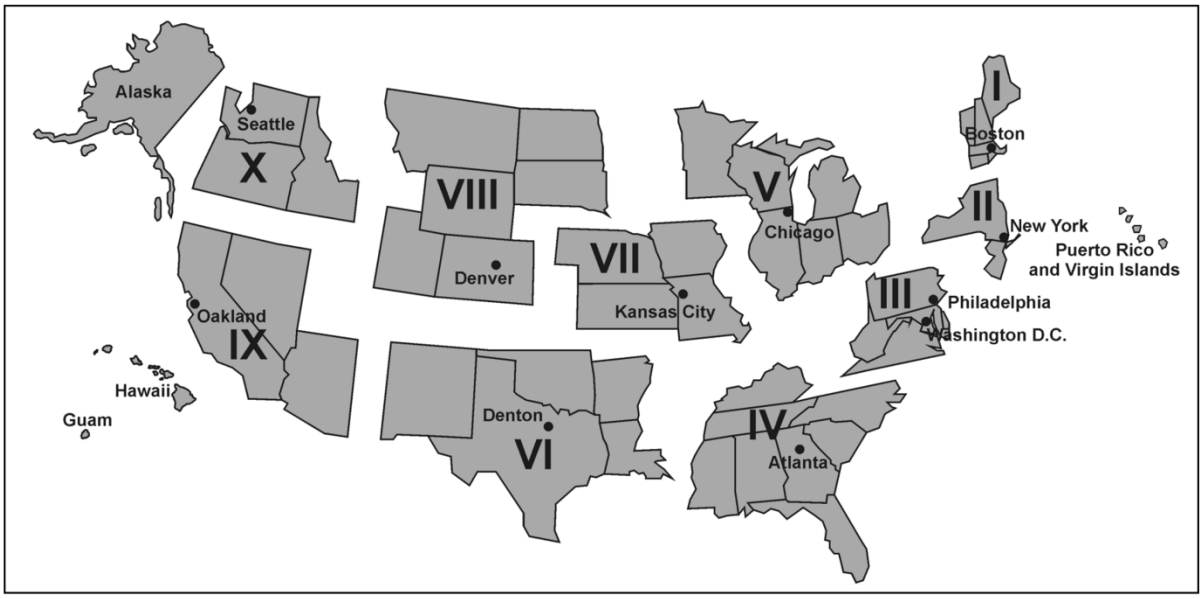


Figure 2-5. FEMA regions and headquarters

3-1. When required, FEMA establishes a joint (multi-agency) field office to coordinate the federal-level response. For a very large disaster, FEMA may establish a joint field office in each affected state, and create an overall headquarters in the region. FEMA organizes every joint field office according to the NIMS and adapts its makeup to meet the requirements of the situation. Therefore, every joint field office has a similar broad division of major responsibilities but is staffed differently. Each JFO may be arranged differently to meet the specific needs (e.g., geographically grouped vs. functionally grouped, air ops or evacuation functions included, etc.) in accordance with NIMS/ICS principles. The emergency support functions annexes specify tasks for each ESF and the lead federal agency. The NRF specifies that DOD may support every ESF, based on the situation. Figure 2-6 illustrates a notional fully staffed joint field office with all emergency support functions activated. See Appendix I for a more detailed view of the various ICS sections.

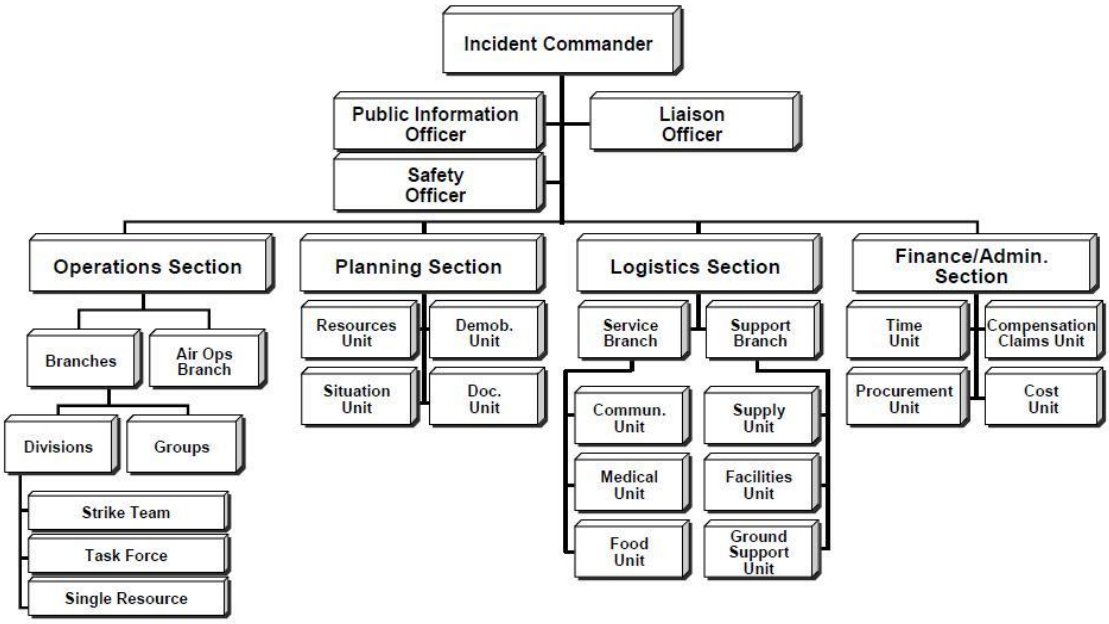


Figure 2-6. An example Joint Field Office showing command staff, sections, and branches

The United States Coast Guard

2-62. The United States Coast Guard is the fifth armed service, but it falls under Title 14 USC, and not Title 10 or Title 32. It is a law enforcement agency as well as a military service, and it has offices and units across the country. The Coast Guard has a unique position among the Armed Services. Because of its unique status, the Coast Guard supports and is supported by the other military services. In homeland defense, for example, units of the coast guard may be under Navy control. In homeland security, Navy warships and aircraft may provide support to a Coast Guard operation. Because of its Title 14 responsibilities and as part of Department of Homeland Security, the Coast Guard frequently supports civil authorities, and vice versa. Army units conducting civil support operations may support or receive support from USCG elements. In a large incident, the senior Coast Guard Officer in Charge could exercise TACON over some or all responding DOD forces.

2-63. In the reorganization of the Federal government after 9-11, the United States Coast Guard (USCG) moved from Department of Transportation to the Department of Homeland Security. The Coast Guard's Homeland Security missions include port, waterway, and coastal security; drug interdiction; control of illegal immigration; and other law enforcement. Non-Homeland Security missions include marine safety; search and rescue; aids to navigation; living marine resource protection (Fisheries Enforcement); marine environmental response; and icebreaking. This array of missions endows the Coast Guard with many civil support capabilities.

2-64. The USCG Deployable Operations Group provides organized, equipped, and trained deployable, specialized forces to Coast Guard, Department of Homeland Security and interagency operational and tactical commanders. These forces deploy in support of national requirements as tailored, integrated force packages, across the United States and other high interest areas. The Deployable Operations Group has approximately 3,000 Coast Guard personnel from 12 Maritime Safety and Security Teams, the Maritime Security Response Team two Tactical Law Enforcement Teams, eight Port Security Units, the National Strike Force Coordination Center and three National Strike Teams.

2-65. The USCG has some of the best-trained and equipped personnel for hazardous material incidents in the Nation. Although most Coast Guard capabilities and personnel are stationed in the coastal cities, they can deploy highly-trained teams anywhere in the country using organic, commercial, and DOD transport. Once they arrive, the Coast Guard can support Title 10 and State military forces interchangeably.

Department of Justice

2-66. The Attorney General has lead responsibility for criminal investigations of terrorist acts or terrorist threats by individuals or groups inside the United States. The Attorney General acts through the Federal Bureau of Investigation and cooperates with other federal departments and agencies engaged in activities to protect national security. The Attorney General and these departments and agencies coordinate the activities of other members of the law enforcement community to detect, prevent, preempt, and disrupt terrorist attacks against the United States.

Department of State

2-67. The Department of State has international coordination responsibilities for domestic disaster assistance to the United States. The Secretary of State also is responsible for coordinating international prevention, preparedness, response, and recovery activities relating to emergencies or disasters. When the United States suffers a disaster, other nations may offer material, financial or military assistance. The Department of State coordinates the receipt of foreign assistance. When the assistance includes foreign military forces, State Department officials coordinate between the foreign government, DOD, and gaining combatant commanders prior to their employment.

Other Federal Departments

2-68. During an incident, other federal agencies may play primary, coordinating, or supporting roles, or any combination, based on authorities, resources, and the nature of the incident roles and responsibilities outlined in the NRF, specifically the ESFs. Although Department of Homeland Security receives the most support from DOD, any agency may request DOD support, if its own resources are overtaxed. Several federal agencies have responsibility to declare disasters or emergencies, and DOD may support these agencies in their response. Some examples include:

- Department of Agriculture. The Secretary of Agriculture may declare a disaster in certain situations when a county sustained production loss of 30 percent or greater in a single major enterprise, authorizing emergency loans for physical damages and crop loss. The US Forest Service (USFS provides wild land fire fighting teams and Incident Command System teams suitable for supporting emergency response.
- Department of Commerce. The Secretary of Commerce may make a declaration of a commercial fisheries failure or fishery resources disaster. The NOAA Commissioned Corps operates ships, aircraft and diving teams suitable for supporting emergency response.
- Department of Health and Human Services. The Secretary of Health and Human Services (HHS) may declare a public health emergency. The Secretary of HHS directs the national response to communicable diseases such as pandemic influenza (see Chapter 5). The USPHS Commissioned Corps provides teams of health professionals prepared to support emergency response.
- Department of the Interior. The Bureau of Indian Affairs (BIA), Bureau of Land Management (BLM) and the national Park Service (NPS) provide wild land fire fighting teams and Incident Command System teams suitable for managing emergency response.
- Department of Energy. DOE is involved with incidents involving nuclear facilities security and incidents, and is the emergency coordinator for ESF #12. In the event of an accident involving an American nuclear weapon, DOE works directly with DOD according to carefully developed plans and procedures.

THE FEDERAL COORDINATING OFFICER AND JOINT FIELD OFFICE

2-69. In response to a governor's request, and a Presidential disaster or emergency declaration, the federal government provides disaster assistance. The NRF describes the coordination structures for federal departments and agencies in its third chapter and in the Emergency Support Function Annexes. These structures are in addition to the systems described in the NIMS.

2-70. Per the NRF, FEMA Administrator and DHS Secretary recommend a Federal Coordinating Officer (FCO), and the President officially appoints a FCO for a specific disaster. The FCO represents FEMA in

the unified coordination group. The federal coordinating officer ensures overall integration of federal activities. Although priority of assignment normally goes to an FCO within that FEMA region, in many cases an FCO from another FEMA region becomes the coordinating officer for federal response in that region, simply because of availability. In disaster response, FEMA coordinates federal assets. Initially, FEMA may deploy specialized teams to support state and local jurisdictions. These teams can deploy on short notice.

2-71. As soon as possible, FEMA sets up a *joint field office*. A joint field office (JFO) is a temporary federal facility ("joint" in this context means interagency) for coordination and liaison across agencies and jurisdictions. There is one JFO established for each affected state. The joint field office always uses a NIMS-based management structure. It has, for instance, an operations section, a planning section, a logistics section, and a finance and administration section, directed by a unified coordination group. The unified coordination group includes key state and federal officials involved in managing the response. A joint field office is located near the incident command organization. If the incident involves more than a single state, and the Presidential disaster declaration includes multiple states, then each affected state will have a joint field office. The makeup of a joint field office depends on the nature of an incident and the support needed. It includes representatives from as many agencies as required.

2-72. The Secretary of Homeland Security or the President may designate a Regional Team Leader to ensure effective management of federal support for a catastrophic or unusually complex incident involving several states, and hence, multiple JFO. A Regional Team Leader, when designated, represents Department of Homeland Security in the unified coordination group. However, for most incidents requiring federal response, the federal coordinating officer will be the senior federal official.

Note: Under older nomenclature the regional team leader was designated a Regional team leader, or PFO. Some responders still refer to the senior federal representative as the PFO.

2-73. A regional team leader is distinct from a federal coordinating officer. He or she does not have directive authority over a federal coordinating officer or other members of the unified coordination group. The regional team leader promotes multiagency collaboration, resolves any interagency conflict, and presents policy issues to the Secretary of Homeland Security. A regional team leader, when designated, interfaces with federal, state, tribal, and local jurisdictional officials regarding the overall federal incident management *strategy* and acts as the primary federal spokesperson for coordinated media and public communications.

NATIONAL GUARD CIVIL SUPPORT

2-74. The National Guard is a crucial capability available to state governors in any emergency. These state military forces have equipment and expertise in communications, logistics, search and rescue, law enforcement, and decontamination and can serve as a significant resource during a disaster response. When National Guard forces from disaster-impacted and supporting states are insufficient, federal military assets also are available through the U.S. Department of Defense.

THE ADJUTANT GENERAL

2-75. The adjutant general (TAG) is an Air Force or Army general officer who serves as the Commander of the state's National Guard and is the Joint Forces Commander for all military forces under the Governor's command and control. National Guard Regulation 500-1, National Guard Domestic Operations, establishes the Adjutant General as a joint position, with authority over subordinate Air and Army National Guard forces of that state or territory. The Adjutant General recommends National Guard response options to the Governor, and designates the National Guard commander for any response. The Adjutant General has a joint staff that includes full-time National Guard officers and state civilian employees. During any emergency, the Adjutant General coordinates with other TAGs for emergency assistance and with the National Guard Bureau. In those states with constituted militia units, the Adjutant General serves as an intermediary with State military forces. Most states provide the Adjutant General with a state joint force headquarters that consolidates the state's Army and Air Guard staff functions into one headquarters.

2-76. In many states, the National Guard adjutant general is the governor's homeland security advisor as well as commander of the state's military forces. For example, in the state of Washington, the state's homeland security apparatus is embedded in the [State of] Washington Military Department. The adjutant general is therefore responsible for military operations, emergency management, emergency telecommunications, and policy-related interaction with executive and legislative branches of local, state, and federal governments.

NATIONAL GUARD FORCES

2-77. Each state's National Guard varies in composition and size; there is no standard response organization for all 54 Guard entities. In most emergencies the Adjutant General establishes a joint task force headquarters (designated in contingency plans) that has operational control of all National Guard forces in that state as well as any National Guard forces provided by other states under agreement. Each state has existing contingency plans for different incidents, and updates these plans to adjust for Guard units serving in a Title 10 deployment. These task forces employ Air Guard and Army Guard personnel completely integrated at the small unit level. This is routine in most National Guard response forces.

2-78. National Guard forces are organized under a Joint Force Headquarters–State. (JFHQ-S) The JFHQ-S is a permanent headquarters that oversees the administrative requirements for the Guard units and coordinates with the National Guard Bureau in Washington, D.C. The JFHQ-S oversees the administrative requirements for the Guard units and coordinates with the National Guard Bureau in Washington, D.C. When the state National Guard deploys multiple units in response to an incident, the Adjutant General normally forms a Joint Task Force-state (JTF-state) using both Air and Army National Guard forces. These partnerships are reinforced through joint and multi-agency exercises. The JTF-state commander task organizes units into task forces for particular missions. Figure 2-7 illustrates the organization with a state. Within a JOA, these state task forces work alongside Title 10 task forces.

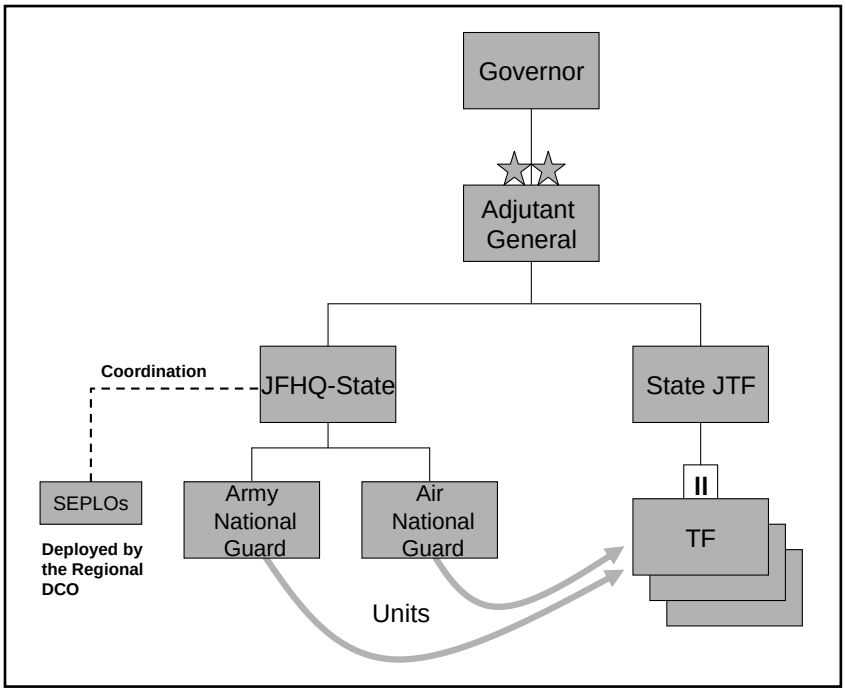


Figure 2-7. An example of National Guard organization within a state

(Note: The reader should avoid confusing the Joint Force Headquarters–State (JFHQ-S) with combatant commander's standing joint task force headquarters – SJFHQ)

CHIEF OF THE NATIONAL GUARD BUREAU

2-79. 2-4. The Chief of the National Guard Bureau is the channel of communication between the National Guard of the states, and territories and DOD components, and coordinates and deconflicts national guard support between the states. The Chief of the National Guard Bureau communicates, collaborates, and coordinates with combatant commands. This coordination facilitates continuity and integration with federal response and state or territory response and National Guard military capabilities. The Chief of the National Guard Bureau also coordinates closely with federal civil authorities and state Adjutant Generals.

2-80. The Army National Guard Office in Washington D.C. maintains a continuously manned National Guard operations center that keeps the Chief of the National Guard Bureau informed about National Guard forces committed to civil support operations and operations overseas. Although the Army National Guard office does not control any of the 54 National Guard elements, it provides critical coordination between the various National Guards, before and during any emergency. The Army National Guard office maintains a complete asset visibility and can identify units, personnel, or equipment available for loan between state forces in an emergency.

DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE SUPPORT OF CIVIL AUTHORITIES

2-81. The primary mission of DOD and its components is national defense. As directed by the President or the Secretary of Defense, the Department of Defense provides support to a Primary Federal agency as part of a coordinated Federal response to a disaster or emergency (natural or man-made) that exceeds local and state capabilities following a request for assistance from civil authorities. In some instances, national defense assets may be available to support civil authorities for routine and catastrophic incidents. However, DOD resources are not typically required to mitigate every domestic incident. For example, in 2005, the President declared 65 major disasters or emergencies. DOD responded to only three.

2-82. The Services can provide many types of DOD support under separate established authorities. When deciding to commit DOD resources, military readiness, cost, lethality, risk, appropriateness, and whether the response is in accordance with applicable laws and regulations all factor into the decision. Continuous coordination with federal, state, tribal, and local authorities before, during, and after an event is essential for efficient and effective DSCA.

2-83. The Secretary of Defense directs the use of Title 10 military forces for domestic incidents as directed by the President. The decision to employ regular military forces requires assessment of the impact on combat readiness, or when operations and appropriate under the circumstances and the law. The key discriminator is the decision made by the Secretary as to which forces to provide concerns combat readiness. The Secretary of Defense or his designee, the ASD (HD&ASA), is the approval authority for any requests from lead federal agencies for any actions that might require lethal force by federal military forces. This includes the authorization for any Title 10 Soldier to carry weapons during a DSCA mission.

2-84. The Joint Director of Military Support (JDOMS), located in the Pentagon, is the DOD action agent for federal civil support. The joint director of military support interfaces with FEMA for DOD requests for assistance for incident response. The JDOMS plays a very important role in requests for military support submitted by other federal agencies and the states for DSCA, other than disaster response. These requests often deal with specialized military capabilities. The JDOMS works with the JCS and services to analyze the request and develop a recommendation. Once analyzed, the request goes to the Secretary of Defense for approval, who then passes that decision to the Joint Chiefs of Staff for sourcing from the appropriate combatant commander.

THE DEFENSE COORDINATING OFFICER

2-85. The Defense Coordinating Officer is one of the most important people involved in DSCA. The Defense Coordinating Officer (DCO) is the representative of the Secretary of Defense within each FEMA region, and is the single point of contact for DOD at the JFO. There are twelve DCOs; one located each FEMA region (10) and two additional DCOs for the outlying territories. These officers are selected carefully and retained in their assignment for long periods. Each DCO works closely with federal and state emergency agencies in that FEMA region and develops personal ties with the key representatives. Although

the DCO is not an ESF manager, the DCO has a permanent work space inside the regional coordination center, next to the ESF desks. The Defense Coordinating Officer (DCO) serves as the vital link between the state emergency operations center, state National Guard joint headquarters, federal agencies, and Title 10 military forces.

> *Appointed by DOD, the DCO serves as DOD's single point of contact at the JFO, with the exception of U.S. Special Operations Command (USSOCOM) and U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) assets. Generally, requests for Defense Support of Civilian Authorities (DSCA) originating at the JFO will be coordinated with and processed through the DCO. The DCO has a Defense Coordinating Element (DCE) consisting of a staff and military liaison officers in order to facilitate coordination and support to activated ESFs. Specific responsibilities of the DCO (subject to modification based on the situation) include processing requirements for military support, forwarding mission assignments to the appropriate military organizations through DOD-designated channels, and assigning military liaisons, as appropriate, to activated ESFs. Requests for DSCA originating at the JFO will be coordinated and processed through the DCO with the exception of requests for USACE support, National Guard forces operating under State Active Duty or Title 32 statutes (i.e., not in Federal service), or, in some circumstances, DOD forces in support of the FBI.*
>
> *The National Response Framework*

2-86. At the start of any incident, or when warning precedes an incident, the DCO establishes a watch officer (manned by the DCE) within the FEMA regional coordination center. For most incidents, FEMA does not require federal military support, and the DCO remains at the regional coordination center to monitor the situation. If and when the FEMA region establishes a Joint Field Office (JFO), and there is a likelihood of Federal military forces deploying, the Department of Defense "activates" the DCO and DCE. By activation, the DOD designates the DCO as the single point of contact between the primary agency and DOD. The DCO deploys to the JFO when the primary agency establishes it. The DCO processes Requests for Assistance (RFA) for DOD support; and forwards the approved mission assignments through proper channels to the appropriate combatant commander, and assign military liaisons, as appropriate, to ESFs.

2-87. Each DCO has a *Defense Coordinating Element* (DCE). This is a small staff that includes military liaison officers who assist the DCO in facilitating coordination and support to activated ESFs.

2-88. In some situations, DOD may commit small military detachments when the States require specialized Title 10 support. When directed by USNORTHCOM, the DCO exercises tactical control over these forces and coordinates with USNORTHCOM and local officials for their sustainment. Figure 2-8 illustrates the organization of the DCO and DCE.

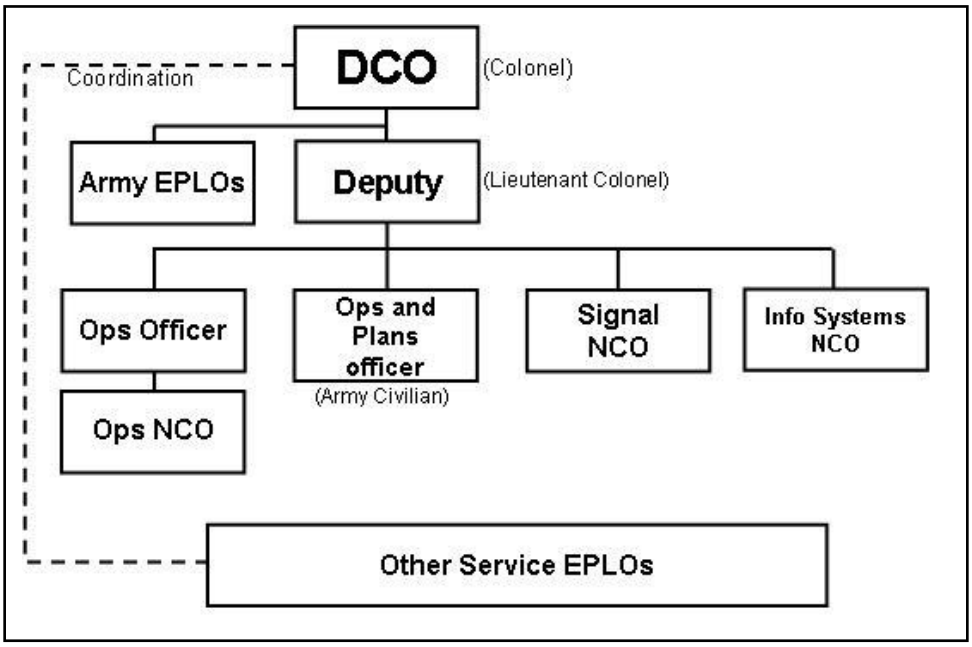


Figure 2-8. Example of DCO and DCE organization

2-89. An E*mergency Preparedness Liaison Officer* (EPLO) is a senior reserve officer or noncommissioned officer who, when activated, assists the DCO and serves as the subject matter expert for their Service. The EPLO can assist ESF planners conduct planning and coordination involving military forces. Emergency preparedness liaison officers are directed by the DCO, and work in close coordination with the defense coordinating element. The EPLO may serve as a liaison to the National Guard JFHQ-S or at a DOD installation when tasked by the DCO. They identify potential DOD support requirements for incidents.

2-90. Each State Emergency Preparedness Liaison Officer (SEPLO) is a member of the Armed Forces Reserve Title 10 Reserve. When mobilized, they are under the control of the Defense Coordinating Officer. When directed by the DCO, they facilitate planning, coordination, and training for civil support operations. They serve as Service component liaisons to the state Adjutant General, the joint state headquarters, and the state emergency management agency. They develop a habitual relationship with respective State and NG officials through training and real-world incident management.

2-91. Regional Emergency Preparedness Liaison Officers (REPLO) are also Title 10 reserve officers. Unlike the SEPLOs, they are not aligned to a particular state. They provide the DCO with a team of senior professionals available to act as LNOs at regional military bases, and to augment the SEPLOS and DCE. The EPLO and REPLO may be from any of the Armed Services, and officers from Services other than the Army may be referred to by their Service; e.g. a Marine EPLO becomes a “MEPLO”; a Navy officer is also called a “NEPLO”. There are typically between ten and twenty REPLO within each FEMA region.

COMBATANT COMMANDS

2-92. The President and Secretary of Defense command Federal military forces through the combatant commands. There are two geographic combatant commands with primary DSCA responsibilities – U.S. Northern Command (USNORTHCOM) and U.S. Pacific Command (USPACOM). The other combatant commands provide capabilities to USNORTHCOM and USPACOM for DSCA as directed by the Secretary of Defense. USNORTHCOM and USPACOM control five standing joint tasks forces that have primary missions associated with DSCA.

United States Northern Command

2-93. USNORTHCOM anticipates and conducts homeland defense and civil support operations involving Title 10 military forces within its assigned area of responsibility to defend, protect, and secure the United

States and its interests. The USNORTHCOM area of responsibility includes air, land, and sea approaches and encompasses the continental United States, Alaska, Puerto Rico, the Bahamas, Turks and Caicos Islands, and the U.S. Virgin Islands. It also includes the Gulf of Mexico, the Straits of Florida, and the water surrounding the continental United States out to approximately 500 nautical miles. Additionally, the USNORTHCOM area of responsibility includes Canada and Mexico. As directed by the President or Secretary of Defense, USNORTHCOM conducts operations through assigned Service components, designated functional commands, and subordinate standing joint task forces.

2-94. In accordance with the standing JCS DSCA Execution Order (DSCA EXORD) the USNORTHCOM Commander has the authority to alert and prepare to deploy assigned and allocated forces in support of a primary agency such as FEMA. The Combatant Commander may request, deploy, and employ selected forces upon notification from the CJCS and SECDEF, in support of a validated request for assistance from a primary agency. The intent of the order is to provide the Combatant Commander with the maximum latitude to posture designated Federal military forces in the AOR to respond immediately in the event of a serious incident.

2-95. If required, USNORTHCOM may deploy its Standing Joint Force Headquarters, a joint command and control element organized within USNORTHCOM headquarters. This command and control element rapidly deploys to enable the stand-up of a joint task force headquarters or to augment existing joint task forces. In addition, USNORTHCOM may deploy a situation awareness team as an advance joint liaison element.

U.S. Army North

2-96. U.S. Army North (USARNORTH) is the Army Component Command assigned to USNORTHCOM. USARNORTH is the Joint Forces Land Component Command (JFLCC) within USNORTHCOM. As the JFLCC, USARNORTH commands and controls DOD land forces conducting DSCA and domestic consequence management operations. USARNORTH has a main command post, based at Fort Sam Houston, and two contingency command posts, each capable of operating as a joint task force with augmentation. The contingency command posts organize for rapid land and air deployment anywhere within the USNORTHCOM area of responsibility. Both command posts have joint and interagency compatible communications systems, with satellite links.

2-97. USNORTHCOM has standing joint task forces (JTF-N and JTF-CS) subordinated to its standing Joint Force Land Component Command (JFLCC), USARNORTH. The DCOs and DCEs for all ten FEMA regions also belong to USARNORTH. In response to any incident requiring large numbers of federal troops, USARNORTH deploys an contingency command post in the vicinity of the federal response headquarters. Figure 2-8 shows USNORTHCOM and USARNORTH command and control.

Joint Task Force-Civil Support

2-98. Joint Task Force–Civil Support (JTF-CS) is a standing joint task force headquarters assigned to USNORTHCOM and OPCON to USARNORTH. It plans and integrates DOD domestic chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear, and high-yield explosives (CBRNE) consequence management support for disasters. During CBRNE consequence management operations Joint Task Force Civil Support forces consist mainly of CBRNE Consequence Management Response Force units (CCMRF) as provided to USNORTHCOM in an annually updated CJCS CBRNE EXORD. When directed by the Secretary of Defense, the commander of USNORTHCOM deploys JTF-CS to establish command and control of designated DOD forces at a CBRNE incident site. Joint Task Force–Civil Support forces consist mainly of catastrophic consequence management response force units CCMRF units. The CCMRF provides capabilities such as casualty decontamination, security, medical triage and treatment, aviation, logistics, and transportation. USNORTHCOM may deploy JTF-CS to USPACOM AOR to provide CBRNE support when CBRNE incidents occur within US domestic territory in the USPACOM area of responsibility. (See Chapter 4 and Appendix E, of this FM, and also FM 3-11.3 for more information)

Joint Task Force-North

2-99. Joint Task Force-North is OPCON to USARNORTH and employs military capabilities in support of federal civilian law enforcement agencies for threats to the homeland. (See Chapter 5.)

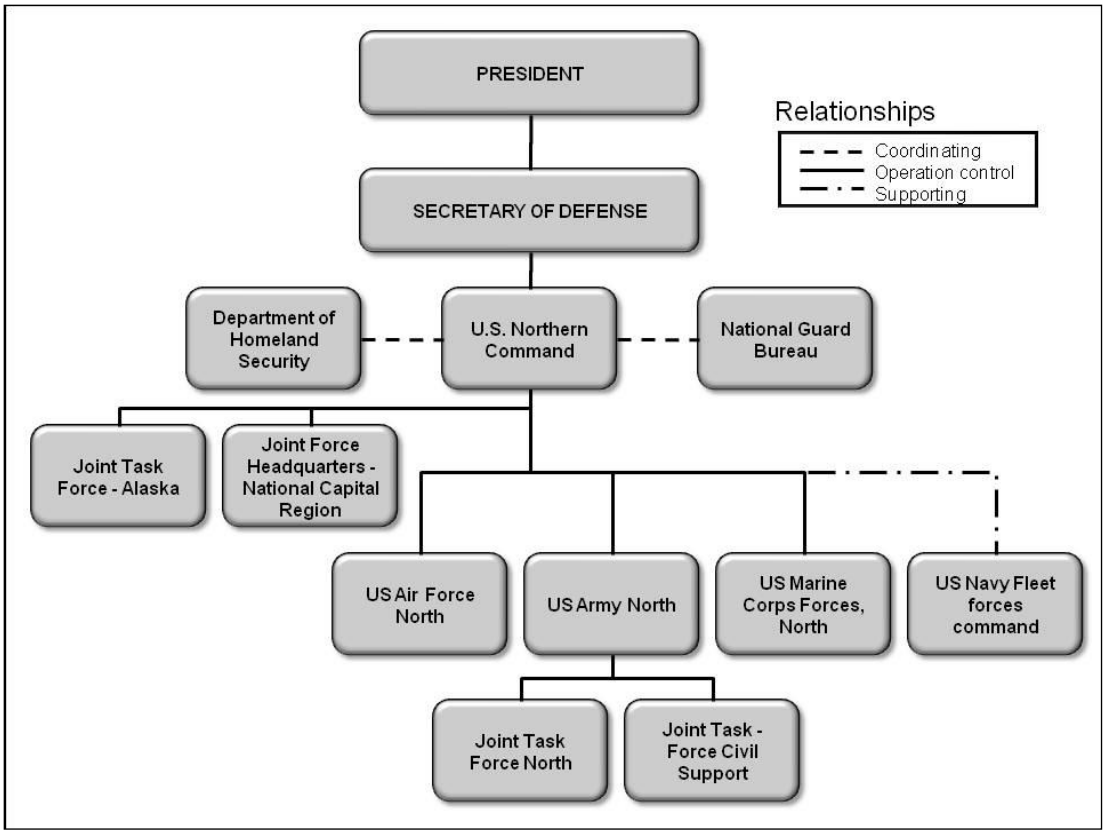


Figure 2-9. USNORTHCOM and USARNORTH structure

Joint Force Headquarters-National Capital Region

2-100. The Joint Force Headquarters-National Capital Region plans, coordinates, and maintains situational awareness in the National Capital Region to safeguard the Nation's capital. As directed, this headquarters employs forces for homeland defense and civil support.

Joint Task Force–Alaska

2-101. Joint Task Force–Alaska, headquartered at Elmendorf Air Force Base, is a subordinate command of USUSNORTHCOM. It is comprised of Soldiers, Sailors, Airmen, and DOD civilian specialists. Joint Task Force–Alaska's mission is to deter, detect, prevent and defeat threats within the Alaska joint operations area to protect U.S. territory, citizens, and interests, and as directed, conduct civil support. Within its joint operations area, Joint Task Force–Alaska plans and integrates DOD homeland defense efforts and provides DSCA to civilian agencies such as FEMA.

Other Units

2-102. Other allocated or theater committed military assets for homeland defense and DSCA include a theater sustainment command, and air and missile defense command, a contracting brigade, and a human resources command.

U.S. Pacific Command

2-103. USPACOM conducts civil support in Hawaii, Guam, and American Samoa, the U.S. territories within its area of responsibility. Due to the large distances within the USPACOM area of responsibility and the distribution of U.S. forces in the region, USPACOM maintains flexible command and control arrangements for civil support. USPACOM conducts civil support operations through assigned Service components and designated functional components. It has one standing joint task force, Joint Interagency

Task Force–West, which supports civilian law enforcement agencies in USPACOM's area of responsibility. It can also activate Joint Task Force–Homeland Defense to perform DSCA and homeland defense missions.

2-104. In accordance with the standing JCS DSCA EXORD the USPACOM Commander has the authority to alert and prepare to deploy assigned and allocated forces in support of a primary federal agency. The Combatant Commander may request, deploy, and employ selected forces upon notification from the CJCS and SECDEF, in support of a validated request for assistance from a primary agency. The intent of the order is to provide the Combatant Commander with the maximum latitude to posture designated Federal military forces across the AOR to respond immediately in the event of a serious incident.

Joint Interagency Task Force–West

2-105. Joint Interagency Task Force West (JIATF West) is the U.S. Pacific Command (USPACOM) Executive Agent for Department of Defense (DoD) support to law enforcement for counterdrug and drug-related activities. The mission of Joint Interagency Task Force–West (formerly Joint Task Force–5) is to detect, disrupt, and dismantle drug-related transnational threats in Asia and the Pacific. Joint Interagency Task Force–West does this by providing interagency law enforcement intelligence, supporting U.S. law enforcement, and developing partner nation capacity to protect U.S. security interests at home and abroad. Joint Interagency Task Force–West provides U.S. and foreign law enforcement agencies with interagency information and analysis, counterdrug training, and infrastructure development support.

Joint Task Force–Homeland Defense

2-106. USPACOM forms Joint Task Force–Homeland Defense by combining an Service headquarters (such as an Army Division), a joint signal element, personnel from a joint manning document, and Department of Homeland Security liaison. The primary mission of Joint Task Force–Homeland Defense is DSCA within the USPACOM area of responsibility, excluding Alaska. Current plans focus on developing the JTF into a standing JTF that represents all five armed services and various government agencies.

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS

2-107. The U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) manages components of the nation's public works infrastructure. This includes maintenance and management of the national waterways, environmental remediation and recovery operations, real estate, disaster recovery operations, and general project management functions. The Corps of Engineers is responsible for infrastructure protection and emergency repair to support states in reconnaissance and emergency clearance of debris from damaged areas.

2-108. USACE is the ESF #3 coordinator for Public Works and Engineering. It provides technical assistance, engineering, and construction management resources and support during response activities. This includes preparedness, response, and recovery actions. It also extends to construction management, contracting and real estate services; providing emergency repair of damaged public infrastructure and critical facilities; and supports the FEMA Public Assistance Program and other recovery programs. The Public Assistance Program provides supplemental Federal disaster grant assistance for debris removal and disposal; emergency protective measures; and the repair, replacement, or restoration of disaster-damaged public facilities and the facilities of certain qualified private nonprofit organizations. See also the Corps web site at www.usace.army.mil.

Joint Task Force

2-109. The combatant commander normally establishes a joint task force to command federal military forces (excluding U.S. Army Corps of Engineers resources). The JTF normally exercises operational control over all Federal military forces and installations within its assigned joint operational area. When the JTF is established, consistent with operational requirements, its command and control element will co-locate with the joint field office to ensure coordination and unity of effort. If that is not operationally feasible, the JTF Commander places a liaison officer with the DCO at the joint field office.

2-110. The DCO and JTF Commander, have distinct roles and responsibilities. The DCO serves as DOD's single point of contact at the JFO for requesting assistance from DOD. With few exceptions, requests for DSCA originating at the JFO are coordinated with and processed through the DCO. Based on the complexity and type of incident, and the anticipated level of DOD resource involvement, DOD may also elect to designate a JTF Commander to command Federal (Title 10) military activities in support of the incident objectives. If a JTF is established, consistent with operational requirements, its command and control element will be co-located with the senior on-scene leadership at the JFO to ensure coordination and unity of effort. The co-location of the JTF command and control element does not replace the requirement for a DCO/Defense Coordinating Element as part of the JFO Unified Coordination Staff. The DCO remains the DOD single point of contact in the JFO for requesting assistance from DOD.

PRE-SCRIPTED MISSION ASSIGNMENTS

2-111. The Joint Chiefs of Staff Execute Order for Defense Support of Civil Authorities, commonly known as the "DSCA EXORD" contains specific instructions and responsibilities for civil support operations any in the United States and its territories. Part of the order addresses pre-scripted mission assignments (PSMA). Based on careful analysis of previous DSCA missions and DOD capabilities, the Joint Staff develops a menu of capabilities and identifies each as a force package. The EXORD does not specify types of military units; rather it identifies force packages with specific capabilities that a supported agency (such as FEMA) requires from DOD. The JDOMS provides the DSCA EXORD to FEMA and other agencies. This provides FEMA a menu of military capabilities from which they can select. The supported agency selects the DOD capability and the request for assistance flows very rapidly up to the Pentagon and back to the requesting agency. Simultaneously, the Joint Staff (normally the JDOMS) sources the request to a supporting combatant command or Service. The alert and deployment orders follow rapidly. The use of a PSMA circumvents much of the coordination between the civilian agency and DOD required to determine what the civilian agency wants, and the approximate cost of providing it. As an example, a pre-scripted mission assignment for communications support is shown in Figure 2-10, below. Note the cost figures included in a pre-scripted mission assignment.

UNCLASSIFIED

DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE

Title: DoD ESF #2, 25-User Communications Package (Fixed Site Teams) (FOS/DFA)

Block II – Assistance Requested:
Provide 25-User Communications Package (fixed site teams) in support of disaster operations in response to [*incident*] in the State of [*State*]. All local, State, and non-DoD national assets are exhausted or do not have the capacity to meet this requirement.

Block IV – Statement of Work:
As requested by and in coordination with FEMA and (*list ESF lead agency being supported*), the DoD will provide voice, data, and video communications solutions (24-hour operations) at a fixed location for a staff of up to 25 personnel who provide coordination of initial assessment teams and other first responders. Provide Internet reachback (UNCLASSIFIED).

Specific capabilities required include:
- Satellite phone such as Iridium or Globalstar
- UHF TACSAT, VHF, and UHF Line-of-Sight (LOS) radios
- Non-secure voice/telephone
- Non-secure data (Internet) connectivity
- Non-secure facsimile/printer/scanner
- Non-secure radio
- Non-secure VTC

NOTE: Systems operate with commercial power, rechargeable batteries, vehicle batteries, solar panels, and/or portable generators.

POC for positioning teams is _____ (name) at _____ (contact information)

24-hour support required? Y / N Estimated period of support _____ days.

All equipment and supply purchases must be coordinated with FEMA. Prior FEMA approval is necessary to ensure reimbursement.

FEMA logistical support required:
- Safe, secure, and environmentally protected work space
- Parking facilities
- Access to power source
- Messing facilities/MREs
- List of approved lodging
- Access to fuel for generators and rental vehicle

Total Cost Estimate: ~ $91,250
Includes 15 military personnel TDY for a 10-day period

Current cost information and other relevant data should be used to complete this document when it is prepared for submission to the Department of Defense.

FINAL FEMA PSMAs for DOD 9.9.09.doc Page 11 of 31

UNCLASSIFIED

Figure 2-10. A Pre-scripted mission assignment for Communications Support

Chapter 3

Provide Support in Response to a Disaster

This chapter discusses Army operations in support of domestic disasters. Army support integrates into in the National Response Framework, which includes numerous government and civilian organizations. The tiered response begins with local responders and, if necessary, expands upward into a multi-state national response supported by Department of Defense. Army forces support civil authorities at two levels. State National Guard forces, under the command of the governor of that state, support state and local responders, and when authorized, other state National Guard elements. Regular Army, Army Reserve, and Federalized National Guard forces support Federal response efforts under the command of the USNORTHCOM or USPACOM. Command and control in any incident depend on the nature and scale of the event and the levels of civil authorities involved.

THE NATURE OF A DISASTER

3-2. There is an adage among emergency responders that "every disaster has a zip code". This is a reminder that any disaster is both a personal and community experience for the victims. After a disaster, the affected communities often experience a collective shock that inhibits effective local response, compounded by the destruction caused by the event. Until Soldiers have been part of a disaster response effort, the misery and loss experienced by the victims—and the degree of disruption that inhibits even the most basic services—lie beyond their experience. Only combat operations create similar effects within civilian communities, and even then the destruction may not equal the aftermath of a tornado or hurricane. The compensating factor for the Soldier is that no operational experience is likely to produce the sense of satisfaction as assisting their fellow citizen's recovery, even though the mission is exhausting and often frustrating.

3-3. A disaster can strike anytime, anywhere. It can take many forms—a hurricane, an earthquake, a tornado, a flood, a fire or a hazardous spill, an act of nature, or an act of terrorism. It may build over days or weeks, or it may hit suddenly and with no warning. Every year, millions of Americans face a disaster and its terrifying consequences. A disaster can quickly produce an overwhelming demand for resources and reduce the ability of local, state, and tribal governments to respond effectively. A natural disaster can result in many deaths and injuries or cause extensive damage to critical infrastructure. Besides hurricanes, earthquakes, and floods, potentially devastating events include large powerful winter storms, regional droughts, and contagious disease outbreaks. Naturally occurring plant and animal disease strains reaching epidemic infection levels could have a devastating effect on the nation's food supply and the economy. The destruction of or inability to access communications systems, transportation, and shelter may further complicate governments' ability to assist the victims.

3-4. Natural or manmade disasters may start a chain of subsequent disasters such as chemical spills, leakages of chemical and biological hazards, and potentially explosive material. Each subsequent disaster creates a cascading chain of harmful effects. For example, a chemical spill caused by a tanker truck accident on a bridge over a flooded major river causes numerous complications. The chemical enters the potable water system and compounds the effects of the flooding on waterborne shipping traffic. The food supply is contaminated as the chemical is deposited on flooded cropland. Lack of sanitation can cause serious diseases to appear.

3-5. Military support in response to a disaster varies from loaning equipment to local authorities to committing major units of the National Guard and Regular military. At the peak of the response to Hurricane Katrina, over 75,000 military personnel from the active and reserve components of the military supported civil authorities at the local, state, and national level.

RESPONSE TO DOMESTIC DISASTERS

3-6. The primary responsibility for responding to domestic disasters and emergencies (also called incidents) rests with the lowest level of government able to manage the response. If a situation exceeds local capability, local authorities first seek assistance from neighboring jurisdictions, usually under a mutual aid agreement. Requests work their way up from the lowest level to the highest level, as each lower level's resources become insufficient. If the capabilities of neighboring jurisdictions are overtaxed, or responders anticipate additional requirements, they go to the state for assistance. If state capabilities prove insufficient, state authorities then ask for assistance from other states under existing agreements and compacts (including requests for support from non-federalized National Guard units). In a smaller incident, State authorities normally exhaust state level resources, including support from states within their region, before requesting federal assistance.

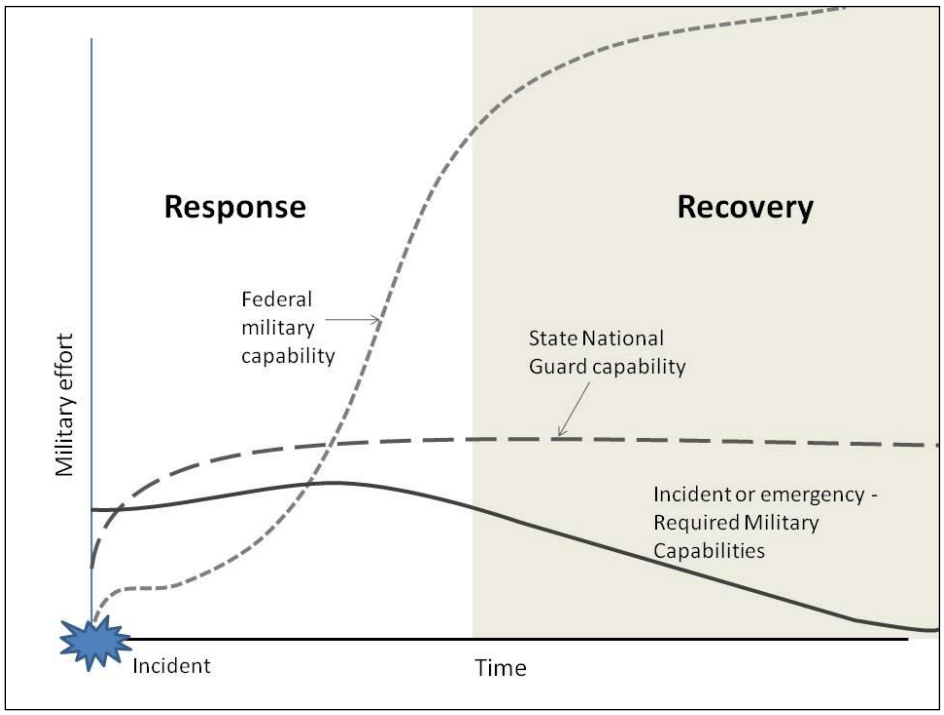


Figure 3-1. Forces required for a typical incident or emergency

3-7. Most incidents and emergencies require levels of military support within the capabilities of the National Guard forces of that state. Studies show that more than 90% of declared emergencies require no Title 10 military forces, even in those incidents requiring significant FEMA support. Figure 3-1 illustrates this using a solid line for the total military effort needed, and dotted lines representing the military capability that the state and federal military can generate. Given any advance warning, the capability gap can be reduced. It may also be reduced through immediate response (see below) of Federal military forces from nearby installations. Note that for most incidents, National Guard support suffices, on occasion with immediate response by nearby Federal military forces.

3-8. A catastrophic event always exceeds the immediate capability of responders at every level. The effect of the disaster on local responders, themselves victims of the incident, compounds the requirements. Although the formal request under the Stafford Act for Federal assistance follows the process illustrated in Chapter 2, in practice, the President commits federal aid simultaneously with the governor's commitment of state resources. Based on initial assessments from the Department of Homeland Security and supported CCDR, the Secretary of Defense authorizes Federal military forces to augment the state's assets as part of a coordinated Federal response. Even before the formal authorization, the combatant commander places available forces on alert. The Federal military forces fill a critical capability gap between the time when the State's National Guard and civilian responders arrive, and the time necessary to marshal the Nation's

civilian resources to meet all requirements. Figure 3-2 illustrates the requirements in a major catastrophe as a solid line, and the relative capabilities of the National Guard and Federal military forces as dotted lines.

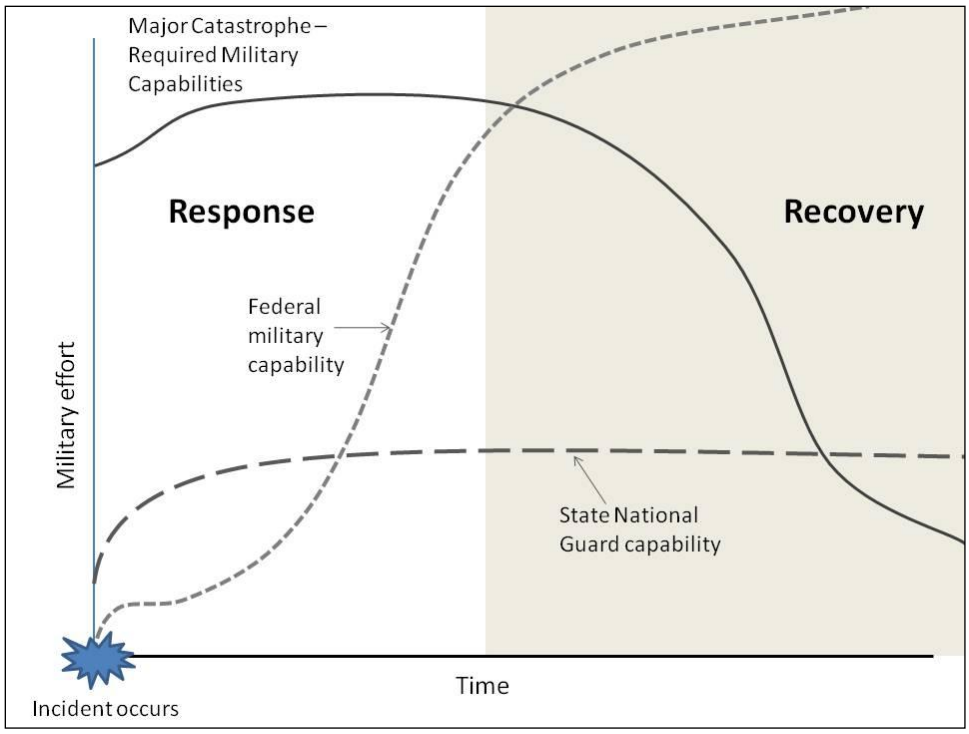


Figure 3-2. Military requirements in a major catastrophe

3-9. In a major catastrophe, there is a large initial gap between response requirements and available capabilities. As rapidly as they can deploy to the JOA, Federal military forces support FEMA-led response and recovery efforts. Federal forces fill the gap between available National Guard resources and total required capabilities. Even with the commitment of Federal forces, there may be a gap between what is needed and what is deployed until the bulk of Federal military forces arrive. The physics of deploying and receiving large forces in disaster areas ensure that initial response lags total requirements until the deployment means are re-tasked from other commitments. During this period, commanders should expect criticism and skepticism from various media representatives who demand to know why more is not being done. While this may be unavoidable, commanders do everything within their scope of authority to ensure that unity of effort is achieved.

3-10. Even in a major catastrophe such as Hurricane Katrina, the Federal military support available for deployment will exceed needs in the JOA, particularly during recovery when civilian agencies have reached their full capacity. But should conditions deteriorate; the President can continue to increase Federal military support to any level necessary to enable FEMA and the other agencies to manage response and recovery.

3-11. Transition for military forces usually follows the reverse order of alert and deployment. The first Soldiers to redeploy to their home stations are the Federal military forces. Any of their remaining missions pass to federal agencies (usually executed by civilian contract), National Guard units, and state agencies. As state and local agencies reach their full capacities, National Guard units begin to redeploy, with priority normally given to National Guard units from other states provided under mutual aid agreements. Until the Governor is satisfied that citizen needs can be met by civilian means alone, that state's National Guard forces continue to support local authorities in a reduced, "steady state" posture by rotating units and personnel.

LOCAL AND STATE RESPONSE

3-12. City, county, and tribal emergency managers assess their jurisdictions' ability to respond. Their assessment weighs several aspects: the incident commanders' assessments, experience with similar incidents, training based on the NIMS and the NRF, estimates developed from National Planning Scenarios, and coordination with their counterparts in adjacent jurisdictions and at the state or territorial level. In some types of disasters, there is a warning period. For example, hurricanes, severe summer and winter weather, and volcanoes provide varying amounts of warning before affecting a community. In the case of hurricanes and floods, the warning may be as much as a week. This affords emergency planners time to initiate measures to prevent casualties and mitigate the worst effects of the storm through evacuations, pre-positioning supplies, and mobilizing additional first responders. Unfortunately, many disasters such as earthquakes occur with no warning. Prior planning and preparation, coupled with the response of state and federal echelons, mitigates the effects of the incident. Either in anticipation or response to requirements that exceed their capabilities, local emergency managers request assistance from adjacent jurisdictions and state officials. (Local officials from adjoining communities normally have agreements in place that authorize their first responders to provide emergency assistance based on requests from their counterparts in the affected area.) However, adjacent communities may be unable to provide assistance, since the incident also affects them. Similar agreements allow commercial services, such as utilities, to provide immediate assistance to their affected counterparts from across an entire region.

3-13. The state activates its emergency operations center and representatives from state-level emergency support functions report to it. The state emergency operations center normally initiates operations from its existing offices. However, the Governor or state emergency manager may displace it to another location if a) the location is affected by the disaster, and management from there degrades response; or b) if the Governor needs to be in closer proximity to the disaster area. The latter is particularly true in the larger states, when movement by air may require refueling stops.

NATIONAL GUARD RESPONSE

3-14. When any municipality or county activates an emergency operations center, it notifies the state emergency manager. The state emergency manager then passes a situation report to the Joint Force Headquarters–State and then to the National Guard watch desk. The Adjutant General or a designated representative may deploy a liaison team from the Joint Force Headquarters-State to assess and monitor the situation. A National Guard liaison team is likely to deploy if the situation is unclear and has the potential to require additional resources. If The Adjutant General anticipates local authorities needing additional assistance, the Joint Force deploys additional teams.

3-15. National Guard Commanders may provide immediate response to a local community, but under state laws. The local emergency managers may have contingency agreements in place with local armories and nearby National Guard training installations. Alert for the National Guard begins with the activation of the alert roster - usually initiated by full time Guard personnel. This alerting message is the notification the Guard members receive to report to their home station. The National Guard local commander is not a permanent full time member and is alerted by his or her alert roster. The supporting commander assesses the situation within the larger context of the likely state response. Soldiers committed locally in an immediate response may be needed for a larger call-up of National Guard forces by the Governor. The local commander may limit the immediate assistance in order to support higher priority missions. Frequently, National Guardsmen muster at their units even before an official alert order; their experience enables them to anticipate quite accurately when they will be needed.

Tornados Strike Tennessee

Warm temperatures generated severe thunderstorms across the mid south region in February 2008. Strong tornados struck Arkansas, Tennessee, Kentucky, Mississippi and Alabama. Two thirds of Tennessee suffered damaging storms. Tornadoes killed 32 people, injured 149, and destroyed over 750 homes, making it the worst storm to hit the state in 75 years. Many of the counties hit by the storm were overwhelmed with storm debris and lacked the means to clear roads and initiate response and recovery operations. Macon, Sumner and Trousdale counties reported a swath of destruction over a mile wide. The storm nearly destroyed some communities. The Governor called out the National Guard to help in the recovery efforts.

The 230th Engineer Battalion, Tennessee National Guard, received the alert to deploy within 48 hours. Their mission was to support the Tennessee Department of Transportation. The Tennessee National Guard deployed 27 large dump trucks, eight large bucket loaders, troops with chain saws, and a logistics support package. Over a two-week period, the unit collected, hauled, and dumped over 9,000 cubic yards of debris.

The Joint Force Headquarters–State

3-16. IAW National Guard Regulation 500-1, the states establish Joint Force Headquarters–state (JFHQ-state) to unify command of their Air and Army National Guard forces. The JFHQ–state functions as the joint staff for the TAG, who in turn directs all military operations conducted by the National Guard of that state. The JFHQ-State co-locates with the state's emergency operations center and allocates resources to committed National Guard forces. Most states exercise operational control of their forces through a joint task force headquarters deployed to the disaster. One of the most important functions of the JFHQ-State is coordination requests for emergency assistance from states' National Guard forces. Simultaneously, the state joint headquarters JFHQ-State provides situation reports to the NGB JOCC at the National Guard Bureau in Washington D.C.

3-17. The Adjutant General alerts state National Guard forces through emergency communications networks that tie together subordinate National Guard armories, installations, and commanders. Based on standing contingency plans, The Adjutant General organizes one or more joint task forces formed around one of the state's battalion or larger sized units. This may be a brigade headquarters with Air National Guard personnel and state civilians. Figure 3-3 illustrates the relationship between civilian command centers and National Guard echelons used in Illinois; although other states have different arrangements, the support follows similar patterns. The Adjutant General supports the Governor and the JFHQ–state supports the state EOC. The joint task force exercises operational control of committed forces and works with the area command center on scene. Note that this example uses a joint task force; in some states, the military response may include only Army National Guard, and the force headquarters may be designated a task force.

3-18. Note that even in those states where the Adjutant General is also the state emergency coordinator, National Guard forces remain in support of civil authority. State constitutions echo the principles in the U.S. Constitution and respect the authorities of elected and appointed officials within their jurisdictions. The relationship between National Guard leaders and their civilian counterparts may intertwine considerably, for practical reasons and because the National Guard and state officials work closely together for years and have often formed teams to respond to incidents.

3-19. In a large-scale disaster involving many counties, such as a hurricane or major winter storm, the affected state may employ multiple area commands. The Adjutant General organizes joint or single Service task forces and places them in direct support of the area commands. This streamlines the command and control process by allowing the civilian area commanders to pass requests for assistance directly to the supporting task force commander, who then issues a fragmentary order to the appropriate unit. The supporting task force commander informs the JFHQ–state of the status of the task force and passes on requests for reinforcements or additional equipment and sustainment. This arrangement capitalizes on

mission command and subordinate initiative. Figure 3-4 shows a multi-task force commitment in relation to civilian incident command structures.

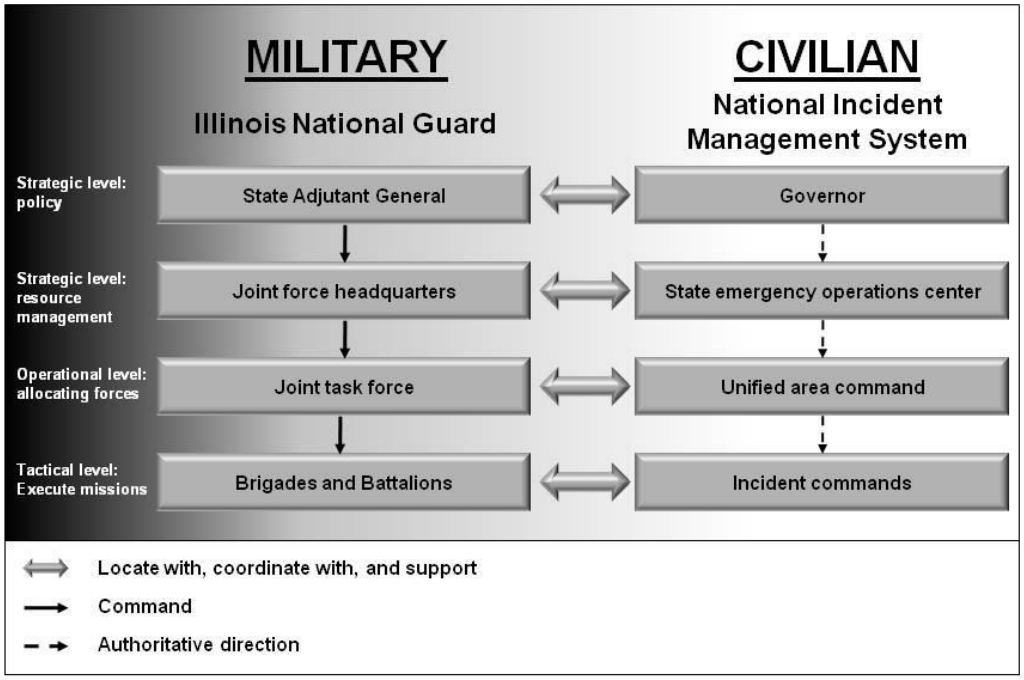


Figure 3-3. State response and National Guard echelons—Illinois example.

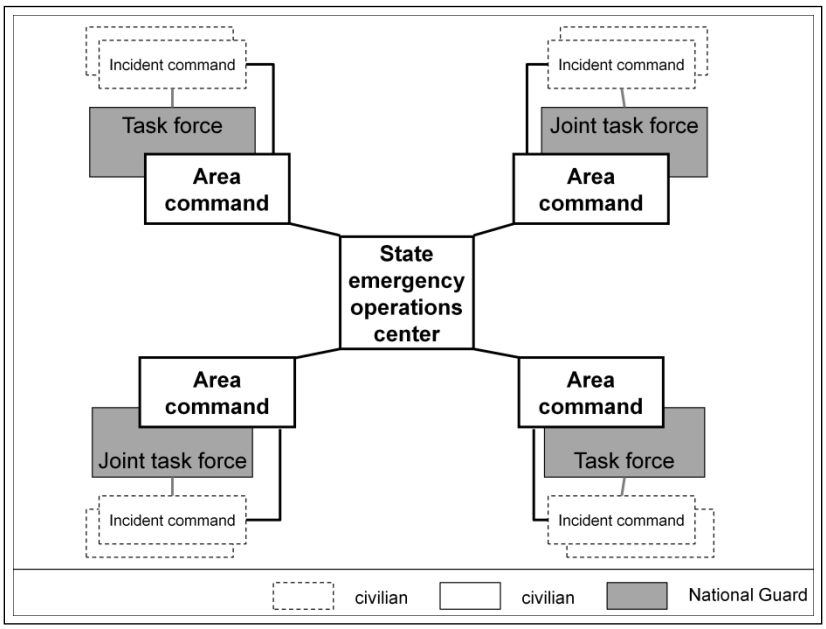


Figure 3-4. Multiple area commands and National Guard forces

Unique Planning Considerations for State National Guard Units

3-20. State National Guard contingency planners consider several factors when preparing for potential disasters. Some factors are common to Army unit planning, but several are unique to the National Guard. These include—

- Proximity of the unit to the disaster. The closer the unit's armory is to the disaster, the more rapidly it can respond, and the more familiar key leaders may be with the area and local civilians. However, the unit is also more likely to suffer in the disaster, with some or all of its capability severely degraded.
- Deployed personnel and equipment. National Guard units deploy overseas more frequently today than at any time during the Cold War. The Adjutant General continually updates plans based upon the availability of forces within the state. By coordinating with adjacent states and the National Guard Bureau for EMAC support, The Adjutant General manages the impact on the state's disaster response capabilities when the Army and Air Force deploy units to combat. If a disaster strikes and one of the state's units is preparing for deployment but not yet federalized, the Governor may commit the unit to the disaster under state control. The Adjutant General works through the National Guard Bureau to coordinate adjustments to deployment and training schedules.
- Distribution of tactical units. Unlike the Regular Army, the various tactical units that make up the brigades and divisions of the National Guard are widely distributed. Units are not necessarily co-located with their heavy equipment. For example, a National Guard brigade combat team may have its battalions distributed across armories throughout the state. In some cases, one of the battalions may belong to another state's National Guard. Disaster response plans within each state adjust task organizations based on availability of forces, proximity of units to one another, and unit equipment. Early in the response, a task force may consist of small units from many units, and larger forces gradually assemble their TOE configuration.

3-21. National Guard planners also assess the required capabilities against those capabilities that the National Guard plans and trains to provide during civil support. These include Security, CBRNE consequence management, communications, logistics, engineer, medical, transportation, aviation, and maintenance. Refer to NGR 500-1 for additional discussion.

Emergency Management Assistance Compact

3-22. The Emergency Management Assistance Compact (EMAC) grew out of several States helping each other after Hurricane Andrew in 1992. Congress ratified the EMAC on 19 October 1996 in Public Law 104-321, as required under Section 10, Article I of the Constitution. The National Emergency Management Association (NEMA) located in Lexington, KY, administers the EMAC. The EMAC is a comprehensive agreement similar to a treaty between nations. The Emergency Management Assistance Compact is a non-binding collaborative arrangement by its members that provides a legal framework for assisting one another to manage the consequences of a disaster, emergency, or attack that has resulted in an Emergency Declaration by the Governor of the impacted State. All States, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, and the Virgin Islands are members of EMAC. They become members by introducing it as an identical bill in the State legislature, passing it, and having the Governor sign it into State law.

3-23. Governors enter into supplemental and binding contractual agreements between their states after an incident occurs. These agreements, executed on a standardized form called a REQ-A (request for assistance), provide specific details as to the type of support each assisting state will provide and the amount of reimbursement the impacted state will pay to each assisting state. There is a separate REQ-A for each state providing assistance. Support under an EMAC does not require a Presidential declaration. Depending on the circumstances, state-to-state assistance can substitute or supplement to federal assistance under the Stafford Act.

3-24. If the request for assistance includes assistance by National Guard personnel, such personnel serve in a State Active Duty status; and not in a Title 32 status unless approved by the Secretary of Defense. The EMAC and these REQ-A forms do not pertain to National Guard personnel in a Federal military status.

3-25. Article XIII of the EMAC does not authorize or permit the use of National Guard forces from one State to perform civil disturbance or other law enforcement operations in another State. The EMAC says this type of support requires a separate memorandum of understanding. The Gulf States have executed these memoranda with each other and the terms of these agreements cover the details of using armed National Guardsmen from another state, such as command relationship, immunity, carrying and loading of

weapons authority, law enforcement authority, and training on State Rules on the Use of Force (RUF) requirements.

3-26. The National Guard Bureau maintains visibility of agreements involving interstate National Guard support agreements. Because the Bureau monitors the status of the total Guard force, it can identify resources to match requirements, and assist with the details. In an emergency, the National Guard Bureau in Washington, D.C., assists and coordinates additional agreements between states, but the respective governors must execute the memorandum of understanding concerning the use of these forces.

3-27. Whenever State National Guard forces respond in support of another state, the state joint force headquarters ensure the following coordination requirements are met:

- The memorandum of understanding specifies the duration of the commitment with the supported state. (Most NG commitments are for 30 days.) The agreement normally specifies the "time on station" and excludes mobilization, movement, and demobilization time.
- The supported TAG specifies the command relationship between the gaining unit and the supporting unit. The preferred relationship is operational control, with specific coordinating instructions concerning logistics and health service support.
- The supporting state retains administrative control throughout the deployment.
- The supporting unit deploys with a minimum of 72 hours of sustainment.
- The agreement must clearly specify the authorities for law enforcement duties granted by the supported governor and approved by the supporting governor.
- The gaining state designates and operates the reception, staging, onward movement, and integration facility and procedures for all incoming units and personnel from supporting states.
- The supporting unit commander provides the gaining unit commander with a complete unit status report when the unit arrives, and updates it according to the gaining unit's standing operating procedure. Forces avoid needless operational and administrative difficulties by ensuring accurate status reporting.
- The supporting unit brings or maintains access to any professional licenses necessary (such as medical or veterinary licenses) for personnel provided under a mutual aid agreement that are not validated under EMAC. The supported state must specify which licensing requirements are waivered or restricted.
- Both states agree to the documentation needed for reimbursable expenses and procedures not covered in National Guard regulations.
- The gaining and supporting unit commanders coordinate actions related to disciplinary matters. Unless modified by the respective governors, Soldiers remain subject to their state's military codes.

RESPONSE BY FEDERAL MILITARY FORCES

3-28. Federal military forces provide support during emergencies and incidents in two general categories. The first is immediate response authority, under which an installation commander may assist a local community in an emergency. This support is limited in time and scope. The second category is in response to a Presidential declaration of emergency or disaster. In the latter case, Federal military support may range from installation support to civilian agencies up to commitment of major portions of the Regular Army.

IMMEDIATE RESPONSE AUTHORITY

3-29. Although Federal military forces are not normally first responders, they can support local authorities in an emergency. In the absence of a federally declared disaster, installation commanders and responsible officials from DOD components and agencies may provide support to save lives, prevent human suffering, and mitigate great property damage. This includes mutual aid for fire protection, and immediate response as by the Secretary of Defense. This response must be consistent with the Posse Comitatus Act. (See Chapters 6 and 8) The DSCA EXORD currently states,

> *When time does not permit prior approval from higher headquarters, local military commanders, or responsible officials of other DOD components, may in imminently*

serious conditions, upon request from local authorities, provide support to save lives, prevent human suffering, or mitigate great property damage. Such immediate response should be provided to civil agencies on a cost-reimbursable basis, but requests for immediate response should not be delayed or denied because of the inability or unwillingness of the requester to make a commitment to reimburse the Department of Defense. Commanders, or responsible DOD, officials will report all actions and support provided through the appropriate chain of command to the National Military Command Center (NMCC), and provide a copy to the Geographic CCDR. After 72 hours of employment, respective military departments will coordinate continued operations with the Geographic CCDR.

3-30. According to Title 42 U.S.C, § 1856a, each agency charged with providing fire protection for any property of the United States may enter into agreements with local fire-fighting organizations (including nearby military installations) to provide assistance in fighting fires. This includes personal services and equipment required for fire prevention, the protection of life and property from fire, fire fighting, and emergency services, including basic medical support, basic and advanced life support, hazardous material containment and confinement, and special rescue events involving vehicular and water mishaps, and trench, building, and confined space extractions.

3-31. Requests for assistance go directly from local civilian authorities to local military commanders as well as responsible officials from DOD components and agencies. The installation commander may provide all assets with the exception of those that have a potential for lethality. The Secretary of Defense must approve deployment of weapons and munitions, including bayonets. Deployed forces remain under military command, and function in direct support of the requesting local authority. Typical missions include:

- Search and rescue
- Evacuation, decontamination, fire-fighting, medical treatment, restoration of medical capabilities and public services
- Removal of debris, rubble, or hazards to permit rescue or movement
- Recovery, identification, and registration, and disposal of the dead of deceased persons
- Detecting, assessing, and containing a CBRNE incident
- Collecting, safeguarding, and distributing essential food items and supplies
- Damage assessment
- Communications
- Explosive Ordnance Disposal

Note: The installation senior commander <u>will not</u> approve any civilian jurisdiction request for law enforcement support outside the installation, including interdicting vehicles, conducting searches and seizures, making arrests or apprehensions, surveillance, investigation, or undercover work.

RESPONSE BY FEDERAL MILITARY FORCES – PRESIDENTIAL DECLARATION

3-32. Usually, the commitment of Federal military forces for civil support operations follows a presidential disaster declaration under the Stafford Act. After the disaster declaration, the primary federal agency (usually FEMA) prepares a request for DSCA assistance and submits it to the DOD executive secretary. However, the federal coordinating officer may initiate the request, or another federal agency could request DOD support. In addition, the President may bypass the usual request process and order the military to provide support. Figure 3-5 illustrates the usual process that leads to committing Federal military forces.

3-33. Concurrently with the DSCA request to Joint Staff, the combatant commander with responsibilities for that AOR (either USNORTHCOM or PACOM) develops the concept of operations and support, and submits a request for forces (RFF) to the Joint Staff. The Secretary of Defense designates the supported combatant commander and any supporting combatant commands. When validated, the RFF becomes an

order to the supporting combatant commanders to source the requirements and provide the forces. In support of this process, the Army service component commander coordinates with Department of the Army and FORSCOM (for most Army units) concerning required capabilities and forces. Based upon the Army Force Generation Process, the FORSCOM Commander and the Department of the Army identify the required forces to the supporting combatant commander (normally JFCOM). The Secretary of Defense specifies the command relationship of forces to the gaining combatant command, either normally OPCON or attached. The Secretary of the Army may direct modifications to ADCON; if not, administrative control remains with the providing Army headquarters.

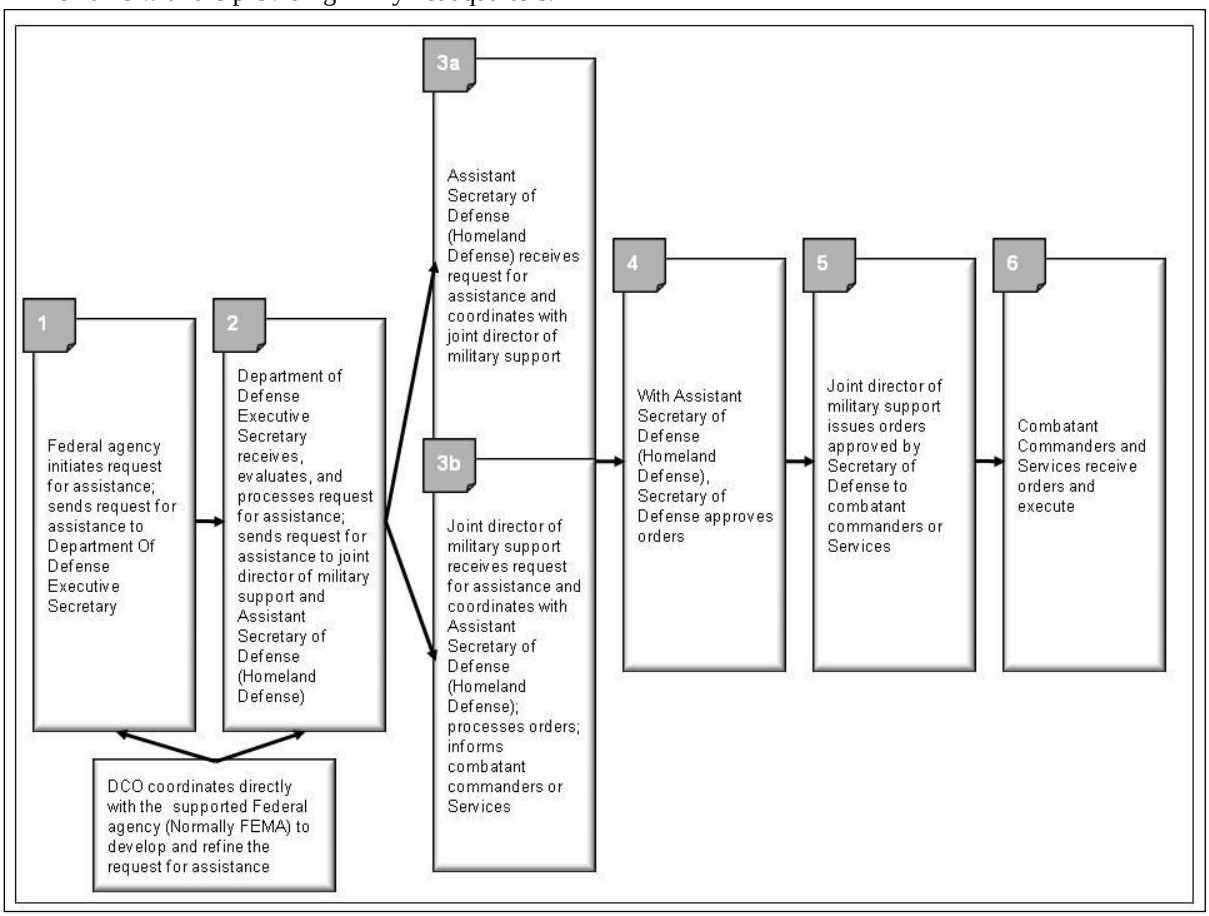
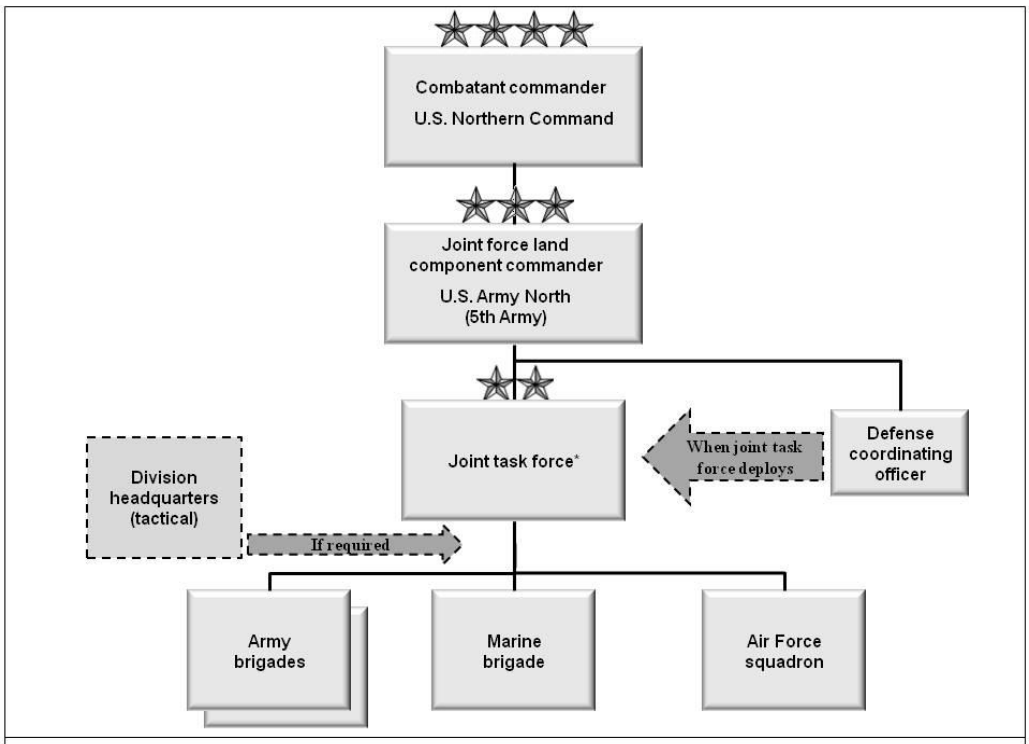


Figure 3-5. The Federal Request for Assistance (RFA) process

3-34. If approved by the President, the Secretary of Defense may mobilize National Guard forces for federal service. These forces pass to the OPCON of the gaining combatant commander. National Guard units conducting DSCA in Federal military status change their ADCON to the gaining Army Service Component. However, the Army component commander coordinates with the providing TAG to continue as much of the ADCON support as feasible through the respective states. The Secretary of Defense may also direct the service secretaries to place selected installations in a support relationship to the supported combatant command. For any Federal military force operating in the NORTHCOM AOR, the JFLCC commander determines the required capabilities and the appropriate command relationships, depending on the situation. The determination of command and control arrangements is one of the most important JFLCC decisions. Figure 3-6 illustrates an example of USNORTHCOM structure for DSCA.

3-35. If the requirement for DOD support only consists of a small number of troops, the JFLCC may place the detachment under operational control of the DCO, rather than a JTF. The JFLCC provides the DCO with any additional assets to support the detachment. The DCO coordinates with the federal coordinating officer missions and issues orders to the detachment commander. The DCE coordinates for support through the JFLCC and other federal agencies.



* U.S. Army North contingency command post, standing joint task force, or designated headquarters with augmentation

Figure 3-6. Example of USNORTHCOM structure for DSCA

3-36. Anything larger than a small element necessitates more extensive command and control than the DCO and DCE can provide. Within the NORTHCOM AOR, the CCDR and USARNORTH assesses the command and control requirements needed to control Army and other Federal military land forces. The USNORTHCOM commander decides whether to commit Joint Task Force–Civil Support. USARNORTH may employ either of its two contingency command posts as a JTF or land component; conversely, it may designate an incoming headquarters as the JTF or land component.

3-37. The NORTHCOM commander identifies the base support installation (BSI). The BSI is normally a DOD installation with an airfield and suitable support facilities. The BSI is the domestic equivalent to a theater base in other areas of responsibility. The BSI becomes the aerial port of delivery and JRSOI facility for the Army forces. USARNORTH establishes and controls the joint RSOI facility, usually at the BSI or very near it. In addition to JRSOI, the BSI may become a training facility and principal supporting base for the federal relief efforts. If there is not a suitable DOD installation nearby, USNORTHCOM may request permission to use a National Guard base. However, National Guard bases usually support no more than one or two battalions at a time, and may require extensive additional military and contract support. (See Chapter 9)

3-38. Both USNORTHCOM and USARNORTH routinely deploy situational assessment teams to disaster areas in advance of a decision to commit Federal military forces. These teams deploy to the incident area and come under the operational control of the DCO. The DCO facilitates coordination and information sharing between the assessment teams and the various emergency support functions. If required the DCO can coordinate for information sharing between the assessment team, the state emergency operations center, and the JTFHQ-S. The DCO remains the point of entry for state operations centers. The DCO knows each state emergency manager and state coordinating officer, as well as the state's EPLOs, and arranges necessary coordination channels. Once the assessment team provides its findings to their parent headquarters, they become part of the defense coordinating element and provide situation updates as part of the DCO's situation report.

3-39. USNORTHCOM or USARNORTH also sends a liaison team to DOD installations nearby to assess the potential basing requirements. If deployment of federal military forces is likely, USARNORTH deploys

an contingency command post to the vicinity of the joint (multiagency) field office. From there the command post coordinates requirements between the DCO and USARNORTH, assists the DCE, and begins the process of tying in military command and control with the joint field office.

3-40. The members of these liaison teams employ interpersonal skill as well as professional competence. If the situation is severe enough to require Federal military forces, civilians at the joint field office and a state emergency operations center will be under great stress. Bringing newly arrived DOD personnel up to speed may seem like an additional burden in a chaotic situation. Before deployment, the liaison teams and the contingency command post coordinate through the DCO with the senior federal and state officials. They obtain as much information as possible. Upon arrival, the team leader further coordinates through the DCE in order to support civilian incident commanders and deployed National Guard forces.

3-41. In situations other than a disaster, a Federal agency or state government may request DOD assistance. The request follows the same general process as an emergency under the Stafford Act. However, requests for assistance in circumstances other than a declared emergency or disaster come under the Economy Act. This law prohibits the use of DOD capabilities in lieu of similar capabilities within the requesting agency or state, and further requires the supported agency to reimburse DOD for all operating expenses. Tactically, the Stafford and Economy Act have no significant effect.

MISSION ASSIGNMENTS

3-42. Once Federal military forces arrive in the disaster area, they receive missions that originate within the Joint field office in coordination with the DCO. Each ESF coordinator evaluates requirements and determines how much capability is available. Within the joint field office, ESF coordinators analyze the situation in coordination with the JFO and DCO and identify potential requests for assistance from Federal military forces. The DCO determines if the request is feasible. The DCO also assesses whether the mission is appropriate—evaluating resources and legal issues. If the request meets these criteria and submits a request through the combatant commander to DOD to provide a specific capability and authorize its use. In many cases, a pre-scripted mission assignment may provide the resources needed, reducing the coordination time. (See Figure 2-10)

3-43. Beginning with the DCO and continuing through the chain of command, each request for DOD assistance receives an evaluation based on six factors (sometimes referred to by the acronym CARRLL) listed below:

- **Cost**. Who will pay or reimburse DOD for the assistance rendered?
- **Appropriateness**. Who normally provides and is best suited to satisfy the request for assistance? Is it in DOD's interest to provide the assistance? Have other options been considered to meet the request? Is DOD the best provider of the requested assistance under the circumstances?
- **Readiness**. Does the assistance have an adverse impact on the responding unit's ability to perform its primary readiness, training, deployment missions?
- **Risk**. What is the potential health or safety hazards to DOD forces and their equipment, vehicles, or aircraft? Can these risks be mitigated?
- **Legality**. What is the legal authority that permits or prohibits the requested assistance?
- **Lethality**. Is there any potential for lethal force to be used by or against DOD forces? If yes, has the Secretary of Defense authorized the carrying of weapons?

3-44. The DCE performs a critical function by performing a modified mission analysis on each request for assistance. First, they determine if the RFA expresses the right mission. Often this means translating civilian terms into military terms. Second, they translate the approved mission assignment into a mission tasking order, suitable for the JTF to analyze and execute. Ideally, the FCO and DCO determine what capabilities are required, not how to do the mission, allowing mission command. The JTF commander translates the mission tasking order into an operations order that allows the JTF maximum flexibility. For example, rather than asking the JTF for "one UH-60 helicopter to fly the FCO and FEMA Director at a specific date and time and location", the DCO may revise it into a mission tasking order, "provide command and control aviation support to the FCO."

3-45. Broader issues of support may require discussion among the members of the unified coordination group and military commanders. When required, the Federal military JTF commander and the State JTF commander participate in the discussions with their respective DCO or SCO, but the inclusion is not required.

PHASES OF DISASTER RESPONSE

3-46. The NRF divides disaster response into three broad phases: prepare, respond, and recover. Figure 3-7 illustrates the NRF phases and the six phases currently contained in USNORTHCOM plans for DSCA. Commanders conducting civil support operations should recognize the overlap and how the USNORTHCOM phases fit within the NRF.

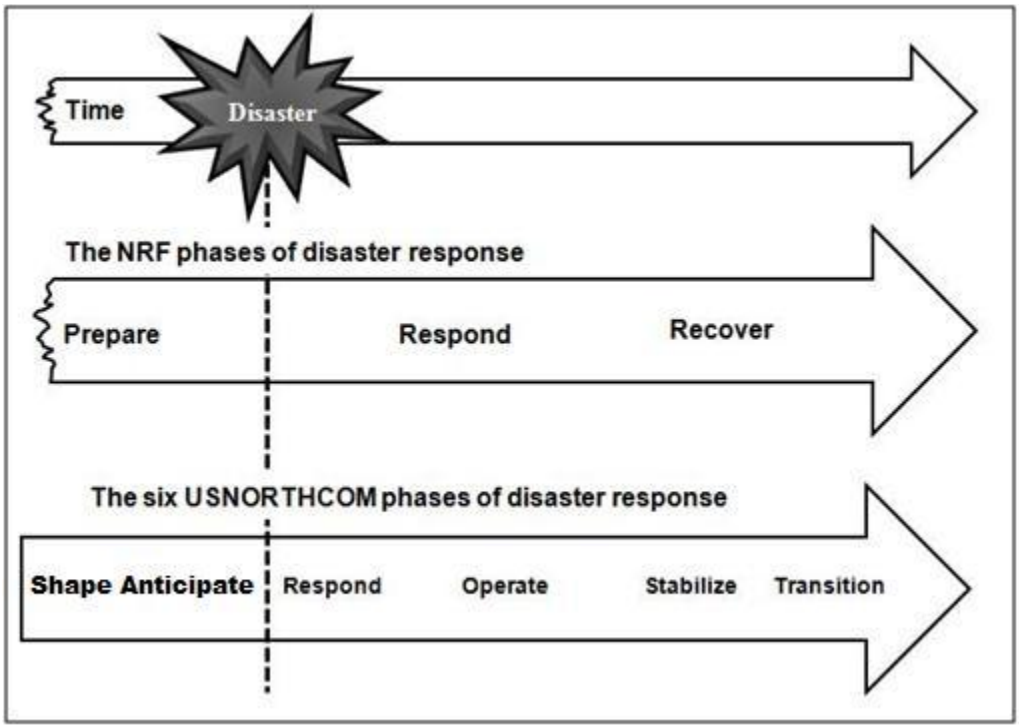


Figure 3-7. USNORTHCOM phases of disaster response

- Phase 0, *Shape*. Phase 0 is continuous situational awareness and preparedness. Actions in this phase include interagency coordination, planning, identification of gaps, exercises, and public affairs. These activities are synchronized through the USNORTHCOM Theater Campaign Plan and continue through all phases.
- Phase I, *Anticipate*. Phase I begins with the identification of a potential DSCA mission, a no-notice event, or when directed by the President or Secretary of Defense. The phase ends when assigned response forces deploy or when the determination is made that there is no requirement for DSCA. Success equals deployment of the Defense Coordination Officer, Defense Coordination Element (DCE), Emergency Preparedness Liaison Officer(s) (EPLO), and other selected response forces. These forces will be postured to facilitate quick response after coordination with the primary agency, FCO, and local, state, and tribal officials.
- Phase II, *Respond*. Phase II begins with the deployment of initial Federal military response capabilities. The phase ends when Federal military forces are ready to conduct operations in the joint operations area. Success equals forces deployed with enough capability to support civil authorities in accomplishment of the mission.
- Phase III, *Operate*. Phase III begins when Federal military forces commence operations and ends when Federal military forces begin to complete mission assignments and no further RFA are

anticipated from civil authorities. Phase III success is achieved when currently deployed USNORTHCOM capabilities are sufficient to support civil authorities.

- Phase IV, *Stabilize*. Phase IV begins when military and civil authorities decide that DOD support will scale down. Phase IV ends when USNORTHCOM support is no longer required by civil authorities and transition criteria are established. Phase IV success is achieved when all operational aspects of mission assignments are complete.
- Phase V, *Transition*. Phase V begins with the redeployment of remaining Federal military forces. The phase ends when response forces have redeployed and operational control is returned to their parent commands. Phase V success is achieved when USNORTHCOM forces have transitioned all operations back to civil authorities.

PLANNING FOR THE NEXT PHASE

3-47. Early in an operation, a catastrophic disaster may overburden the civilians managing the response. Urgent requirements force emergency managers to concentrate all their efforts on the next 24 or 48 hours. Longer planning horizons may become a low priority. Army planners can support civil authorities by offering to develop plans for the next phases and end state of the operation. Before offering to support long-term planning, the senior commander must earn the trust and confidence of civilian leaders. Army commanders always keep in mind that they serve in a supporting role. Once accepted, Army planners help the civilian staff develop a phased plan with an achievable end state. Similar assistance, offered where needed most in the joint field office or within other parts the incident command system (such as incident command posts and emergency operations centers), contributes to very effective unified action.

TRANSITION BETWEEN MILITARY TO CIVILIAN SUPPORT

3-48. The Army's role in disaster response ends as soon as practical. The ultimate task of federal and state disaster response efforts is to assist the local community in returning to self-sufficiency. When directed by the FCO or SCO, Army forces complete their mission assignments and turn over responsibility for further efforts civilian agencies and commercial enterprise. However, commanders coordinate with their respective state and federal field offices to avoid gaps in necessary support. The goal of the recovery effort is to allow the State to control as much of the long term recovery as feasible and return Federal forces to their parent installations.

3-49. In addition, commanders at every level keep in mind the human aspects of the transition to civilian organizations and account for it in their assessments. In a disaster, Soldiers form friendships and professional relationships with civic and group leaders with whom they work. Communities form a relationship with the Soldiers they see every day. When military units are near the end of a mission, they need to coordinate the transition with their civilian counterparts. Each situation is different, but commanders make sure they plan for the human aspects of transition as well as the details of transferring missions.

3-50. National Guard forces may supplant Federal military forces as the disaster response evolves toward recovery, should military capabilities still be needed within the affected area. This particularly applicable in incidents involving immediate response authority. Federal military forces that arrive immediately at an incident site may be relieved by National Guard forces as the latter reach the scene. In other cases, Federal military forces may receive a mission assignment to replace National Guard units so that state military forces can enforce public order, while Federal troops take over humanitarian efforts. The transition between Federal and State military forces is planned and coordinated through the joint field office between the FCO, DCO and SCO. In addition to specific coordination requirements specified in FRAGOs, the outgoing and incoming commander exchange information on the situation and environment.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR DISASTER REPSONSE

3-51. In this section and in succeeding chapters, FM 3-28 discusses operational and tactical considerations for civil support operations. This discussion includes selected considerations organized by the Army doctrinal concepts of battle command and the elements of combat power. The emphasis is on tactical

considerations that require additional planning and on measures that complement civil support operations or distinguish them from stability operations.

3-52. MSTTP 3-28.1, a multi-service publication issued by ALSA, provides many other tactical considerations. Commanders and staff can also find related information in Center for Army Lessons Learned, National Guard Lessons Learned and Joint Lessons Learned publications. The USNORTHCOM web site at http://www.northcom.mil/ also provides a portal for extensive reference material.

BATTLE COMMAND

3-53. Command drives the operations process in civil support just as battle command drives it in full spectrum operations overseas. Commanders understand, visualize, describe, and direct while assessing and leading. However, certain aspects require a different perspective in homeland security than the same commander might apply in a combat situation. The most obvious is the lack of a thinking, adaptive enemy. Although Soldiers may encounter some criminal behavior by civilians during civil support operations, from the Soldier's perspective the civilians are citizens and not enemy combatants. Commanders also adjust the way they understand, assess, and lead, adapting the particulars of battle command to domestic operational environments.

Understand

3-54. Command in civil support begins with understanding the operational environment. Understanding the physical environment, particularly in the aftermath of a disaster or terrorist attack, requires first-hand knowledge. To achieve this, commanders travel to their subordinate's location to get their subordinate's assessment of the situation and measure that against personal observation, just as they would in combat. Reports and statistics may be useful summaries of activity but cannot convey the actual impact of the incident on the community. Commanders speak with citizens throughout the area and ascertain for themselves the situation in the community. They make sure their subordinates do the same. There is no substitute for face-to-face discussions to build understanding of the situation at a human, neighborhood level and then assemble that level of understanding into an appreciation of the larger situation.

3-55. To understand the environment, commanders need to know their role and that of their units within the environment. Commanders begin with their own chain of command. In many operations, the task organization combines units and headquarters that have not worked together previously. For many of the Regular Army units, this may be their first deployment in a domestic emergency. The command arrangements for civil support will differ from those used in combat operations. Commanders at each level meet with their seniors and subordinates early and often. As soon as they understand their military organization and commanders' intent, they do the same with leaders of other military forces and the civilian agencies. This parallels how commanders develop understanding in stability operations; the role of that unit within the larger context. Military forces are there to support citizens, working in conjunction with local, state and federal authorities.

Assess

3-56. Commanders stress assessment of the situation to their staffs and subordinates. They build situational awareness through coordination with supported and supporting agencies, other military forces, volunteer organizations, and contacts with the media. On the ground, leaders are certain to encounter misinformation and rumors, particularly in the early stages of response. Inoperable and incompatible communications, overloaded incident command centers, distraught citizens, and exaggerated or inaccurate news media coverage contribute to confusion. Although it may not be battle command as FM 3-0 defines it, the chaos surrounding a disaster poses challenges found in combat situations. Commanders keep in mind that the effectiveness of civil support depends not on the success of military missions, but on the effectiveness of the civilian agencies in meeting the citizens' needs.

3-57. Initial assessment is vital. The initial assessment provides the responding commander with information and recommendations to make timely decisions for the response. Initial assessment identifies specific needs on the ground and actual coordination requirements, including but not limited to items covered in local, state, and federal disaster plans. Prior planning and exercises are invaluable, but disasters

never occur exactly as anticipated. The initial assessment provides information to help verify on–the-ground conditions. This information helps the commander make required decisions in order to provide the most effective military support for civil disaster response. During the initial assessment, the commander may determine that an existing plan fits a very different incident and can rapidly orient the unit on measures developed in response to that scenario, adapted for the situation.

Earthquake Plans Adapted to an Ice Storm

In February of 2009, a severe ice storm paralyzed western Kentucky. The storm left more than 100,000 citizens, many in rural areas, in dire circumstances. They had no electric power, no way to call for help and all the roads were blocked by broken trees. The Adjutant General of Kentucky, who was also the State's emergency manager, did not have a specific plan for a winter storm of this severity. But he did have plans for dealing with a recurrence of the New Madrid earthquake. He quickly realized that the effects of the ice storm were similar to those predicted for the earthquake. He ordered civilian responders and National Guard emergency forces to adapt the plan they had rehearsed in March of 2008 as part of an emergency response simulation. Subordinates took the initiative and executed ice storm relief effort based upon plans for a major earthquake. BG Heltzel, TAG of Kentucky, attributed the success of the relief effort to prior planning, even if it was for a very different emergency than actually occurred.

Lead

3-58. In civil support operations, commanders focus not only on their subordinates, but on their civilian counterparts. They work to develop trust and confidence between military and civilian personnel. This is an art, and it depends on human qualities. There is no checklist for how to do this, but it is essential for commanders to promote unified effort. Military commanders begin by demonstrating their willingness to support and not take charge within the at the various field offices. Close cooperation and honesty break down friction. Army leaders look for interagency shortfalls in personnel, communication, and situational awareness, and offer assistance if available. They stress that their Soldiers and personnel are there to help and to learn, and they demonstrate it by personal example.

COMMAND AND CONTROL

3-59. Probably the most challenging aspect of civil support is the command and control adjustments required to adapt Army forces to their supporting role within a multiagency environment. Specific areas that require attention include command and support relationships, command post operations, and communications, liaison, and control measures.

Parallel Command

3-60. In many large-scale civil support operations, state National Guard and DOD military forces operate in overlapping areas, but under separate chains of command. The parallel command structure is one of the means to enhance unity of effort, but its success depends upon continuous coordination between all of its components. Within a parallel command structure, there is no single force commander and therefore no unity of command in the military sense. Both the federal and state militaries retain control of their respective forces. Decisions regarding the operation require the collective effort of all participating leaders: state and federal governmental leaders and state and federal senior military leaders. These leaders collaborate within the NRF to develop common goals and to unify their efforts in order to accomplish the mission. Figure 3-8 shows an example of a parallel command structure.

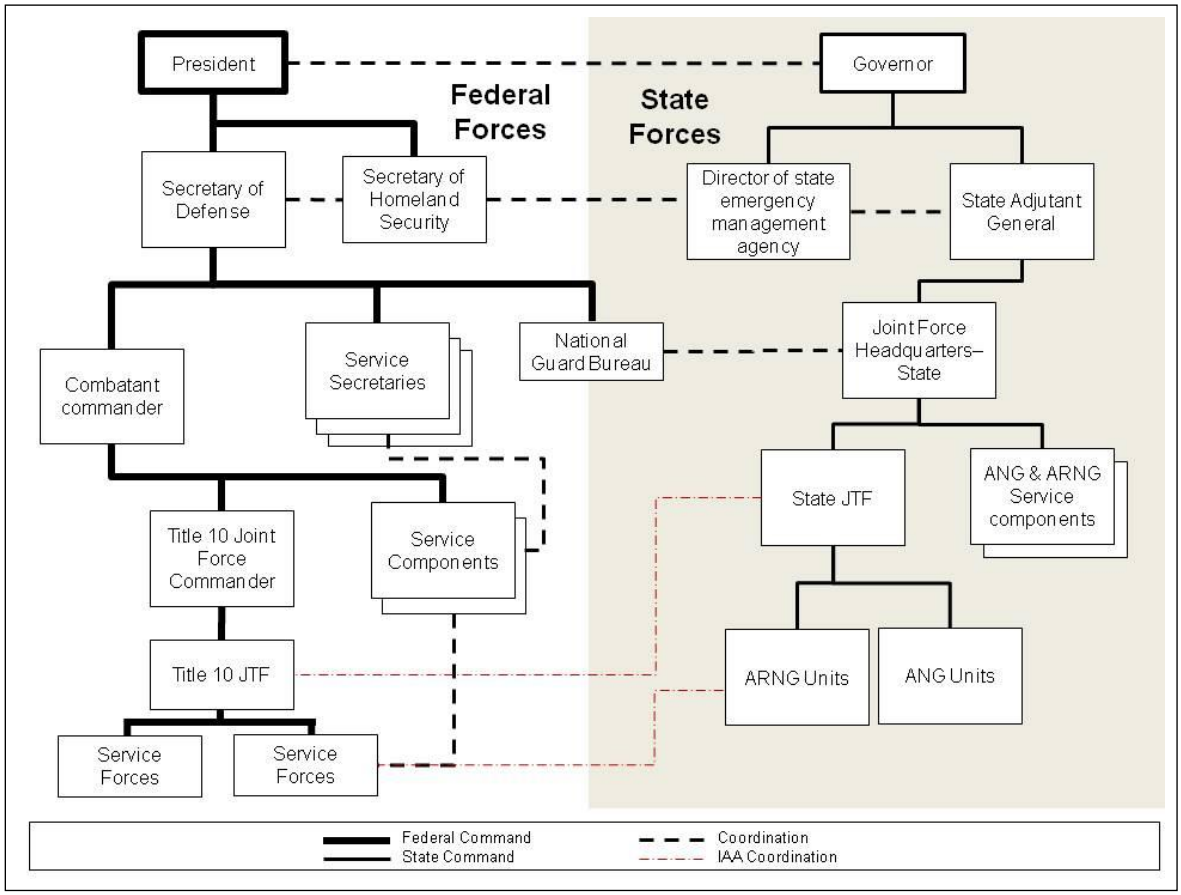


Figure 3-8. Example parallel command structure

3-61. The challenge in using a parallel command structure for DSCA is its dependence on the efficient and effective use of available forces by the State and Federal military chains of command. Therefore, its effectiveness depends on a close working relationship between commanders. Physically co-locating command posts or exchanging high-quality liaison officers at the command posts facilitates this coordination.

Multi-state disasters

3-62. A major catastrophe such as a Category 5 hurricane or a major earthquake may affect several states simultaneously. This makes a coordinated national response imperative. The military commitment will involve thousands of Soldiers from every component. Within the affected states, all National Guard forces will support their respective state's first responders. In a multi-state disaster, existing agreements for support from adjacent states are compromised by the extent of the catastrophe. The NGB will work with all of unaffected states to coordinate for additional National Guard forces to deploy and reinforce the State military forces within the affected states.

3-63. FEMA will require large and flexible Federal military forces to reinforce relief efforts across all of the disaster area, while simultaneously supporting multiple Federal agencies operating in surrounding states able to accept victims and provide logistics support. Figure 3-9 provides an example of command and control for Federal military forces responding to a major catastrophe in the continental U.S. In this scenario, commitment of land forces expands to include large task forces supporting relief efforts in different states. Each task force could consist of Regular forces and mobilized reserve components. The CCDR forms a joint task force to command the actions across an entire FEMA region. Within the JOA, designated Federal military installations support the combatant command response. Note that DCOs from

other regions would have to deploy to the JFO established in each state, since the regional DCO remains with the regional coordination center and principal federal official.

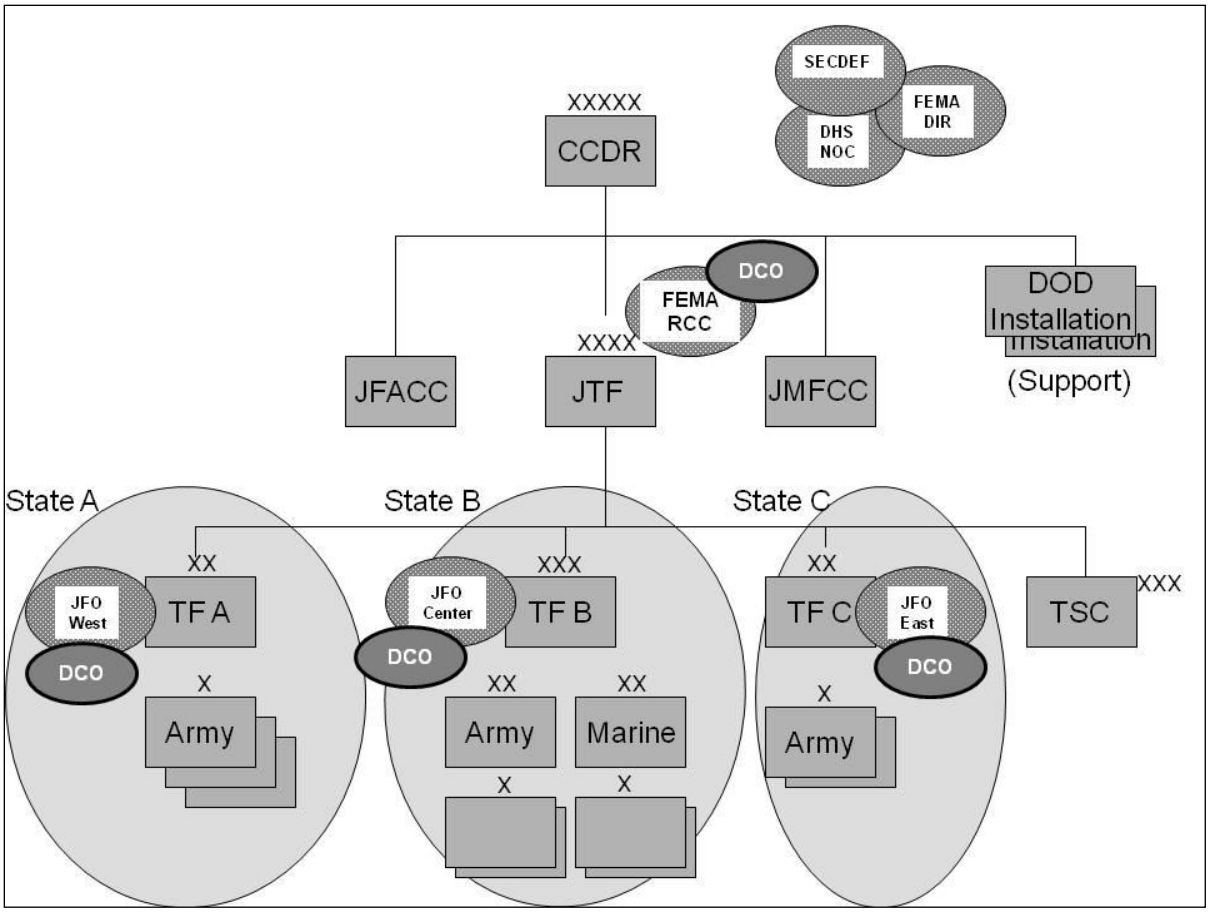


Figure 3-9. Multi-state disaster requiring major commitment of Federal military forces

Command and Support Relationships

3-64. Command and support relationships require careful attention. Military forces remain under military chain of command, but State military and Federal military forces have different chains of command. Unless directed by the President as specified in law, the chains of command remain separate. Although the chains of command remain separate, the forces are often intermixed geographically.

> ***Note:*** The US Army Corps of Engineers operates separately from both State military forces and Federal military forces. USACE is the ESF coordinator for ESF#3 and receives priorities from JFO directly. Federal military forces may also receive mission assignments under ESF#3, but would remain under the JTF's command.

3-65. National Guard commanders may enhance unity of effort through judicious use of support relationships, which differ from command relationships under Army doctrine (see FM 3-0, Appendix B). For example, the JTF-S may place a National Guard company in direct support of a local incident commander. The National Guard commander receives his priorities directly from the incident commander, but retains operational control over all Guardsmen in the company.

3-66. Federal military forces are attached, OPCON, or TACON to the Federal military JTF. The JTF commander further task organizes subordinate units based on mission assignments, normally specifying

OPCON by the gaining headquarters. Administrative control (ADCON) remains with the original providing component headquarters, subject to modification by the Secretary of the Army.

3-67. Support relationships can facilitate unified action when Federal military and State military forces operate in the same area, subject to mission assignments. Pursuant to a request from FEMA or the State, a Federal military installation or unit may support a National Guard force, particularly in cases where the Federal installation is supporting FEMA efforts. However, because the command lines remain separate, any supporting relationship requires approval by both DOD and the affected State Adjutant General, in coordination with their respective federal and state coordinating officers.

Command Post Operations

3-68. Command post operations pose different challenges from those encountered in a stability operation. Whenever possible, the JTF headquarters should co-locate with their supported civilian coordinating officer. The state JTF positions itself within or near the state emergency operations center, and the Federal military JTF co-locates with the joint field office. This eases communications challenges between the JTF and the DCO. In practice, the JFO positions itself near the incident area (50 to 100 miles away). If locating the JFO near the state emergency operations center does not degrade support to the incident area, the FCO will do so.

3-69. In some instances it is not feasible to locate the Federal military JTF command post in the vicinity of the JFO. The most practical solution is for the JTF headquarters to remain at the base support installation (BSI – see Chapter 9). The Commander employs a small, mobile command post as a tactical command post (TAC) to allow face to face contact with subordinate commanders while maintaining situational awareness between the DCO and JTF main command post.

3-70. Similar considerations apply for subordinate units. Units position their command post close to their civilian counterpart's field facilities. If the civilian agencies have multiple facilities from which they are coordinating their response, the tactical unit selects a command post that provides rapid access to civilian locations by foot or vehicle. Units select command post facilities in coordination with their higher headquarters that—

- Allow communication with the higher and subordinate commanders. Disruption of civilian communications and the limitations of tactical radios become the primary considerations.
- Allow rapid road movement between higher and subordinate command posts
- Comply with requirements of state and local officials. Normally, the controlling JTF headquarters negotiates contracts with local agencies for facilities, whether an existing structure or field location. Unit commanders may recommend a suitable facility based on advance party reconnaissance, but the approval remains with civilian authorities.

3-71. Access to the military command post should be as unrestricted as possible, consistent with force protection posture. Civilian officials and news media require frequent access. If space permits, the staff should designate an area where visitors can observe the command post, coordinate with various staff officers, and obtain reports. If the unit requires a work area for classified information (this seldom occurs), physically separate it from the rest of the tactical operations center and restrict access. Keep in mind that the local, state, and federal agencies all operate on unclassified networks; therefore, reports sent to any civilian agencies must be unclassified.

3-72. In the initial stages of operations, units will deploy and operate their command posts in accordance with their standard operating procedures (SOP). As soon as practical, the commander should adjust the staff functions to align with the incident command system. This realignment will assist other agencies that coordinate with the unit, and save time when processing requests and information. Initially, this can be as simple as placing the appropriate sections together and hanging an ICS functional designation from the ceiling. Commanders should give careful consideration to their intelligence staff section. One option is to consolidate the S2 and S-3 functions under the S-3 as the Operations Section. This can assist the commander in complying with the restrictions on intelligence in domestic environments. (See the Intelligence War fighting Function discussion below, and chapter 8.)

Communications

3-73. Based on studies conducted by the National Communication System and real world incidents (9-11 terrorist attacks, Katrina etc), there is a high probability that commercial wired and wireless communication infrastructure will be highly saturated (90% +) for an indeterminate period. This is due to several factors such as a higher than normal percentage of usage due to first responders, personnel staying home from work or school and personnel attempting to locate information on their loved ones potentially involved in the incident. Depending on the incident, there could also be a large percentage of the commercial communication system degraded or destroyed (i.e. electromagnetic pulse, cell towers being destroyed etc). Power to cell phone towers remain problematic for an extended period due to back up batteries and generators shutting down communication nodes. Units cannot assume that wired (landline phones etc) or wireless communications ("smart phones", cell phones etc) will be functional during an incident and must plan for alternate forms of both communication and power without relying on the commercial communications system. Units should consider bringing additional IRIDIUM telephones (to include dialing instructions, directory, battery charger, and case) to support civilian partner communications needs. Providing satellite telephones (with training) to key civilian leaders can greatly enhance communications and coordination.

3-74. Other communications equipment may be incompatible among various organizations. USARNORTH deployable headquarters have communications systems that are compatible with civilian and military communications systems, as do many National Guard forces. Regular Army and Army reserve forces may have an array of communications capabilities ranging from legacy systems such as mobile subscriber equipment; newly fielded tactical command and control such as command post of the future; or even developmental systems. Initially, DOD units may need to provide communications equipment and network access to civilian responders until the civilian communications grid is restored.

3-75. Upon alert, communications officers verify the communications systems required. They obtain FCC-approved and FEMA-approved frequency lists through their controlling JTF headquarters. If a unit system is incompatible with local emergency systems, and gaining headquarters, the unit should coordinate with the gaining combatant command and DCO for additional capability for its liaison teams. Units plan for expedient communications to include—

- Liaison teams with unit compatible communications deployed to the gaining headquarters and supported incident commander or civilian incident command post.
- Satellite telephones. Satellite telephones such as IRIDIUM can provide voice communications regardless of the state of the local cellular telephone network or power grid.
- Couriers. A soldier with a high mobility vehicle can drive to a command post and deliver messages and orders. If roads are passable, a rental or GSA vehicle is more efficient. A very expensive alternative is a helicopter.
- Additional signal units and capabilities. Communications officers should identify ground radio relay as well as single channel SATCOM requirements to ensure they are included in the force package.
- Use of the internet. Most communications will travel via commercial telephone networks or the internet. Signal planning must include the ability to access commercial internet, commercial telephone, and video teleconference (VTC) networks. With internet access (wireless or landline), virtual private network (VPN) software, and AKO addresses, units can create a C2 network able to handle almost all of their requirements.

3-76. DOD units responding to support civilian responders must be prepared to integrate communication systems with civilian agencies. Commanders should not assume that DOD tactical radio equipment would be able to communicate with civilian equipment based on equipment differences, spectrum requirements and the geography at the incident. Interoperability should include radio bridging devices that can connect varied devices such as tactical radios to cell phones, and sharing data through a common information management plan. Army forces that support civilian responders in the field (i.e. medical, logistics, aviation etc.) must be able to communicate with civilian responders in order to receive instructions and coordinate. When assisting civilian first responders, DOD units will not be responsible for just communicating with other DOD units, but also with supported civilian responders. Available technology will assist in bridging

these capability gaps. For example, Raytheon ACU Radio Bridging Equipment allows DOD tactical equipment to communicate with common civilian radio equipment.

Liaison Officers

3-77. Units deployed in support of disaster need many liaison officers. Commanders plan for additional liaison teams as part of the force package. During relief efforts in Hurricane Katrina, for example, USACE and other engineer units requested and obtained officers from TRADOC and FORSCOM to increase their liaison capability. Depending on connectivity, these officers can be very effective when equipped with a laptop, cell phone, and rental car. However, they will require satellite-based communications to coordinate in incident areas where the cellular communications are not working.

3-78. In addition to unit requirements, the DCO is inside the JFO with a defense coordinating element to provide technical expertise and coordination. When required, the DCO requests augmentation for the DCE from the supported combatant commander. The DCO deploys EPLOs to National Guard headquarters and military installations to serve as liaison between State military and Federal military forces and installations.

3-79. Differences in equipment, capabilities, doctrine, rules for the use of force, and law are some of the interoperability challenges that mandate close cooperation by supporting forces. State National Guard and Federal JTF headquarters should exchange qualified liaison officers at the earliest opportunity. The primary function of the liaison officer is coordination to increase situational understanding. Commanders ensure liaison officers or teams deploy with sufficient communications equipment to permit real-time communication between their respective commanders. Commanders ensure liaison officers are operationally proficient, innovative, tenacious, diplomatic, and have the authority to speak for their parent commander.

Areas of Operations

3-80. National Guard Commanders use areas of operation as a primary control measure in disaster response. Before assigning an area of operations, commanders consider the following:

- Unlike combat operations, assignment of an area of operations does not determine the supported commander. It only delineates the area in which a military unit will concentrate its support to civil authorities. Legal responsibilities remain with the established jurisdictions unless modified by the Governor or the President.
- Commanders should designate areas of operation based upon civilian administrative boundaries such as precincts, municipal boundaries, and county lines whenever possible. Within those boundaries, deployed units should support civil authorities as specified in their mission assignments. Wherever possible, commanders align a specific unit within a civilian jurisdiction. For example, a National Guard rifle company may support a police precinct. Its AO would be the precinct boundaries.
- The JTF-S joint area of operations should coincide with the declared disaster area. The Governor normally requests disaster declarations based on county jurisdictions. FEMA directed support will encompass the same area.

3-81. The Title JTF commander may establish a JOA to aid in control of federal military forces. Title 10 forces do not normally receive an area of operations. They operate in general support of the federal civilian agencies across the disaster area, providing functional support, i.e. distribution of supplies, support to hospitals and shelters, and movement of personnel. An exception may involve an incident occurring on federal lands, when Army units have responsibility for support within a defined area such as a canyon or lake. Another exception involves incorporation of supporting installations within the JOA. The joint force commander may extend the JOA to include supporting military installations.

PROTECTION

3-82. There are many important considerations related to protection. Safety is just as important in civil support as in other elements of full spectrum operations. Composite risk management is one of the processes commanders use to integrate these and other protection considerations. Appendix B provides a

more detailed discussion of safety. Other important considerations include: rules for the use of force; policy and restrictions on weapons; and force health protection.

3-83. Standing rules for the use of force (SRUF) prescribe graduated levels of force used against citizens in a domestic environment, based upon the citizen's behavior and threat posture. They share with the more commonly known rules of engagement (ROE) one fundamental – Soldiers may use lethal force if they are in imminent risk of death or major injury. Beyond that, they differ. Rules of engagement are permissive in nature, and intended to allow commanders to fight enemy combatants and avoid inflicting unnecessary losses on noncombatants. The RUF are restrictive in nature, and intended to restrict lethal and nonlethal force according to the risk. The standing rules of force are contained in CJCSI 3121.01B, which is a classified document available through secure channels. This directive establishes SRUF for all DOD forces providing civil support, and for all routine Military Department functions occurring on U.S. territory and territorial seas. The SRUF also apply to land forces conducting homeland defense missions on U.S. territory. The rules extend to DOD forces, civilians, and contractors performing law enforcement duties at all DOD installations (and off-installation while conducting official DOD security functions), within or outside U.S. territory, unless otherwise directed. The JTF commander may modify the SRUF only by making them more restrictive. See Chapter 7.

3-84. Each state has rules for the use of force and National Guard commanders ensure that all Guardsmen train on them. The RUF vary widely from state to state. While there are many similarities between the joint SRUF and state RUF, there may be key differences between the two. Commanders should always consult their servicing judge advocate to determine the current RUF and the potential effect that the current RUF may have on operations. Each National Guardsmen carries a RUF instruction card and small unit leaders review them before each mission.

3-85. The decision to deploy National Guard troops with weapons in state active duty or Title 32 status remains with the Governor. His or her decision will depend upon requirements for law enforcement, and protect critical infrastructure. Arming posture or arming order conventions may vary from state to state and should be communicated to any National Guard forces deploying from other states.

3-86. The Secretary of Defense alone makes the decision to 1) deploy Federal military forces with weapons; and 2) to direct Federal military forces to carry weapons and ammunition. Should the situation require arming of Federal military forces, the JTF commander will submit a request to arm them through the chain of command to the Secretary of Defense. If approved by the Secretary of Defense, the JTF commander issues necessary orders to subordinate units that require weapons to accomplish their mission. Soldiers authorized to carry weapons also carry ammunition; Soldiers should not carry weapons to create an appearance of capability that they do not actually possess. In general, the decision to arm some or all Federal troops is based upon the threat posed to Soldiers performing disaster response or securing critical infrastructure by criminal elements. When authorized to deploy with weapons, unit commanders establish field arms rooms as prescribed by regulation.

3-87. All Army forces involved in disaster response should monitor the exposure of their Soldiers to environmental contaminants. In a disaster, safety and health hazards are everywhere. Toxic chemicals contaminate structures, water, and soil. Floods often contain enough bacteria from decomposing debris and sewage to infect anyone working near it. Rabies and insect borne diseases become a serious threat. Commanders stress safety and force health protection to their subordinates and demand field discipline from their Soldiers. Leaders and medical personnel continuously check personnel for hot or cold weather injuries, minor trauma, infections, and stress. The supply system needs to push items such as insect repellant, mosquito netting, work gloves, disposable overalls, surgical masks and latex gloves, commercial breathing equipment and filters, and a host of other items. Personal hygiene is as important in civil support as it is in combat. In a flood response, for example, units should have a system to launder every Soldier's uniform and equipment daily, and provide replacement clothing frequently. However, commanders should ensure that they comply with environmental regulations before authorizing field expedient measures for laundry, garbage and waste disposal. Contracted support for portable latrines, laundry facilities, and mess halls become priority issues for commanders. Finally, the chain of command needs to be alert for the effects of fatigue, particularly when Soldiers are operating equipment. The decision to operate around the clock on recovery tasks requires establishment of work/rest policy. All leaders continuously assess the capability of Soldiers to operate safely during around the clock operations.

MOVEMENT AND MANEUVER

3-88. The key considerations for movement and maneuver involve deployment and mobility. Deployment of forces to the disaster area requires flexible planning and effective RSOI. In response to disaster, responding forces deploy using multiple deployment means.

3-89. National Guard forces from within that state normally self deploy using organic transportation, chartered commercial busses, and rental vehicles. Advance parties and liaison teams typically self-deploy from their armories using personal, state-owned, and rental vehicles. In the immediate reaction phase, the armory dispatches military vehicles using individual dispatch procedures if convoy clearance is not required. Larger groups of forces deploy in convoy from their armory or training center, using movement credits coordinated through the State EOC. National Guard aircraft follow pre-coordinated procedures with the FAA to deploy to the incident site. RSOI occurs at the armory or state mobilization center.

3-90. Out of state National Guard units committed under the EMAC and appropriate memorandums of agreement normally move by military and commercial vehicle. If air movement is required, the NGB coordinates with the supported state, supporting state Air National Guard wings, and USTRANSCOM, to initiate airlift using National Guard resources. If supporting forces deploy by air, the supported TAG coordinates for RSOI at the APOD.

3-91. Federal military forces also move by a combination of surface, sea, and air movement. USNORTHCOM planners coordinate with TRANSCOM for air and surface movement to a base support installation (BSI). This is normally the nearest Active component military installation capable of receiving airlift and supporting JRSOI. Within TRANSCOM, The Military Surface Deployment and Distribution Command coordinates movement by vehicle or rail with the deploying and receiving installations, as well as federal and state authorities for movement control. Intratheater (C-130) aircraft will provide most airlift; other personnel and some equipment may move using commercial aircraft. Oversized systems will await strategic airlift or move by ground transportation. The deploying installation transportation office (ITO) uses the same procedures required in intercontinental movement, although more equipment may move by convoy.

3-92. The purpose of maneuver in disaster response is two-fold; restore mobility and concentrate supporting assets at the point of greatest need. Army forces have several capabilities to make them valuable in disaster response. Most tactical vehicles are able to operate in rougher terrain than commercial vehicles. In the aftermath of a disaster, the ability to provide relief to the victims and often depends on the ability of vehicles to move across debris and flooded areas. Army vehicles do both. However, many of the newer wheeled vehicles such as mine-resistant trucks, have heavy armor, and require experienced drivers in order to operate them on and off road, particularly around obstacles. Using high mobility vehicles, Soldiers can deliver supplies, assist in evacuating stranded citizens, and move Soldiers into the area to remove obstacles and assist first responders. Tactical radio communications, mobility, command and control assets designed for austere environments, boots on the ground, and a mission focus make Army units an excellent complement to first responders.

SUSTAINMENT

3-93. Disaster response operations depend upon flexible and effective sustainment. Within the United States sustainment operations benefit from a huge and diversified economic base centered on commercial activity and utilizing unmatched transportation capabilities. This allows for a greatly reduced logistics footprint. However, it also means that logisticians have a completely different set of challenges when sustaining the force. Success depends upon unity of effort with Federal, State, and commercial partners; continuous coordination is critical. Disaster response stresses the logistical system, which needs to respond very rapidly and often in an austere local environment. Sustainment will often require resources from outside the disaster area, since local supply and transportation within the JOA may be dysfunctional. See chapters 8 and 9 for more detail on sustainment.

State Military Forces

3-94. Once deployed, National Guard sustainment unit commanders should do the following:

- National Guard forces coordinate with government agencies and NGOs in the area and determine how the State JTF unit may cooperate with relief operations. They pass this information back through the JTF-S to improve situational awareness across the state. Initially, the civilians may have detailed information on the local situation and needs. In return, the civilian organization may need help with organization and planning. Soldiers may provide immediate assistance with unloading relief items or helping to recover a stuck vehicle. However, National Guard leaders need to politely refuse direct requests for labor and assistance and direct the civilian organization to the appropriate ESF for programmed assistance.
- They use an advance party to coordinate with the gaining headquarters (normally the JTF-S) for a suitable area to establish a support base. Prior to arrival of sustainment forces, they establish the layout in that area.
- They coordinate through higher headquarters to the JTF-S for resupply operations.
- They identify civil authorities needing assistance or coordinating relief efforts, and notify higher headquarters if there appears to be a need for assistance. Assist the civilians with planning if they want the assistance.
- They coordinate with supported military units and civilian organizations to pre-position supplies and construction material at or near the point of planned use or at a designated location. This reduces reaction time and ensures timely support during the initial phases of an operation.
- They comply with military and civilian regulations for the movement of hazardous cargo. Always ask for assistance from military and civilian authorities if leaders are unsure what safeguards need to be enforced.
- They maintain an accurate personnel status, and establish centralized procedures for movement of personnel to and from their home stations.
- National Guard forces may coordinate with DOD for use of federal military installations for bed-down of forces and other support.

Federal Military Forces

3-95. Sustainment instructions for the Federal military forces are transmitted by the gaining command to the Federal military forces alerted for DSCA in an OPORD or FRAGO. In general, sustainment for Federal military forces is coordinated through the theater sustainment command. The Theater Sustainment Command is the principal sustainment Commanders consider the following:

- Units should arrive in the JOA with 72 hours of consumables (principally water and food). The guiding principle is not to add to the sustainment burden on an already overtaxed operational environment.
- One of the most important issues will be capability and requirements for the home installation support to the deployed force, particularly in the initial stages of response. Although USARNORTH will support JRSOI and bulk resupply, in the short-term immediate requests for additional equipment and specialized maintenance may go back to the parent headquarters. Planners determine the transition criteria for support requirements from the home installation to the BSI.
- They comply with military and civilian regulations for the movement of hazardous cargo. Always ask for assistance the when leaders are unsure what safeguards need to be enforced. If the parent installation requires additional information, the gaining combatant command will assist.
- They maintain an accurate personnel status, and establish centralized procedures for movement of personnel to and from their home stations.
- The deployed JTF commander coordinates through the JFLCC and/or the DCO for any additional support and

INTELLIGENCE

3-96. Questions on use of DOD intelligence capabilities during DSCA are complex and subject to different interpretations. USPACOM and USNORTHCOM planning documents and operating procedures provide

specific guidance on intelligence activities. Intelligence officers should analyze each FRAGO carefully for intelligence-related support and identify potential restrictions concerning the employment of ISR during that mission.. If necessary, they consult with the command judge advocate and higher headquarters, particularly regarding the functions of the S-2 and G-2 staff. Related issues may involve the use of tactical intelligence units such as a battlefield surveillance brigade. The command judge advocate provides the commander and intelligence officer legal advice regarding intelligence directives and regulations; restrictions concerning information on non-DOD affiliated persons and organizations; and legally acceptable courses of action.

Incident Awareness and Assessment

3-97. Army forces involved in civil support conduct "Incident Awareness and Assessment" (IAA), which is a distilled version of ISR operations used by forces in combat. Incident awareness and assessment is based on the same concepts as intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) operations. However, incident awareness and assessment addresses only those information requirements permitted by law within a domestic environment. Due to policy issues and a history of intelligence abuses in the 1960s and 1970s, domestic ISR applications do not occur without express permission of the SECDEF. Further, any use of intelligence capabilities for purposes other than traditional use must be expressly approved by the SECDEF.

Note: The only exceptions to the use of intelligence capabilities are those detailed in the CJCS Standing DSCA EXORD, paragraph 4.D.7., in support of IAA through the use of SECDEF pre-approved packages. The only collection of information concerning U.S.-persons, permissible under this EXORD is detailed in paragraph 9.L.2.

3-98. The key to incident assessment and awareness is an informed intelligence professional. If alerted to prepare for a DSCA mission, unit staffs should obtain the governing OPLAN and operating procedures from their gaining combatant command JTF. Before units begin deployment, G-2s and S-2s should clarify all contentious intelligence areas with their higher headquarters. Intelligence personnel must become familiar with the DOD directives and their specific Service regulations concerning all aspects of domestic incident operations.

3-99. Commanders and staffs modify Priority Information Requirements (PIR) during civil support operations. When units are conducting civil support operations PIR consists of Essential Environmental Information Requirements (EEIR) and Friendly Force Information Requirements (FFIR). EEIR includes information about the physical environment, environmental hazards, and infrastructure. FFIR includes information about the status of agencies, units, and installations conducting civil support under direction of state and federal coordinating officers.

3-100. Instead of conducting intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) the staff conducts a modified process called situation assessment. Situation assessment requires the entire staff to continuously analyze the mission variables (METT-TC) as they relate to that civil support mission.

Sensitive Information

3-101. Information on individuals outside the Department of Defense and specific organizations (such as a corporation or faith-based organization) falls within the broad classification of sensitive information. Sensitive Information is any personal information about any individual not affiliated with DOD that is collected, stored, or disseminated during Defense Support of Civil Authorities (DSCA). This includes criminal intelligence on individuals obtained from civilian law enforcement agencies. Sensitive information also includes specific information about any the organization and activities of any US organization (private and public sector) outside the Department of Defense that is collected, stored, or disseminated during DSCA.

3-102. The production, analysis, storage, and distribution of sensitive information require special attention from commanders and intelligence officers at every level. DOD components may collect information concerning the activities of persons and organizations not affiliated with the DOD only as authorized by DODD 5200.27, *Acquisition of Information Concerning Persons and Organizations Not Affiliated with the*

Department of Defense. This directive summarizes public law and Presidential Directives. It carefully limits the types of information that intelligence organizations may collect, process, store, and disseminate about the activities of persons and organizations not affiliated with DOD. It also delineates certain exceptions to the general prohibitions including the acquisition of information essential to protection of DOD functions and property, personnel security, and operations related to civil disturbances. The directive is explicit and commanders and intelligence personnel should refer to it when determining how to handle *any* information concerning civilians and civilian organizations. AR 381-10 provides additional instructions and guidance for all Army intelligence organizations.

Chapter 4

Domestic CBRNE Consequence Management

4-1. Chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear, and high-yield explosives (CBRNE) pose many of the same risks as a major disaster, with the added threat of very high casualties. Consequence management involves the application of many of the same principles used to conduct emergency management in other manmade or natural disasters. However, depending upon the nature of the incident, requirements for medical support, public information, law enforcement, security, specialized equipment and specialized units may be much greater than in any other incident. DOD is not the lead agency for CBRNE consequence management (CM). DOD provides support to civil authorities at the local, tribal, state and Federal levels as required.

CBRNE THREATS

4-2. Weapons of mass destruction (WMD) can cause many casualties without warning. International conflicts, technological advances, information sharing, and commercial spin-offs in the fields of biology, chemistry, and nuclear sciences will increase terrorist opportunities to develop and employ weapons of mass destruction. Potential threats include "dirty bombs," nuclear weapons, biological agents, toxins, refined battlefield chemical agents or the "weapons of convenience" found in many modern industrial materials. Examples of sophisticated or improvised delivery methods may include insect sprayers, envelopes, backpacks and missiles. The Nation's strategic and conventional deterrent may not dissuade terrorists from using WMD, and conventional forces have limitations when committed to CBRNE incidents.

4-3. Public fear, the need to decontaminate infrastructure, and economic losses will protract the effects of CBRNE incidents for months and even years. CBRNE incidents create "worried well"; people who believe that they have been affected by a CBRNE incident. Medical practitioners sometimes will use the non-pejorative term "low risk patients" to label worried well because this acknowledges that these patients may have been exposed, may require some type of medical care (to include future psychological) but do not need immediate treatment. Medical practitioners expect worried well to outnumber actual casualties by a factor of ten times. Actual casualties and the worried-well who "self-present" at hospitals overwhelm facilities and potentially spread contamination. Lacking recognizable injuries, CBRNE victims suffering from blast-induced internal injuries or contamination further complicate response efforts. Although the affected area may be safe to re-occupy, individuals, businesses, and local agencies might relocate, close, or postpone returning to the area.

4-4. The Nation's capability for consequence management continues to evolve. The Defense Against Weapons of Mass Destruction Act of 1996 directed the Secretary of Defense to enhance the capability of the federal government to prevent and respond to terrorist attacks involving WMD. These initiatives led to the establishment of the National Guard Civil Support Teams – Weapons of Mass Destruction (CST-WMD) and various DOD units. Thereafter, a series of Homeland Security Presidential Directives (HSPDs) followed the events of 2001. HSPD-15/NSPD-46, U.S. Strategy for the War on Terror, published March 2006 provides the broad guidance for responding to CBRNE threats The recently published Quadrennial Defense Review of 2010 initiated further changes in the Federal and State military forces identified for consequence management. These steps complement the National Response Framework and improve the "all-hazards" response capability for all agencies and disasters.

NATIONAL PLANNING SCENARIOS

4-5. The Federal Interagency Scenario Working Group developed scenarios to implement Homeland Security Presidential Directive 8 in setting priorities for national planning. The 15 National Planning Scenarios depict a credible range of terrorist attacks, natural disasters, and related impacts. Eleven of the

15 National Planning Scenarios refer to CBRNE incidents. Seven Incident Annexes, including two CBRNE specific annexes (the Biological Incident, and the Nuclear/Radiological Incident annexes) support the Key Scenario Sets (See chapter 2). The Emergency Support Function #10 Annex, "Oil and Hazardous Materials Response", covers response to a chemical incident involving accidents or attacks involving dangerous chemicals. Table 4-1 lists CBRNE-related planning scenarios.

Table 4-1. National planning scenarios related to CBRNE

Scenario #	*Event or incident*
1	Nuclear Detonation – Improvised Nuclear Device
2	Biological Attack – Aerosol Anthrax
3	Biological Disease Outbreak – Pandemic Influenza
4	Biological Attack – Plague
5	Chemical Attack – Blister Agent
6	Chemical Attack – Toxic Industrial Chemicals
7	Chemical Attack – Nerve Agent
8	Chemical Attack – Chlorine Tank Explosion
11	Radiological Dispersal Device
13	Biological Attack – Food Contamination
14	Biological Attack – Foreign Animal Disease

4-6. Hazardous Materials (HAZMAT) and CBRNE preparedness and response follow laws such as the Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation & Liability Act, National Oil and Hazardous Substances Pollution Contingency Plan (NCP), and the Hazardous Waste Operations and Emergency Response. These laws define response authorities for public and private agencies and define hazardous substances, emergency planning and "Community Right to Know." Various laws define response clean-up requirements and provide a billion dollar fund for public and private agencies to respond and recover from hazardous materials incidents. These laws and directives define required protective measures and training for responders within the United States. Responders at every level plan and operate in accordance with these laws. The NCP outlines command structures for national level disasters and defines which federal agencies can appoint On-Scene Coordinators for an incident. The Department of Homeland Security uses the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 472 "Standard for Competence of Responders to Hazardous Materials/Weapons of Mass Destruction Incidents," to establish the qualifications for personnel conducting domestic HAZMAT/WMD response. During domestic CBRNE response operations, these laws subordinate military doctrine and military authority outside of DOD installations while defining command structures within the NRF, NIMS, and the NCP. They also require that when requested, DOD supports civil authorities. DOD is not the lead, unless an incident occurs on a DOD installation

CHEMICAL THREATS

4-7. Military doctrine classifies chemical weapons by their effects – persistent, non-persistent, blister, choking, and blood agents. Non-persistent agents include G-Series nerve agents, often referred to by their military designations, "Sarin" and "Soman". These agents typically volatilize rapidly, immediately affect people, and dissipate quickly. Persistent agents produce casualties through liquid contact and inhalation, and remain potent for many hours. VX is the best-known persistent nerve agent. Because persistent agents dissipate slowly they can shut down entire facilities until they are thoroughly decontaminated. Mustard or H-series chemicals are also persistent agents and create severe skin blistering and lung injuries. Hydrogen cyanide , cyanogen chloride and carbon monoxide are blood agents. Choking agents include phosgene and chlorine. Nerve and blister agents are weapons, while cyanides, chlorine and phosgene are common. A non-persistent weapon such as Sarin, chlorine, or a toxic industrial chemical such as ammonia can produce death and injuries for hours if released indoors or in a densely populated area. A persistent hazard such as VX or a carcinogenic toxic industrial chemical such as benzene cause lethal or adverse health effects for days or weeks. Highly persistent chemical weapons such as mustard gas are stable and can produce casualties for decades.

4-8. Chemical warfare agents require specialized production, handling, and storage. Some agents are unstable and break down if improperly stored. In addition, sophisticated chemical weapons such as thickened nerve agent require "precursor" compounds that law enforcement and intelligence agencies may detect. In contrast, potentially deadly toxic industrial chemicals, also called TICs, exist in large quantities everywhere. Some industrial hazards exceed the lethality and toxicity of WWI chemical weapons. Using commercial activities as a screen, terrorists might use a toxic industrial chemical as a weapon of convenience. In Iraq, insurgents have used chlorine and other as terror weapons; the same could happen here.

4-9. Most Army units are not equipped to detect or protect against toxic industrial chemicals although they may have protective capabilities that exceed those of some local police and civilian organizations. First responders and commercial responders, augmented by National Guard units, deal with the immediate hazards presented by chemical attack or accident. Most chemical hazards degrade in hours or days, and responders hasten the process by a variety of decontaminants. However, working around lethal chemicals requires training and protective equipment, including decontamination capabilities.

4-10. Two events illustrate the panic, loss of lives, economic disruption, and political impact of chemical incidents. In India in 1985, at an American subsidiary plant belonging to Union Carbide inadvertently released methyl isocyanate, a heavy gas. Design failures and negligent operation created a catastrophe. More than 10,000 people in the Bhopal region died and thousands more were injured. In 1995 the Aum Shin Riko cult placed small Sarin containers in several Tokyo subway trains. This terrorist attack killed 12 and injured thousands. Had the cult employed weapons-grade Sarin, the loss of life would have been much greater. Both incidents resulted in hundreds of millions of dollars spent in response, litigation, economic loss, legislation and large international impacts. Panic in both incidents overwhelmed facilities and contributed to even greater loss of life.

4-11. Local, state, and Federal responders with National Guard augmentation as required, handle most domestic chemical incidents. These organizations organize, train, and equip to respond to CBRNE incidents and mitigate the consequences. Identification of the hazard, isolation of the affected area (including evacuation), and rapid decontamination of victims and responders are essential to immediate response. First responders and hospital personnel handle the majority of these situations. A larger incident requires additional resources. The EPA and USCG provide command and control and significant capabilities in accordance with ESF #10, *Oil and Hazardous Materials Response*. For incidents beyond minor industrial accidents, the state emergency manager and state DOMS may commit a National Guard CST. A persistent hazard requires repeated decontamination of personnel and equipment for an indefinite period of time. A responding civil authority may request and receive additional National Guard capabilities such as the CERFP. A catastrophic incident may trigger requests for DOD support such as the CCMRF and follow on forces to transport, secure, sustain, and decontaminate for a protracted period of time. The DOD has contingency plans to manage any accident involving stored chemical weapons or incidents at chemical weapons disposal sites.

The Graniteville Derailment

On 6 January 2005, near Graniteville, South Carolina, a train moving chlorine gas derailed and killed 8 people, injured dozens, and sickened hundreds. Over 5000 people evacuated from their homes for nearly two weeks. The early morning accident released approximately 90 tons of chlorine, a deadly toxic industrial chemical.. Chlorine attacks the soft tissues of the lungs, leading to death from a form of drowning. Chlorine is also corrosive; exposed metals, cell phones, computers, machinery and other equipment in the area were damaged or destroyed. Long term corrosion also damaged metal roofs, nails, and other materials around the crash site. The wreck suspended business, and affected all traffic and civilian life throughout the area for days. In addition to lost lives, the derailment resulted in significant litigation and immediate and long term economic losses for the area.

BIOLOGICAL WEAPONS

4-12. Of all the CBRNE components, biological weapons pose the greatest potential threat to United States. Biological attacks can have major impact. Current threat estimates focus on biological attacks because of the potential for terrorists to produce biological weapons in secrecy and with limited resources. Hostile regimes could exploit biological research and technologies to develop or refine biological agents with the potential to disrupt the economy and cause mass casualties. Biological agents are lethal in tiny quantities and have a small manufacturing footprint compared to other CBRNE agents. The delivery of a biological agent often leaves no signature. An attacker may spread biological agents by mail, insects, a pathogen-soaked cloth, or food. Feedlots, food stockpiles, and the public are targets for biological terrorism. Hidden biological hazards can disrupt a population for weeks. Distinguishing between a manmade or natural biological incident may be difficult or impossible. Although biological weapons are a significant threat to homeland security, naturally occurring diseases currently continue to pose the greatest threat. For example, ricin and anthrax attacks have killed relatively small numbers; West Nile Virus and influenza kill tens of thousands.

4-13. Biological weapons come in two types: pathogens and toxins. Pathogens are alive; they reproduce and spread to other organisms. Tularemia, anthrax, and smallpox are pathogens that can be used in biological weapons. Toxins are complex poisons produced by an animal, plant, or microbe. They may be incredibly toxic but do not reproduce. Ricin and Botulinum toxin are examples of biological toxins. Though deadly, biological weapons are not perfect. The risk to the individuals creating the weapon, immense laboratory requirements, and natural degradation of the agent(s) are just a few limitations.

Anthrax Attack

Anthrax is a deadly and hardy pathogen; ideally suited for a biological weapon. In September 2001, a deranged individual mailed a small amount of anthrax to media and government targets. The disease killed 5 and infected dozens of people. The anthrax spores spread throughout buildings, mail handling systems and across other mail. The attack closed government buildings, shut down mail distribution, and resulted in thousands of “false” and malicious white powder incidents across the nation. Thousands of congressional staffers, media personnel, responders, and postal workers received antibiotics as a precaution against exposure. Thousands of “worried well” also demanded antibiotics while thousands more purchased protective masks. Efforts in New York, Connecticut, the District of Columbia, and Florida reflect the strength of private, local, state, federal and DOD agencies working under the Incident Command System to resolve a significant hazard. The 44th Civil Support Team in Florida worked with the EPA, USCG, contractors and local government to respond to anthrax in a contaminated building in Boca Raton, FL. In the District of Columbia, the Marine CBIRF, EPA, and Coast Guard worked to identify anthrax in the Hart Senate Building.

NUCLEAR AND RADIOLOGICAL THREATS

4-14. Nuclear weapons are the most destructive weapons in existence. These weapons require extensive resources to develop and safeguard. Terrorists are unlikely to build their own, but could acquire a nuclear

weapon from a rogue entity. If a nuclear device were to explode in an urban area, casualties could exceed 100,000 with massive destruction and widespread contamination. The immense destructive effects of nuclear weapons makes them the most dangerous CBRNE threat; but practical challenges in acquiring nuclear weapons suggests that they are the least likely CBRNE threat to materialize. Nations that have embarked on major programs have had difficulty producing nuclear weapons, especially weapons that are easily transportable. Finally, the use or threat of use of nuclear weapons risks massive US retaliation against both the perpetrators and their partners.

4-15. A radiological dispersal device (RDD) threat is very similar to that of a chemical weapon, but the threat is from radiation. Often called "dirty bombs," RDD's require less technology than nuclear weapons but are also far less destructive. Instead of a nuclear explosion, RDD's uses conventional explosives to spread a radiological contaminant such as cesium. While less lethal, even a low-grade RDD presents the ability to terrorize a population, requires significant clean-up, and denies use of an area for a prolonged period.

4-16. Accidents involving radioactive materials can occur, although the probability is lower than other threats. US authorities plan for accidents involving nuclear reactors. The most publicized incident occurred in Pennsylvania at the Three Mile Island reactor. Operator mistakes turned a small problem into a near disaster. Fortunately, the containment system worked and only small amounts of radiation leaked. Lessons learned from the incident have helped to improve response and coordination at every level. The Nuclear Regulatory Commission oversees the operation of all civilian reactors. The DOD, DOE and EPA also have contingency plans to manage any accident involving an American nuclear weapon or nuclear propulsion plants. Like other CBRNE incidents, the threat of contamination can create panic far beyond the actual affected area.

4-17. The Post-Katrina Emergency Management Reform Act (PKEMRA) of 2006 and the National Response Framework designates DHS - FEMA as the coordinating agency for a nuclear or radiological incident. FEMA coordinates the Federal response (including responding to nuclear or radiological incidents) in support of State, local and tribal authorities. During the response, FEMA utilizes the Stafford Act to obtain and apply unique assets from across the Federal Interagency (including those from DOE, DOE, and EPA) to assist State, local, and tribal responders to prevent, protect against, respond to, recover from and mitigate all-hazards.

4-18. The Department of Energy provides vital support to the Federal response. DOE capabilities include response teams, radiological isotope identification, response assets deployed across 8 DOE regions, and watch centers staffed with subject matter experts. In accordance with the NRF, the Interagency Modeling and Atmospheric Advisory Center (IMAAC) provides the single Federal hazard prediction model for domestic nuclear events. Based on computer-generated models, planners can determine staging areas, evaluate lines of communications, and predict the spread of contamination. Other supporting civilian agencies and DOD capabilities provide downwind contamination monitoring, decontamination support, transportation, water purification, security around impacted areas, and support to the Emergency Support Functions.

Chernobyl

The April 1986 Chernobyl disaster remains the worst nuclear accident in history. A reactor explosion and fire spewed radioactive fallout across the Soviet Union, Western Europe, and parts of North America. It contaminated huge areas of Russia, Belarus, and Ukraine. The International Atomic Energy Agency estimates that 56 people died and hundreds of thousands suffered exposure to high doses of radioactivity. The area around Chernobyl remains uninhabitable today. The response, on-going medical care, and environmental monitoring costs totaled billions of dollars. Foreign criticism and a clumsy Soviet cover up undermined internal support for the communist regime. Russian military and civilian responders prevented an even greater catastrophe through their unparalleled courage; many knowingly sacrificed their lives to save others and contain the radioactivity.

HIGH YIELD EXPLOSIVES

4-19. Explosives remain the prevalent CBRNE killer, nationally and internationally. Terrorists have employed them against individuals, businesses, and government offices within the United States for decades. The deaths, injuries, long-term health effects, and economic effects of terrorist explosive scar the collective memory of Americans. Although increased restrictions on CBRNE hazards and precursors are in place, information regarding explosives is easily accessible. Soldiers and civilian response agencies may face fertilizer bombs and other homemade explosives (HME), along with improvised explosive devices (IED). The first blast is not the only casualty producer. Collapsed structures near the target area also create challenges for responders.

4-20. Both the Oklahoma City and World Trade Center attacks destroyed large buildings. Dealing with a collapsed structure requires trained search and rescue teams. A catastrophic collapse may create additional hazards such as asbestos exposure, which can cause long-term health problems and endless litigation. Collapsed structures may require decontamination. FEMA Search and Rescue (SAR) teams, augmented as required by trained military search and extraction teams, are essential to collapsed structure rescue operations. The Governor and President may commit specialized military units from the Reserve and Active components to augment civilian resources. Unlike certain civilian organizations, CERFP and CBIRF search and extraction personnel are capable of operating in a contaminated environment.

4-21. Police bomb squads typically respond with fire and emergency medical service to bomb threats and incidents. Military EOD units have long provided civil support to events like the Oklahoma City bombing, the World Trade Center attack, and other explosives incidents, and often work with the FBI's Explosives Unit. In situations involving both explosives and chemical hazards, the National Guard provides CSTs as directed to complement the capabilities of first responders.

Deadly Industrial Accident

On 16 April 1947, the SS Grandcamp, a cargo ship carrying 2,300 tons of ammonium nitrate fertilizer, exploded at the Texas City port. The subsequent internal fire led to the detonation of the cargo creating a 15- foot tidal wave and sending debris for miles. Secondary fires destroyed tons of crude oil, and spread to a nearby ship, the High Flyer. It also exploded with 961 additional tons of ammonium nitrate. Five hundred and eighty-one persons died in the explosions and thousands more were injured. Over 600 vehicles, tons of crude oil, a chemical factory, and over 500 homes were destroyed by blasts that shattered windows 40 miles away. The Texas City disaster remains America's largest industrial accident.

CIVILIAN RESPONSE TO CBRNE INCIDENTS

4-22. Any incident involving CBRNE requires numerous specialized assets and equipment. Much of the nation's capacity for responding to these events resides with the DOE, EPA, Coast Guard, private industry, and local hazmat teams. First responders, together with State and Federal agencies, augmented as required by military capabilities, manage HAZMAT incidents. Local responders such as the fire department move to the incident site quickly, and assume incident command. If the incident requires resources beyond the municipality's, nearby cities, state, and private resources begin to assist. When local, tribal, and State authorities require Federal assistance for a CBRNE incident, the NRF identifies primary or coordinating

Federal agencies that take the lead in coordinating the Federal response, depending upon the nature of the incident. Concurrent to a CBRNE incident, the Department of Justice conducts investigations with the FBI's Hazardous Materials Response Unit or Explosives Units. CBRNE hazards and multiple events can quickly overwhelm the operating capabilities and capacities of law enforcement, fire, emergency medical services, and hospitals.

4-23. One of the most difficult and potentially dangerous challenges facing immediate responders is that of determining the nature of the hazard they face. They are familiar with accidents and hazardous spills. Most, however, have never experienced a CBRNE attack. Initial reports are often late or wrong as agencies try to gain situational awareness. In the immediate aftermath of an incident, responders may rush to rescue victims and unwittingly spread contamination beyond the incident site. Obtaining an accurate assessment of requirements is compounded by the sudden nature of a CBRNE incident. Like the Texas City event or Oklahoma City bombing, the emergency occurs without warning or even rational explanation. In the immediate aftermath, victims, witnesses and relatives deluge emergency responders with reports and requests for help. Faced with the threat of secondary devices and rapidly changing situations, first responders might not have the time or ability to assess a developing CBRNE incident. Defining external resource requirements and enacting mutual aid agreements with adjacent cities during a CBRNE incident becomes challenging. Obtaining and disseminating accurate information is essential.

NATIONAL GUARD CBRNE RESPONSE

4-24. The National Guard CBRNE consequence management response capabilities consist of a Civil Support Team (also called CST-WMD), CBRNE Enhanced Response Force Package (CERFP), Nation Guard Response Force (NGRF), state Joint Force Headquarters-State (JFHQ-S), National Guard JTF (NG-JTF) and the National Guard Joint Enabling Team (JET). These forces may work together, support other agencies, or remain separated across a large area. Geography, type of CBRNE hazards, number of response agencies and size of the incident with determine the employment of these forces. The CST's were created specifically for domestic CBRNE operations by congressional law and Presidential Decision Directive 62. The domestic nature and legal constructs of the CST make it a unique structure within DOD.

ADDITIONAL NATIONAL GUARD CBRNE RESOURCES

4-25. The National Guard Response Force (NGRF) is a rapid-response general-purpose force available to each state. Although not a specialized CBRNE element, it can provide incident site security. An NGRF can deploy independently or as a headquarters that can assume control of CST and CERFP elements deployed to the incident.

4-26. JFHQ-State Response and State JTF. The JFHQ-State provides consequence management command and control for Army and Air National Guard forces within a state. The JFHQ can serve as a command and control element for single or multiple CSTs, CERFPs, the NGRFs and other intra- or interstate Guard forces during a natural disaster or CBRNE event. For additional communications, the JFHQ employs the Joint Incident Site Communications Capability (JISCC) secure communications system to augment or replace civilian communications. Based on forces available and geography, states often employ a subordinate JTF-State for CBRNE consequence management command and control. Most states either have a pre-coordinated JTF, or a designated unit headquarters identified for immediate activation to provide additional command and control of CERFP's, CST's, EOD, medical, JISCC, CBRNE and other units during a CBRNE incident.

4-27. Joint Enabling Teams (JET) alert and deploy when directed by the National Guard Bureau, based upon the Bureau's assessment. JET teams have internal communications, provide situational awareness to the National Guard Bureau staff, provide subject matter expertise support and facilitate EMAC-related requests for additional forces. Table 4-2 below summarizes National Guard capabilities.

Table 4-2. National Guard CBRNE response capabilities

Unit	Approx size	Capabilities	Availability	Limitations
Weapons of Mass	22 full-time NG personnel	Rapidly identify CBRNE agents	Deploy to a WMD, HAZMAT or natural	Cannot be deployed outside

Unit	Approx size	Capabilities	Availability	Limitations
Destruction Civil Support Team (WMD-CST)	57 teams, one in every state (California, New York and Florida have 2 teams) and territory (District of Columbia, Guam, Puerto Rico, and the Virgin Islands)	Assess current and projected consequences Advise on response measures Assist with requests for additional support Analytical Laboratory System Unified Command Suite –incident communications systems	disaster incident within 90 minutes of notification Deploy across state boundaries based on a verbal agreement between the affected governors. CSTs routinely respond together in support of large incidents. Up 22 CST's have been deployed in support of a response	the United States or its territories while in Title 32 status
CERFP	200 Personnel	Casualty SAR Decontamination Emergency Medical care	Within 6-48 hours 17 CERFP's At least one CERFP in each FEMA region	8-12 hour sustained capability in contaminated environment
HRF (paragraph 4-29)	600 Personnel	Specific capabilities under development but will include: -Assessment -Search/Rescue - Decon - Medical -Security -Logistic Support -C2	One per FEMA region Self-deploying, primarily by road, within 24-36 hours.	Newly formed or forming;
National Guard JTF (Division HQ plus task organized Brigades and Battalions with attached CBRN units	12,500-25,000 personnel	Force Protection Aviation support Mass Decon Communication Medical support Engineer support GP tasks	First elements within 24-72 hours 2 NG-JTF available (Division East and Division West)	Larger elements require significant transportation assets

PLANNED NATIONAL GUARD CBRNE FORCES

4-28. During the Quadrennial Defense Review, DOD and the National Guard Bureau conducted a comprehensive review of military consequence management capabilities and identified gaps at the regional

and national levels. The Homeland Response Force (HRF) is a new force. It is a consequence management force organized from existing CERFP and WMD-CST capabilities and reinforced by various National Guard CBRNE-capable forces located within that FEMA region. When fully manned and designated each FEMA region will have one HRF that can deploy by road to a CBRNE incident within 24 hours to provide additional consequence management capability to the incident commander.

DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE CBRNE RESPONSE

4-29. A terrorist CBRNE attack may overwhelm a single state's consequence management capabilities, and immediate help under EMAC may not be accessible. Federal military forces will respond, possibly involving significant forces from DOD which may include federalized National Guard forces. Defense support may range from small, highly qualified teams, through correspondingly large forces, each capable of responding to a larger incident. These elements might work directly for a DCO during a smaller incident or under ARNORTH or US NORTHCOM element during a larger response.

4-30. DOD supports civil authorities during a CBRNE incident with a full range of capabilities. Several organizations have the training and equipment for this mission. Forces from the National Guard include WMD-CST, CERFP Explosive Ordnance Disposal (EOD) teams routinely practice their roles in consequence management in conjunction with USNORTHCOM. Federal and State military forces also work very closely during National Special Security Events (NSSE) such as the Olympics or national political conventions.

4-31. For any serious incidents, DOD may commit Joint Task Force Civil Support (JTF-CS), a specialized standing JTF assigned to NORTHCOM, the CBRNE Consequence Management Response Force (CCMRF). Highly trained and specialized CBRNE units such as Technical Escort Units (TEU) and Defense Threat Reduction Agency (DTRA) teams may augment the DOD response. In large CBRNE incidents, DOD installations serve as staging areas for resources and agencies. Federal military agencies will also play a key supporting role. During anthrax responses in 2001 and 2002 for example, DOD laboratories, resources, and personnel played critical response roles that helped mitigate incident impacts and costs to the public. As in other disasters, a large CBRNE event will require military forces to provide security and essential services. Food distribution points as well as the National Pharmaceutical Stockpile or inoculation sites will require security measures during a pandemic influenza or following a CBRNE incident. Water supply, trash collection, medical screening, and augmentation of local government might be required support missions during an incident recovery. All are possible requests for assistance to DOD.

4-32. As the JFLCC, USARNORTH may deploy one or both contingency command posts configured as a JTF. USNORTHCOM has deployable headquarters capable of commanding large contingents of DOD forces. Based upon the initial situation reports from the DCO, the USNORTHCOM commander alerts USARNORTH of a potential CBRNE response requirement. Joint assessment and liaison teams from USNORTHCOM, USARNORTH, and JTF-CS deploy as directed to the affected state EOC and regional DCO. These teams augment the DCE and assist the EPLOs, allowing those elements to focus on supporting their state and federal agencies while the USNORTHCOM liaison elements determine potential employment options of Federal military forces. Based on the situation, the DCO recommends that the USNORTHCOM Commander alert and deploy some or all of the CCMRF. The Secretary of Defense approves the USNORTHCOM commander's request for CCMRF capabilities. USARNORTH normally deploys JTF-CS to provide command and control of CBRNE response units under its operational control. In the case of an immediate Presidential decision, the Secretary of Defense directs deployment of USNORTHCOM to deploy and employ the CCMRF.

4-33. JTF-CS is a standing joint task force staffed and equipped for joint CBRNE consequence management command and control. It exercises OPCON of CCMRF units and other forces during a major domestic CBRNE incident. When deployed, JTF-CS deploys to the supported JFO and coordinates DOD support response efforts with the incident command staff and National Guard forces. Joint Task Force Civil Support trains for and specializes in CBRNE consequence management, but is prepared to respond to all hazards. JTF 51 and JTF 52, (USARNORTH contingency command posts) train specifically for all hazards, and typically receive joint-service augmentation during an incident. In the event of a catastrophic incident, one of the USARNORTH deployable command posts may become the land component Joint Force Land

Component Commander's forward command post, and assume OPCON of JTF-CS and other Federal military forces.

4-34. The current CCMRF is a multi-brigade force made up of Army, Marine, and Air Force units that provides federal military assistance to a primary agency in a domestic CBRNE incident. The CCMRF normally deploys with its units task-organized into three subordinate commands; TF Operations, TF Medical and TF Aviation. These forces bring security, mortuary affairs, transport, medical treatment, logistics and many other resources to an incident site. The Marine Chemical Biological Incident Response Force (CBIRF) is the largest mission-specific CBRNE element within the CCMRF. The CBIRF provides SAR, decontamination, detection, analytical, EOD and medical support. Additional Army CBRNE (Chemical) units provide decontamination, detection and reconnaissance capabilities. Army units provide most of the logistical and aviation support. The Air Force provides specialized engineering capability and medical treatment facilities. Refer to Appendix E (CCMRF) for details on the CCMRF.

4-35. The composition of the CCMRF varies according to the Army Force Generation (ARFORGEN) cycle. The Department of Defense identifies units for the CCMRF through US Joint Forces Command (USJFCOM) and the National Guard Bureau based on requirements and force readiness. The force consists of a mix of active component, reserve, and National Guard Forces. National Guard forces committed to the CCMRF remain under state control until USNORTHCOM requires the CCMRF, at which time the President mobilizes and federalizes them. Each CCRMF task force is subject to a CBRNE Response Posture Level (CRPL) with "prepare to deploy" timelines determined by the Commander, USNORTHCOM and the Secretary of Defense.

4-36. Within USPACOM, the Joint Task Force Homeland Defense (JTF-HD) has a domestic CBRNE consequence management mission. Although it may require augmentation from a Joint Manning Document, many of the JTF capabilities, subject matter experts and resources are already within US Army Pacific (USARPAC). JTF-HD works with state, territorial, and military organizations to ensure response across a large domestic AOR. Because of the vast geographical distances within the Pacific, each territory and base has plans to respond to a variety of threats with forces in place, since any external forces will have to come by air or sealift. The USPACOM consequence management plan includes flexible task organizations of multiple services, components, and capabilities to include the WMD-CSTs, CERFP's, Federal Fire Departments, Army EOD, Navy EOD, and active component chemical companies.

ADDITIONAL DOD CBRNE ASSETS

4-37. Explosive Ordnance Disposal teams and Technical Escort teams from the 20th Support Command (CBRNE), respond to CBRNE incidents in support of a Combatant Commander. If requested, they respond to USNORTHCOM and USPACOM for specialized domestic CBRNE support. Typical requests include dealing with unknown explosive hazards, support to federal installations, movement of munitions, and disposal of unusual unexploded ordnance. The 20th Support Command has CBRNE Response Teams (CRTs) that provide both EOD and CBRN capability if required. These units frequently deploy for National Special Security Events (NSSE). The CRTs deploy with mission specific sustainment capabilities, but required life support assistance from the supported CCDR.

4-38. The USMC maintains specialized units for dealing with biological threats and chemical weapons. This organization, the Marine Chemical Biological Incident Response Force (CBIRF), includes decontamination, medical evacuation and treatment, and field detection capability for many hazards. All personnel in the basic package have approved HAZMAT protective equipment. The CBIRF may deploy as reinforcement to either Federal or State military CBRNE forces.

4-39. The Defense Threat Reduction Agency (DTRA) specializes in analysis of WMD and disposal of WMD. This agency has a variety of specialized capabilities which deploy as teams to deal with CBRN weapons. During a CBRNE incident these teams may support to both Federal and State military forces.

Table 4-3. DOD CBRNE response capabilities

Unit	Approx size	Capabilities	Availability	Limitations
CCMRF (JTF-CS plus	5000 personnel (composition	CBRNE assessment,	DOD Contingency	Proximity Deployment

Unit	Approx size	Capabilities	Availability	Limitations
Regular Army, Air Force, Marine units and mobilized National Guard forces)	varies depending upon ARFORGEN alignment)	Medevac and medical treatment Some Rescue Incident support All terrain mobility Rotary wing air support Infrastructure Protection Advanced Command and control Flexible task organizations	force, o/o Secretary of Defense; requires air & ground movement; deployment begins within hours	times vary with proximity and available lift Subject to higher priority missions (Federal military elements)
CBIRF (USMC)	200 Marines	CBRNE casualty assessment, Medevac and medical treatment Area decontamination Limited SAR Incident support All terrain mobility Infrastructure Protection Rotary wing aviation Flexible task organizations; can expand into a large TF	24 hours, depending on tactical airlift	72 hours sustainment; may not be available if committed to the CCMRF
USAMRIID	Variable	Lab analysis and determination of infectious diseases	24 hours, depending deployment means	May requires sustainment and security;
US NORTHCOM JTFs	Various command posts each with approx 150 - 250 personnel	Rapid deploying command and control with military and civilian communications; Command and control of TF through Division sized forces; may become a JTF with	First elements of the command post within 4 hours; contingency command post within 12 – 24 hours depending on movement means. Main CP allows reach back anywhere	contingency command posts may require unit liaison teams to augment tactical communications die to wartime C2 systems within subordinate units.

Unit	Approx size	Capabilities	Availability	Limitations
		augmentation; may function as the JFLCC forward CP controlling other DOD forces.	within DOD	
Defense CBRN Response Force (DCRF) See Paragraph 4-41	5,500 personnel, expansible to 20,000 or more	Sophisticated Joint C2 Medium and heavy lift helos Logistical support Medical support including surgical and hospital units CBRN Recon and Decon Search and Extraction Security Construction engineering Intended for operations alongside HRF.	Initial force package alert and deployment within 24 hours. Full deployment within 72 hours.	Under development. Full capability and training levels assume longer “dwell” for units between combat deployments
Regular Army divisions	Typically two or more brigade combat teams with various modular support brigades 10,000-25,000 personnel	Intra-theater deployment using air, rail, and vehicular movement. Advanced C2 capabilities and highly trained commanders and staffs with robust sustainment. Flexible tactical employment Units have CBRNE defensive equipment, and can provide their own life support	Alert and prepared for initial deployment within 18-24 hours. Endurance is essentially unlimited, because these are professional Soldiers.	CBRN training and equipment designed for combat. Training is focused on combat operations, and knowledge of DSCA may be limited. Deployment requirements may limit availability of trained and ready forces

EVOLVING DOD CAPABILITIES

4-40. Following the 2010 Quadrennial Defense Review, DOD and USNORTHCOM initiated development of the Defense CBRNE Response Force (DCRF), which will replace the CCMRF in FY 2011. This concept builds on experience gained from the CCMRF, while complementing the Homeland Response

Forces (HRF) under development by the National Guard. When fielded, the DCRF will be a joint Federal military force that can be tailored and deployed rapidly to any CBRNE incident site. Compared with the existing CCMRF, the DCRF will deploy more quickly (primarily by strategic airlift), and bring Federal military capabilities urgently required for the initial response, with follow on forces tailored for extended response and transition to recovery. Compared with the CCMRF, this force will have more helicopters, emergency medical capability, CBRN reconnaissance and decontamination, and search and rescue. Follow-on force packages will add capabilities needed to complete the initial response and transition to recovery operations. As required, the DCRF can be reinforced to more than divisional size (20,000 Soldiers, Marines, and Airmen) with general purpose forces and scalable command and control. Concurrently with the DCRF evolution, DOD, NGB, and other agencies will develop a "CBRN enterprise" to integrate capabilities from every level into a unified consequence management effort.

PANDEMICS

4-41. A pandemic is a global disease outbreak. A flu pandemic occurs when a new influenza virus emerges for which people have little or no immunity and for which there is no vaccine. The disease spreads easily person-to-person, produces serious illness, and can sweep across the country and around the world in very short time. The "black death", for example, depopulated large parts of Europe in the 14th century. The great influenza epidemic of 1918-1919 killed 43,000 American Soldiers and millions of civilians in the US and abroad. Even today urgent research continues into its origins. A recurrence could have similar or greater effects today. National Response Framework scenarios and guidelines address pandemic influenza. USARNORTH works closely with HHS and FEMA to plan for defense support of civil authorities (DSCA) in any pandemic event. Estimates state that substantial of the government work force could be sick or absent resulting from the pandemic flu. Military forces stress inoculation of personnel and have plans to augment essential services when crippled by an epidemic. In any major outbreak of disease, public health workers and medical supplies will require security.

4-42. Influenza and other highly infectious viruses pose a continuing risk to humans around the world, particularly when it reaches the pandemic stage. Pandemics have occurred intermittently over centuries. The last three pandemics produced millions of fatalities. Animals are the most likely reservoir for these emerging viruses; avian viruses played a role in the last three influenza pandemics. The 2009 pandemic influenza threat may have originated with domestic pigs, quite possibly in North America. Although the timing is unpredictable, history and science suggest that the United States will face additional pandemics in this century. In a world of rapid movement of people and animals across intercontinental distances, the outbreak of flu as serious as the outbreak of 1918 could produce far more fatalities.

4-43. The word "pandemic" confuses many people, particularly those who immediately equate it with mass casualties. Actually, the designation of pandemic does not relate to the lethality of the disease, but its spread. The World Health Organization categorizes disease outbreaks according to six phases or contagion, followed by three levels of declining threat. Phases 1, 2, and 3 correlate with preparedness, including capacity development and response planning activities, while Phases 4–6 clearly signal the need for response and mitigation efforts. Periods after the first pandemic wave (through phase 6) are elaborated to facilitate post pandemic recovery activities. The World Health Organization pandemic phases are—

- Phases 1 through 3: predominantly animal infections; few human infections.
- Phase 4: sustained human-to-human transmission.
- Phases 5 to 6: widespread human infection.
- Post peak: possibility of recurrent events.
- Post pandemic: disease activity at seasonal levels.

4-44. Viruses remain difficult to combat. Vaccines for a new type of flu may take years to develop and produce, and their effectiveness may vary widely, particularly as the virus continues to evolve rapidly. Generally flu vaccines improve resistance and may help reduce the severity of the infection, but the more novel the virus, the less effective the vaccine.

4-45.

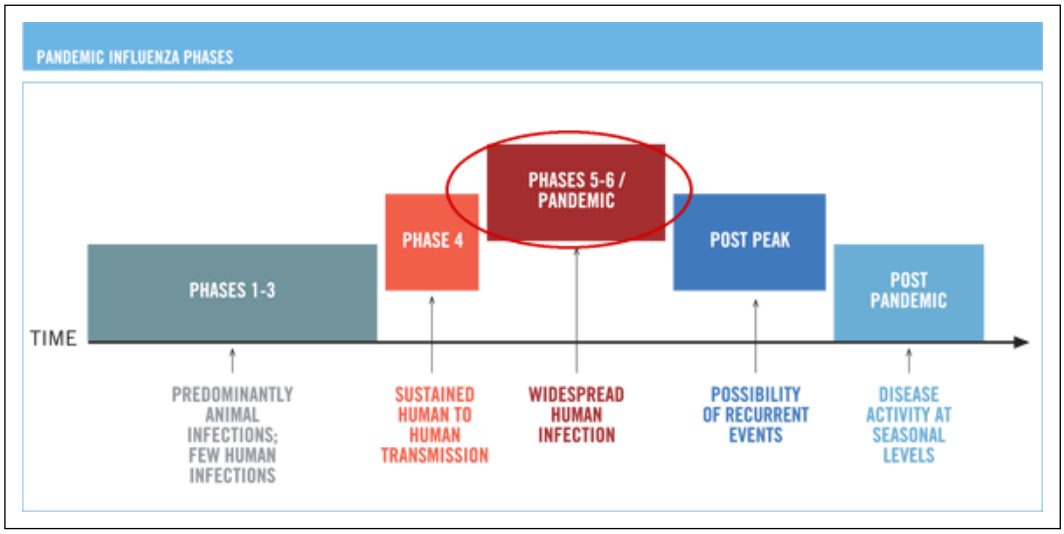


Figure 4-1. World health Organization pandemic influenza phases

4-46. A flu pandemic may cause political, social, economic instability while affecting military readiness. While the flu will infect adversarial forces, it may not degrade their readiness and operational capability in the same manner or at the same time as U.S. and allied forces. The degree to which countries can mitigate morbidity and mortality during the pandemic influenza and reintegrate recovering individuals into society will have considerable impact on military force capabilities. Countries with more advanced and robust health care systems will be better able to mitigate many of the pandemic influenza effects.

4-47. Key security concerns could arise during a period of turmoil caused by a major epidemic. These include opportunistic aggression, opportunities for violent extremists to acquire WMD, reduce partner capacity during and after pandemic influenza, instability resulting from humanitarian disaster, and decreased production and distribution of essential commodities. The prevalence of pandemic influenza coupled with political, social and economic instability may result in reduced security capabilities, providing an opportunity for military aggression and economic collapse, humanitarian crises, and dramatic social change. The potential for pandemic influenza to reduce the number of mission capable forces can place DOD mission accomplishment at risk. Therefore, DOD's objective is to prevent/inhibit or reduce transmission and illness within DOD forces to preserve operational capabilities.

4-48. Degradation of unit readiness (due to the impact of the virus) that causes the unit to be non-mission capable. This could be the result of the lack of a pandemic influenza vaccine, lack of antiviral drugs, lack of personal protective equipment (PPE), and the lack of education on hygiene and social distancing. The flu will not distinguish between Regular military, National Guard and Reserve Component forces and DOD civilian support personnel.

4-49. DOD's ability to prevent/inhibit or reduce transmission or illness, regenerate, recruit, and sustain the force will become critical. This will include timely Force Health Protection (FHP) measures, requirements identification and prioritization, proactive procurement, responsive and tailored logistic support, and continuity of essential services (e.g., electricity, water, telecommunications, etc…).

RESPONSE TO PANDEMIC INFLUENZA AND OTHER INFECTIOUS DISEASES

4-50. The National Response Framework (NRF) provides the overall architecture for pandemic influenza response, but there are marked differences to federal response for other disasters. The Department of Health and Human Services (HHS) is the supported agency for pandemic influenza response. The scope and pace of an influenza pandemic may defy accurate prediction. The disease may appear in many different parts of the Nation almost simultaneously, or disease may occur in only one or a few communities, and if not contained there, proceed to affect other communities. In either case, the Secretary of HHS may have reason to exercise his or her authority under the Public Health Service Act to declare a Public Health Emergency prior to or essentially coincident with activation of the NRF.

4-51. The mission of the Department of Defense in an influenza pandemic is to preserve the U.S. combat capabilities and readiness and to support U.S. government efforts to save lives, reduce human suffering and slow the spread of infection. Military actions before and during a major influenza outbreak focus on three areas: 1) Planning and preparation for a possible outbreak; 2) Maintaining combat readiness; and 2) Support to State and Federal Agencies.

4-52. DOD policy and directives identify and stress the importance of state-level planning and preparation before an outbreak requires military resources. The priority of effort goes to installation readiness and force health protection measures. The installation commander plays a pivotal role by coordinating installation response planning and preparation. In particular, the installation commander ensures that the civilian workforce remains prepared for a possible influenza outbreak. Post agencies develop plans to operate at reduced manning levels by prioritizing missions and ensuring that critical positions have cross-trained replacements. Commanders are responsible for ensuring that their Soldiers receive flu vaccinations regularly. They also work with the installation to ensure that families are prepared for an outbreak.

4-53. If a serious influenza outbreak occurs, it can seriously affect Soldiers and the civilian workforce. Most estimates predict that between 30% and 40% of the unit strength will be affected seriously enough to prevent them reporting for duty (either because they are sick, or family members are ill). Training emphasizes casualty manning requirements for combat; commanders may need to implement their casualty response plans before deployment. Emphasize to junior leaders the importance of having someone ready to step up to replace other members of the team when they are unavailable. If deployment is imminent, coordinate with higher headquarters for individual movement of recovered Soldiers. Most important, hold every leader responsible for basic preventative measures shown to be highly effective at containing influenza:

- Sanitation, particularly constant hand washing;
- Rest and proper diet;
- Isolation of infected Soldiers.
- Commanders should coordinate with their supporting installation medical activity for guidance about anti-viral drugs and other treatment for deploying Soldiers.

4-54. USNORTHCOM and PACOM commanders will control DOD support to Federal authorities within their respective AOR. [Note: Federal military commanders should coordinate carefully with their chain of command to clarify information handling requirements for personal identifying information concerning citizens outside DOD assisted by the military.] Possible missions include military support to:

- Deploy non-countermeasure components of international stockpile and diagnostic reagents to support outbreak investigation, as well as technical and medical assistance
- Rapidly assess conditions and likelihood of international containment or slowing of pandemic spread
- Support international deployment of countermeasures to affected region(s).
- Work with other countries to implement host country pre-departure screening and initiate U.S. en route and arrival screening at U.S. ports of entry.
- Consider travel or routing restrictions from the affected area and for countries that do not have adequate pre-departure screening.
- Implement protocols for cargo handling that allow trade to continue, when possible.
- Implement protocols to manage or divert inbound international flights with suspected cases of pandemic influenza and prepare to limit domestic ports of entry to manage increased demand for screening, as needed.
- Activate domestic quarantine stations and ensure coordination at State, local, and tribal level, especially with health care resources.
- Prepare to provide military bases and installation support to Federal, State, local, and tribal agencies.
- Review domestic pandemic plans and prepare for response, placing critical staff on recall and pre-deploying assets where appropriate.
- Prepare to implement surge plans at Federal medical facilities.
- Activate domestic emergency medical personnel plans.

- Deploy pre-pandemic vaccine to State/tribal entities and to Federal agencies, and initiation of vaccination.
- Limit non-essential passenger travel in affected areas and institute protective measures/social distancing, and support continued delivery of essential goods and services.
- Maintain continuous situational awareness of community needs, triage, and direct Federal support of health and medical systems, infrastructure, and maintenance of civil order as feasible.

4-55. National Guard forces will support their state emergency managers in a similar fashion, with one important addition. National Guard commanders may provide Soldiers and Airmen to reinforce police departments unable to provide full law enforcement support to their communities due to absences from illness.

4-56. Public communication during a pandemic is the responsibility of Federal and State health officials through their joint information centers. As part of their daily preparation for the mission, Soldiers should receive a situation briefing stressing the facts, and including key information that they can pass on to citizens asking for help.

ISOLATION AND QUARANTINE

4-57. A public health emergency may require the implementation of isolation and quarantine measures to protect the public by preventing exposure to infected or potentially infected individuals. A public health emergency may require isolation and quarantine measures to protect the public by preventing exposure to infected or potentially infected individuals. Isolation refers to the separation and the restriction of movement of people who have a specific infectious illness from healthy people to stop the spread of any communicable illness. In most cases, quarantine refers to the separation and restriction of movement of people exposed to an infectious disease. They may not be ill, but pose a risk of spreading the disease inadvertently before they manifest clear symptoms. Isolation and quarantine of civilians are normally voluntary, but in extreme cases may be compulsory.

4-58. Because compulsory isolation or quarantine is a law enforcement function, Soldiers support law enforcement officials only when authorized by the supported civilian agency through the mission assignment process. Although Hollywood movies depict Regular Army troops enforcing quarantine, this would not be the case in an actual health emergency. Federal military forces will not enforce quarantine. National Guard Soldiers will provide the majority of the military support required by their state's officials, and would support compulsory measures only as authorized by their Governor. See Chapter 7, Legal Considerations.

State Authority

4-59. A State's public health authority to enact statutes and issue regulations to compel isolation and quarantine within its borders (intra-state) is derived from the 10th Amendment to the U.S. Constitution and its inherent "police power." As a result of these authorities, States have primary responsibility to enact laws and regulations to promote health, safety, and welfare of its citizens. Consistent with this authority, States may provide for isolation and quarantine restrictions within their borders and conduct these activities in accordance with their respective statutes and regulations.

4-60. The Governor of a state may impose isolation and quarantine restrictions in accordance with their respective statutes and regulations. There is variation among states regarding the issue of compelled isolation and quarantine. In general, a Governor can declare a public health emergency to initiate isolation or quarantine restrictions. Upon discovery of the need for quarantine or isolation by first responders, the request is forwarded through the appropriate state agency to the Governor for approval. The Governor assesses the requirements against the resources, and decides whether additional support must be provided by the National Guard. If required such support is provided in state active duty status, unless the President approves a request for support

Federal Authority

4-61. The Federal government has authority under the Commerce Clause of the Constitution to prevent the spread of disease into the United States (foreign) or from one State to another (interstate). The Department of Health and Human Services is the lead Federal agency for isolation and quarantines. The Director of the Center for Disease Control and Prevention has been delegated the authority from the Secretary of Health and Human Services (SHHS) to determine whether measures taken by health authorities of any State are insufficient to prevent the spread of any "communicable" diseases from such State to another State, and to take such measures to prevent the spread of the disease as he deems reasonably necessary.

4-62. The President may authorize Federal civilian authorities to detain, examine, and isolate individuals that may have dangerous infectious diseases. This includes cholera, diphtheria, infectious tuberculosis, influenza caused by novel or re-emergent influenza viruses, plague, severe acute respiratory syndrome (known as SARS), smallpox, yellow fever, and viral hemorrhagic fevers that require isolation and quarantine. The Secretary of Health and Human Services coordinates support from state and local authorities for the enforcement of federal quarantine regulations. Such assistance may include National Guard forces, but the decision to employ National Guard Soldiers is the Governor's; not the President or Secretary of Defense. The HHS Secretary cooperates with states in the enforcement of their quarantine. At the request of state authorities, HHS may extend temporary assistance to a state in meeting health emergencies. Such assistance may include support provided by Federal military forces as authorized by the Secretary of Defense.

4-63. Upon SECDEF approval, DOD forces may be used to support a State quarantine or isolation only by providing logistical, medical, transportation, communications, and other appropriate disaster assistance support as requested by a primary federal agency under the Stafford Act. This assistance follows the mission assignment process. Unless the President specifically authorizes an exception, DOD forces cannot be used to enforce a quarantine or isolation. (see Chapter 8)

4-64. Because enforcing an isolation or quarantine is a "police power" function, public health officials at the Federal, State, and local level may seek the assistance of their respective law enforcement community. At the federal level, this would be primarily the Department of Justice, Federal Bureau of Investigation, U.S. Marshals Service, Drug Enforcement Administration, and the United States Coast Guard.

AGRICULTURAL DISEASES

4-65. Similar threats exist to plants and animals. An outbreak of Foot and Mouth Disease could cost the livestock industry and the US economy billions of dollars. The loss of a crop due to disease or blight also creates economic impacts and could result in food shortages. For example, the potato famine in Ireland forced millions to emigrate or starve in the 19th century. The outbreak was caused by a fungus. Crops, feedlots, and food transportation networks are all susceptible to biological hazards. Operating in support of civil authorities, DOD forces could play a key role in a response to a biological hazard in the agriculture industry. This is not outside the realm of possibility; for example, European military forces have supported civil authorities in the disposal of infected animal herds.

4-66. In the case of agriculture, quarantine is often mandatory. Unfortunately, this often requires the destruction of entire herds of livestock. The scale of the infection can rapidly overwhelm county and state officials, and the Governor may call up National Guard units to assist with disposal of euthanized animals. Although this has not happened recently in the United States, European military forces assisted officials following large-scale outbreaks of "mad cow" and hoof and mouth infections. The Secretary of Agriculture is authorized to cooperate with foreign countries, States, and other jurisdictions, to prevent, regulate, and eliminate burdens on interstate commerce and foreign commerce. The Secretary of Agriculture may request assistance from DOD in order to protect the agriculture, environment, economy, and health and welfare of the population by preventing, detecting, controlling, and eradicating diseases and pests of animals. When DOD support is requested, it will be provided under the Economy Act. Federal military forces providing assistance will receive specific constraints and restraints on their activities through the mission assignment process.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR CBRNE CONSEQUENCE MANAGMENT

4-67. Actual and suspected CBRNE events have triggered response to a single incident site such as the attack on the Pentagon in 2001; or to multiple sites in different states in response to the anthrax attacks of 2001. Responding military forces included both National Guard and regular military units. For any large incidents, DOD may commit some or all of JTF-CS (standing JTF assigned to NORTHCOM), the CCMRF and other specialized CBRNE units such as technical support forces, and various Defense Threat Reduction Agency (DTRA) teams. In large disasters or CBRNE incidents, DOD installations serve as staging areas for resources and agencies. During anthrax responses in 2001 and 2002 for example, DOD laboratories, resources, and personnel played critical response roles that helped mitigate incident impacts and costs to the public. As in other disasters, a large CBRNE event will require military forces to augment security and essential services.

COMMAND AND CONTROL

4-68. In accordance with the NRF and NIMS, DOD forces will work under a Unified or Single Command with many agencies during response or civil support operations. The incident command team is responsible for controlling the response. The incident command staff develops an Incident Action Plan (IAP), a type of operations order that assigns work tasks. The incident command staff determines safety measures, technical reference, reach-back, personnel protective equipment (PPE), logistics, and other requirements. The incident command staff, together with law enforcement, public health, EPA, DOE and other agencies develops CBRNE-specific mission requirements such as obtaining samples, setting decontamination standards, monitoring exposure levels The most difficult command and control challenge during a CBRNE response effort is maintaining situational awareness at all levels and across all agencies involved. Commanders plan for this by deploying liaison personnel who help the commander to maintain constant communication with both military and civil authorities

4-69. Civil support operations are similar to coalition operations. Working together with multiple agencies usually requires more time to make decisions. Despite the incident command's responsibilities, units must still conduct MDMP, parallel planning, and execute orders within their organizations. Commanders must integrate composite risk management and operational risk management in their planning process to mitigate and manage hazards and ensure force protection when working with civilian agencies. Defense Coordinating Officers and USNORTHCOM Situational Awareness Teams (NSAT) routinely provide LNO's forward. These teams -

- Attend daily incident command planning meetings to anticipate mission requirements;
- Describe to incident command staff DOD capabilities and limitations;
- Describe to the incident commander legal limitations for Federal military and State military forces;
- Provide liaison between other Federal military and 32 forces in the area;
- Secure resources not provided by DOD;
- Clarify or translate civilian work requirements into DOD-related tasks;
- Establish communications links;
- Augment the incident command staff with CBRNE specialists.

4-70. Most command and control systems developed for combat are incompatible with civilian systems unless the military provides specialized connections. Developing situational awareness and building a common operational picture (COP) is critical to effective response. Many state and local agencies use commercial EOC software. State agencies, the National Guard Bureau, and NORTHCOM continually improve "common operational picture" tools that facilitate information sharing at CBRNE and other incident sites.

4-71. Public Affairs and Public Information. Consequence management activities are highly publicized and can place great pressure on leaders. The public information and education efforts are essential to both easing fear and protecting the public during CBRNE incidents. Accurate information regarding the incident and efforts to protect the public should be disseminated to all subordinates as soon as the incident command staff makes it available. To ensure a unified message, public affairs information is coordinated

through the Incident Command staff during civil support operations. Military public affairs personnel can work directly with incident command's Joint Information Center to synchronize efforts.

4-72. Commanders, leaders and Soldiers play a key role in information. The actions of Soldiers on the ground communicate far more powerfully than other media. Those actions must be in accordance with the command's public affairs guidance. Civilians may assume that uniformed personnel know more about the situation than others do. Rumors will be rampant during the initial response. Disruption to civilian broadcasts may limit routine sources of information. Therefore, DOD forces may provide the most updated, factual information to the local populace. Commanders must brief their personnel daily on the public affairs guidance. For example, it is critical that spokespersons only refer to facts when talking with the media and citizens.

PROTECTION

4-73. Conventional battlefield protective and detection systems cannot meet all battlefield and homeland security CBRNE requirements. Commanders must understand the limitations of their equipment and personnel. During a CBRNE incident, the incident command staff determines the level of protective garment required based on the hazard.

4-74. Chemical Protection. Conventional forces are not equipped to detect or protect against toxic industrial chemicals and materials. JLIST suits and protective masks do not meet civilian chemical protection standards or protect against most toxic industrial materials. Battlefield chemical detection systems detect specific battlefield threats. Presently CST's, units under the CCMRF such as the CBIRF (Marine), AFRAT (USAF) and attached CBRN defense units (Army) along with elements of the 20th Support Command have enhanced CBRNE and industrial chemical protection and detection capabilities. These capabilities are being issued to conventional chemical units in the modular brigades.

4-75. Biological Protection. Battlefield protective equipment will protect Soldiers against biological hazards. Most biological detection systems screen for battlefield biological hazards. Current biological detection and analytical equipment require extensive training and laboratory support for confirmative results. CST's possess mobile analytical laboratory systems and train to meet standards required by civilian agencies and laboratory networks. In civil support operations, public health departments and other agencies will handle the majority of biological sampling and identification.

4-76. Nuclear Protection. US forces are equipped to deal with the domestic consequences of a nuclear or radiological event. Battlefield radiological detection equipment and protective gear are suited for civil support operations. Post-blast nuclear and radiological devices present standard exposure levels and decay rates. Conventional radiological detection systems can detect and monitor radioactive materials. However, these systems require training to use properly.

4-77. Decontamination. Battlefield decontamination equipment and measures work well against CBRNE hazards. Sunlight, household disinfectants, and inclement weather also break down some chemical and biological contaminants. Equipped with commercial equipment, the CERFP, CBIRF, and CCMRF units can support the decontamination of mass casualties or responders during large incidents. Commanders and leaders of CBRNE decontamination units coordinate with their headquarters concerning the location and procedures for operating the station. If available, team leaders should consult with civilian experts from DTRA, EPA, and other organizations. In particular, senior commanders need to confirm the proposed location and protection measures at the decontamination site with the unified coordination group to ensure hazardous substances are controlled and eliminated safely.

4-78. Hazard Prediction Models. Hazard prediction modeling programs graphically depict the impacts of CBRNE hazards for commanders and incident commanders. Under the NRF, the Interagency Modeling and Atmospheric Advisory Center (IMACC) employs the National Atmospheric Release Advisory Center, which represents the single hazardous airborne and dispersion prediction model used during a Federal response. In a CBRNE incident, these models can provide information on casualty estimates, contaminated areas, road block locations, local hospitals, airfields and hazards concentrations. This information helps the incident command staff and supporting agencies organize staging areas, define work zones, conduct downwind monitoring, and determine evacuation measures. Units operating near a CBRNE incident site

should obtain prediction models through the incident command for situational awareness and force protection. DTRA, CSTs, and fire departments employ hazard prediction models.

4-79. Protective Equipment. Battlefield protective equipment and civilian personal protective equipment (PPE) terminologies and employment are different. Required protective equipment levels vary throughout a response based on the nature of the hazard, distance from a hazard, weather conditions and work being completed. Flexibility in employing PPE or military protective gear and Soldier safety is a priority. Some CBRNE responses might require light gloves and eyewear rather than a full protective overgarment. Civilian PPE is categorized in terms of PPE Levels A, B, C, and D. Level A is a fully encapsulated vapor protective suit with a Self Contained Breathing Apparatus (SCBA); Level B is a hooded protective suit and SCBA; Level C is a hooded protective suit with a filtered Air Purifying Respirator(APR). Level A, B, and C suits use many types of flexible flash and or chemical protective materials from laminated fabrics and plastics. Level D is a response duty uniform that might include earplugs, gloves, protective footgear and eyewear. Battlefield protective levels do not match civilian PPE levels. Based on the CBRNE hazards, military protective equipment may not be appropriate. The use of level A, B, C, and D PPE requires special training and certification.

4-80. Special attention must be given to heat injury prevention to personnel using PPE. The civilian Incident Commander will normally determine the level of PPE based on the hazard. In a large federal response, the EPA, CDC, DOE, response organizations and the safety officer might contribute to PPE decisions. When the hazard is unknown, Level A PPE is chosen.

MOVEMENT AND MANEUVER

4-81. Staging. The Incident Staging Area is the equivalent of an Intermediate Staging Base. Units move to an Incident Staging Area determined by an incident command staff prior to moving into a CBRNE incident site. The staging area personnel receive the unit's personnel and equipment accountability information and provide details regarding the incident. Before leaving the staging area, a unit receives it mission, safety briefings, and updated information regarding the incident. Debris, contaminated areas, other responding agencies and terrain might delay movement.

4-82. Contaminated areas present a serious hazard to movement near any CBRNE incident. One of the key tasks that Army forces may anticipate is security around the "hot zone". In an urban area this task can be manpower intensive, and requires close coordination with the incident command and UAC to ensure its proper placement, security, and maintenance. Commanders keep in mind that the contaminated area may shift suddenly due to weather or other factors. Army forces directed to move into a contaminated area plan and rehearse prior to executing the mission. Ideally, the unit is CBRNE capable; otherwise, if a unit is responding to an emergency, personnel should follow the unit SOP for movement techniques in a contaminated environment. Some combat systems provide much better protection than other vehicles, particularly against radiation and chemical threats. Stryker Nuclear Biological Chemical Reconnaissance Vehicle (NBCRV) vehicle have overpressure and detection systems and their armor reduces radiation exposure. The M-88 Hercules also has heavy steel armor, and can maneuver in radioactive areas. The armor on these vehicles can attenuate the effects of gamma radiation, and extend the time that rescue or recovery personnel can spend in the hot zone.

4-83. Movement in or near a "hot zone" requires decontamination support. Unless decontamination support is available, commanders should not send Soldiers into or near a contaminated area. Commanders must coordinate with the supporting decontamination element to ensure that they can conduct the necessary detection and decontamination before committing Soldiers.

4-84. Aviation unit commanders must review current instructions for operating in or near a contaminated area. A helicopter is almost impossible to decontaminate completely once exposed to hazardous agents or radiation. Aircraft generally should avoid flying near contaminated areas, if possible. If the mission requires exposing the aircraft and crew to hazardous materials, the aviation unit must establish protective procedures for immediate decontamination, and train the air crew in protective measures.

4-85. Engineering support to a CBRNE Consequence Management is extensive and supports all of the other functions. The key capabilities the engineers provide include:

- Force bed down and marshalling support;

- Emergency route opening (Use of any available means to enable ground emergency movement into and out of the affected area.)
- Engineer site assessment
- Infrastructure repair
- Geospatial Information Support (See Paragraph 8-79)

SUSTAINMENT

4-86. CBRNE Equipment. CBRNE equipment requirements vary depending upon the nature of the incident. CBRNE equipment could be provided by FEMA, ARNORTH, JTF-CS, fire departments, state agencies, military stocks or local purchase. CBRNE units should deploy to an incident site with the ability to sustain themselves for 2 to 3 days, and then submit re-supply requirements through their chains of command.

4-87. National Guard Consequence Management Support Center. The National Guard's CST and CERFP receive CBRNE support from the Consequence Management Support Center (CONSUBCEN). The CONSUBCEN provides CST's and CERFP's full replacement of shelters, light sets, air compressors, CBRNE detection, decontamination, batteries, calibration gases, masks, protective garments, Self-Contained Breathing Apparatus (SCBA) and analytical equipment required to sustain an extended CBRNE response mission. The CONSUBCEN rapidly deploys equipment stocks to an incident site. In extended response, the COMSUBCEN forward deploys personnel and equipment to directly support the CERFP's and CSTs.

4-88. FEMA Sustainment. Prepositioned equipment is supplied to replenish and reconstitute State, local and tribal personnel conducting response operations at an incident site. This equipment includes protective equipment, detection instruments, medical supplies, decontamination equipment, and logistics.

4-89. Military Installations. Some military installations have CBRNE equipment. They may have a fire department with CBRNE response assets. During an emergency, these installations might provide protective equipment, air compressors, fire trucks, decontamination systems, power generation, detection equipment and other resources. Installations also serve as staging areas providing food, shelter, fuel, headquarters facilities and vehicles to responding units.

4-90. Mortuary affairs personnel may support CBRNE incidents. Team leaders should verify procedures for handling remains through higher headquarters and Primary Agency (HHS, DMORT and medical examiner/coroner). Specific procedures on identifying and handling contaminated remains are IAW the existing civilian plans and Joint Publication 4-06 (Mortuary Affairs in Joint Operations) to the controlling National Guard and Federal military JTF.

INTELLIGENCE

4-91. Domestic intelligence remains a sensitive area in civil support. Law enforcement agencies develop and process intelligence regarding a domestic CBRNE event. The majority of intelligence support pertains to on-going terrorist activities and incident investigation. The DOJ, DHS, CIA and other law enforcement agencies provide domestic intelligence on a daily basis. Intelligence on domestic terrorists and criminals comes through law enforcement channels via SIPR and other secure means. The CST's, DCOs, the state level JISCC system, FEMA and other agencies provide mobile SIPR and secure communication to share classified or sensitive information. Environmental and safety information receives the widest possible dissemination. The incident command operations staff provides all unclassified information and analysis on the hazard area to ensure the safety of responders, hospitals, and others impacted by the incident. Intelligence staff members can provide mapping, situational awareness, LNO support, and weather support during a CBRNE response.

4-92. The incident command operations and planning sections handle CBRNE information. A Hazardous Materials Working Group under the operations staff might form in order to fuse CBRNE information and direct operations. The incident command Operations Staff receives CBRNE and HAZMAT survey reports from fire fighters, DOE, DOD, EPA and other agencies responding and monitoring an incident site. This information refines Hazard Prediction Models to develop a common operational picture of the CBRNE

hazard locations and concentrations. The Interagency Model and Atmospheric Advisory Center (IMAAC) provide the contamination prediction model for all Federal responses. Field measurement and reporting confirms or alternatively, modifies the predictive models.

Chapter 5

Support to Civilian Law Enforcement Agencies

This chapter covers general concepts for military support to civilian law enforcement agencies. It summarizes the important laws and policy that govern support. It discusses the types of law enforcement missions that commanders could receive, and provides considerations for the employment of forces, particularly in civil disturbance scenarios.

5-1. State and Federal law carefully limits the support that Army forces may provide to civilian law enforcement. Federal laws, Presidential directives, and DOD policy constrain the use of Federal military forces from enforcing laws and providing security except on military installations. When authorized by the Secretary of Defense, Federal military forces may provide support to law enforcement agencies, but that support is limited to logistical, transportation, and training assistance except in life threatening emergencies. The Governors of the 54 States and Territories can use National Guard forces under state command for civilian law enforcement; however use of National Guard for support to law enforcement is a temporary expedient. State Governors have some flexibility in employing National Guard forces for law enforcement. Chapter 7 provides additional information on the legal considerations for law enforcement support.

> The primary responsibility for protecting life and property and maintaining law and order in the civilian community is vested in the State and local governments. Supplementary responsibility is vested by statute in specific Agencies of the Federal Government other than the Department of Defense. The President has additional powers and responsibilities under the Constitution of the United States to ensure that law and order are maintained.
>
> DODD 3025.12

REVIEW OF MILITARY SUPPORT TO LAW ENFORCEMENT

5-2. Domestic law enforcement missions differ substantially from similar stability tasks associated with civil security and civil control. Except in extreme emergencies, the rights of the citizens take precedence, and military forces supporting law enforcement typically have less authority to enforce the law. When circumstances dictate, the Governor of that state may call up National Guard forces to assist local and state law officers. The National Guard's authority derives from the Governor's responsibility to enforce the laws of that state. Even with that authority, the Governor carefully regulates the amount and nature of the support. The Governor may employ the state National Guard for law enforcement duties and support either in a state active duty status, or in Title 32 status. Federal laws (principally the Posse Comitatus Act) restrict the role in law enforcement of any National Guard in Title 10 status.

5-3. Law enforcement support occurs in two general circumstances; 1) in response to an emergency or 2) in response to a request for support from a law enforcement agency. The more difficult case occurs as part of an emergency. Federal Army forces may support federal, state, and local law enforcement organizations reacting to civil disturbances, conducting border security and counterdrug missions, preparing for anti-terrorism operations and other related support to law enforcement, but such support requires the approval of the Secretary of Defense. Prior to approval, the DOD legal staff normally conducts a comprehensive legal review of the request and advises the SECDEF on their conclusion.

5-4. Upon approval of the Governor, State military forces may support state law enforcement agencies within their respective states and within the limits prescribed by the Governor. National Guard in either a Title 32 status or State Active Duty status from another state operating under EMAC or a memorandum

between the states may only support civilian law enforcement as specified in an MOA approved by both Governors.

THE POSSE COMITATUS ACT

5-5. The Posse Comitatus Act (PCA) is the law restricting the use of the Federal military forces for support of civilian law enforcement. Except as expressly authorized by the Constitution or by another Act of Congress, the Posse Comitatus Act and DOD Directive prohibits the use of the Army, Air Force, and through DOD policy, the Navy and Marine Corps as enforcement officials to execute state or federal law and performing direct law enforcement functions. The Navy and Marine Corps are included in this prohibition as a result of DOD policy articulated in DODD 5525.5. However, the PCA does not apply to National Guard members operating under the authority of the State or pursuant to Title 32 (State military forces). Due to its statutorily based law enforcement functions, the PCA is effectively inapplicable and does not restrict to the US Coast Guard, even when it falls under the operational control of the Navy due to the fact that the Coast Guard has inherent law enforcement powers under Title 14 of the US Code. Commanders should understand that it specifies severe criminal penalties if violated. Chapter 7 provides additional detail on the Posse Comitatus.

5-6. In a disaster, the magnitude to the problem may overwhelm local law enforcement particularly when they are reacting with a disrupted command and control system. National Guard forces support law enforcement when the governor authorizes that state's military command to assume designated law enforcement duties. Federal military forces require special authorization, from the Secretary of Defense, to support civilian law enforcement officials outside of Federal military installations. In extreme cases, the Attorney General, in coordination with the Secretary of Defense, may recommend that the President invoke the Insurrection Act. (See Chapter 7)

> **Unless specifically authorized by law, no military personnel in a Title 10, United States Code (USC), status (Federal military forces) will become involved in direct civilian law enforcement activities, including, but not limited to, search, seizure, arrest, apprehension, stop and frisk, surveillance, pursuit, interrogation, investigation, evidence collection, security functions, traffic or crowd control, or similar activities, except in cases and under circumstances expressly authorized by the President, Constitution, or Act of Congress.**
>
> **JCS DSCA EXORD**

5-7. DODD 5525.5, "Department of Defense Cooperation with Civilian Law Enforcement Officials," provides guidance on the type of assistance that DOD can provide to local authorities when it is primarily for a military purpose and does not violate the PCA. This is known as the "Military Purpose Doctrine." Such support cannot degrade combat readiness or the capacity of DOD to fulfill its primary mission. In general, the less directly related the situation is to civilian law enforcement and the more it supports a military purpose, the less applicable is the PCA. "Military Purpose" actions include:

- Investigations and other actions related to the enforcement to the Uniform Code of Military Justice.
- Investigations and other actions related to the commander's inherent authority to maintain law and order on a military installation or facility.
- Protection of classified military information or equipment.
- Protection of DOD personnel, DOD equipment, and official guests of the DOD.
- Such other actions that are undertaken primarily for a military or foreign affairs purpose.

Emergency Authority

5-8. In an extreme situation, Federal military commanders may commit their forces to uphold the law and protect Federal property. There are only two circumstances for emergency authority allowed by DODD 5525.5:

- The situation demands immediate Federal action, including use of military forces, to prevent loss of life or wanton destruction of property and to restore governmental functioning and public order. This situation occurs because of sudden and unexpected civil disturbances, disaster, or calamities seriously endanger life and property and disrupt normal governmental functions to such an extent that duly constituted local authorities are unable to control the situation.
- The situation requires Federal military forces to protect Federal property and Federal Government functions when the need for protection exists (e.g. an immediate and discernable threat) and duly constituted local authorities are unable or decline to provide adequate protection.

5-9. In either of these situations, Federal military commanders responsible for authorizing action under emergency authority must determine that obtaining prior approval from the President through the chain of command is not feasible. Commanders will continue to use all available means to seek specific authorization from the president through their chain of command while operating under their emergency authority.

Martial Law

5-10. Martial law involves use of the military to exercise police powers; restore and maintain order; ensure essential mechanics of distribution, transportation and communication; and conduct necessary relief measures. In such cases, the ordinary law, as administered by the ordinary courts, is superseded for the time being by the order of a military commander.

> Martial law was first utilized in the United States by General Andrew Jackson in 1814 during the War of 1812. Then during the Civil War, Confederate territory taken by Union forces was governed under martial law. Additionally, the Secretary of War issued an order under President Lincoln's authority suspending the writ of habeas corpus. In other words, individuals were arrested and detained indefinitely by a military commander without trial. After the Civil War, the Supreme Court in the seminal case of Ex Parte Milligan reviewed and declared this martial law invalid. It said when it is extremely necessary to furnish a substitute for civilian government and the only authority left is the military, then martial law exercised by the military was permissible and could be implemented. However, where the civilian courts were open and capable of exercising their law enforcement jurisdiction and trying individuals who violate civil laws, as they were in this case, then martial law can never properly exist. "Public necessity" creates martial law, justifies it, and limits its duration. Other instances of martial law occurred during World War II, when Hawaii's Governor placed the territory under martial law from December 1941 to October 1944, and in 1954 when Alabama's Governor declared martial law in Phenix City, enforced by the Alabama National Guard.

5-11. Only the President may order Federal military forces to impose martial law. DODD 3025.12 states that Federal military commanders shall not take charge of any function of civil government unless absolutely necessary under conditions of extreme emergency. Any commander who is directed, or undertakes, to control such functions shall strictly limit military actions to the emergency needs, and shall facilitate the reestablishment of civil responsibility at the earliest time possible.

5-12. Other officials may be authorized to impose martial law within a particular state under that state's law, but the restraints are similar to the federal level. The state and federal supreme courts may review any imposition of martial law for legality.

TYPES OF SUPPORT TO LAW ENFORCEMENT

5-13. Support to civil law enforcement falls under four general mission areas. Military forces may provide support for counterdrug activities, border security, civil disturbance operations, and support to Homeland Security for protection from terrorism. A fifth, related category, is critical infrastructure protection and is addressed in Chapter 6. The National Guard, under State command and control, is the military force with primary responsibility for support that involves direct law enforcement, e.g. face-to-face contact with offenders.

5-14. Although Federal military forces have limitations on direct enforcement of the laws, DOD provides indirect support to civilian law enforcement on a regular basis. Indirect assistance facilitates the civilian agency's ability to enforce the laws, while maintaining separation from the Soldier and the civilian offenders. DOD policy provides Federal military commanders with guidance on indirect Federal military support to civilian law enforcement agencies. These criteria include:

- Assistance is limited to situations when the use of non-DOD personnel would be unfeasible or impractical from a cost or time perspective and would not otherwise compromise national security or military preparedness concerns.
- Such assistance may not involve DOD personnel in a direct role in law enforcement operation, except as otherwise authorized by law.
- Except as otherwise authorized by law, the performance of such assistance by DOD personnel will be at a location where there is not a reasonable likelihood of a law enforcement confrontation.
- Military departments and defense agencies may provide expert advice to federal, state, or local law enforcement officials in accordance with Title 10, USC. This does not permit regular or direct involvement of military personnel in activities that are fundamentally civilian law enforcement operations, except as otherwise authorized.
- Use of DOD personnel to operate or maintain or to assist in operating or maintaining equipment is limited to situations when the training of non-DOD personnel would be unfeasible or impractical from a cost or time perspective and would not otherwise compromise national security or military preparedness concerns.

COUNTERDRUG SUPPORT

5-15. The Department of Defense supports federal, state, and local law enforcement agencies in their effort to disrupt the transport and/or transfer of illegal drugs into the US. Illicit drug trafficking, smuggling of every sort, and the regional and global movement of terrorists are closely linked by financial, political, and operational ties.

5-16. Countering illegal drugs is a high priority national security and international cooperation mission, with DOD functions and responsibilities based on statutory authority. The Armed Forces of the United States also assist partner nations in their counterdrug efforts.

5-17. The strategic goals of the National Drug Control Strategy (NDCS) are preventing drug use before it starts; intervening and healing those who already use drugs; and disrupting the market for illicit substances. In support of this strategy, Army forces assist law enforcement officials indirectly through loan of equipment (without operators), use of facilities (such as buildings, training areas, or ranges), transfer of excess equipment, and training conducted in military schools.

5-18. Direct support by Federal military forces to counterdrug agencies requires approval by the Secretary of Defense or his designated representative. Three standing joint headquarters support counterdrug law enforcement agencies with the United States. JTF-North supports counterdrug efforts within the USNORTHCOM area of responsibility. JTF West does the same in the PACOM AOR. The Joint Interagency Task Force operates in the USSOUTHCOM AOR. The missions vary widely and may include ground reconnaissance; detection and monitoring; communications support; aerial reconnaissance; marijuana eradication (Note - herbicides prohibited); linguist support; air and ground transportation; intelligence analysis; tunnel detection; engineering support; maintenance support and much more.

5-19. There are 54 state and territory National Guard Counterdrug Support programs, which are governed by NGR 500-2/ANG 10-801. Additionally, there are four National Guard counterdrug School regionally located throughout the United States. The SECDEF, in accordance with Title 32 USC section 112, may provide resources though the Chief, national Guard Bureau (CNGB), to states receiving SECDEF approval of the Governor's State Plans for national Guard Counterdrug Support. The Governor's National Guard Counterdrug Support Plan requires approval from the Governor's state Attorney General and with the approval of state Adjutant General. The SECDEF, (IAW Section 1004, NDAA of 1991, as amended) may provide funding through the Chief of the National Guard Bureau to a state receiving SECDEF approval of a counter drug school execution plan for National Guard Training Support. NGB J3-counter drug funds full-time Title 32 Active Guard/Reserve (AGR) Counterdrug Coordinator (CDC) position in each state for administration and management of the state counter drug program. The CDC serves as the focal point for all counter drug mission validations, approval authority, and the prioritization for counter drug mission tasking IAW appropriate policies, instructions, and directions. National Guard support can include: Linguist Support (Translator Support), Investigative Case and Analyst Support, Operational/Investigative Case Support, Engineer Support, Subsurface/Diver Support, Domestic Cannabis Suppression Operations Support, Transportation Support, maintenance/Logistical Support, Cargo/mail Inspection, Counterdrug related Training and Training LEA/Military Personnel, Ground Reconnaissance, Aerial Reconnaissance, and Demand Reduction Support.

BORDER SECURITY

5-20. The DHS may request support from Federal military forces. Requests for assistance go from DHS to the Secretary of Defense or the ASD(HS/ASA). If approved by the Secretary of Defense, Federal military forces provide indirect support to border security and law enforcement personnel, as well as immigration and naturalization officers. JTF North exercises TACON over Federal military assets within the USNORTHCOM AOR.

5-21. State military forces also provide support to DHS border security programs. Under Title 32 U.S.C. Section 112, National Guard Soldiers assist in border security by operating surveillance systems, analyzing intelligence, installing fences and vehicle barriers, building roads, and providing training. National Guard units could, but as a matter of DOD policy, are not involved in direct law enforcement activities and remain under the control of their Governor.

5-22. DOD may indirectly support border security efforts under legislation contained in Title 10 USC, sections 371 through 374. This is provided through JTF-North. In accordance with the National Defense Authorization Act for fiscal year 1989 and subsequent fiscal years, JTF-North does not directly enforce the laws pertaining to homeland security. Their mission is to improve the capabilities of DHS agencies to carry out their law enforcement missions.

Homeland Defense Activities

5-23. Under Title 32 USC 901-908, the Secretary of Defense may provide DOD funding for National Guard Soldiers in a Title 32 status to conduct "homeland defense activities" within their state. The National Guard Soldiers performing this type of homeland defense duty remain under the command and control of the Governor. The duration of this duty is limited to 180 days, but the Governor may extend the tour by 90 days with the concurrence of the Secretary of Defense.

CIVIL DISTURBANCE

5-24. When large numbers of people disregard the law, e.g. mob behavior and rioting, local and state police may be unable to protect lives and property, particularly if the mob is armed. Large civil disturbances have occurred throughout U.S. history, and frequently turned deadly. The most recent instance of both Federal forces and state National Guard forces controlling a large civil disturbance occurred during the Los Angeles riots in the month of May 1992.

5-25. A civil disturbance usually corresponds to one of the following three scenarios:

- **Violent/Destructive/Non-confrontational**. (Scenario1) Dispersed and intermittent civil disorder that quickly overwhelms state capabilities, an incident of this nature can potentially involve

multiple geographic areas simultaneously if precipitated by a widespread catastrophic event; or psychological sympathies can provide the catalyst for rapid spread of violence to other localities (examples: Chicago, Washington D.C., Baltimore, and LA race riots; Hurricanes Hugo and Katrina post-event looting; etc.). This is the scenario most likely to require federal intervention, potentially the costliest in terms of property damages resulting from general lawlessness, and will typically require the quickest response and most dangerous to CDO forces.

- **Violent/Destructive/Confrontational**. (Scenario 2) Concentrated antagonistic demonstrations, limited in duration, and focused at points with psychological significance (examples: the 1967 March on the Pentagon or the 1973 Wounded Knee standoff). These incidents may start as a planned lawful protest or special event, allowing for more time for planning and deployment.
- **Non-violent/Non-destructive/Confrontational**. (Scenario3) A legal obstruction requiring federal intervention historically is the most likely scenario; however it is least likely to require federal forces

State Military Forces

5-26. The Governor may call out the National Guard to quell any civil disturbance when it threatens lives or property. National Guard forces disperse unlawful assemblies and patrol areas to prevent unlawful acts. They assist in the distribution of essential goods and the maintenance of essential services. Military forces also establish traffic control points, cordon off areas, release smoke and obscurants, and serve as security or quick-reaction forces. The National Guard JTF commander provides liaison teams to each affected police precinct and normally positions the JTF headquarters near the police headquarters. In addition to support for law enforcement personnel, National Guard forces provide security for emergency responders, particularly fire fighters. After review by the State Attorney General, the governor approves the Rules on the use of Force.

Note: There is no standard nomenclature for “Rules of Force” between the 54 states and territories.

Federal Military Forces

5-27. Civil disturbance support for Federal is not technically support to law enforcement (DSCLEA). The primary reference for civil disturbance is DODD 3025.12 This is

5-28. In responding to civil disturbances, Federal military forces may reinforce law enforcement agencies. The President may employ the Armed Forces of the United States, including the National Guard, within the United States to restore order or enforce federal law when requested by the state legislature, or when not in session, by the governor, and when the authorities of the state are incapable of maintaining public order. The President normally initiates action by ordering the dispersal of those obstructing the enforcement of the laws. The President may also act unilaterally to suppress an insurrection or domestic violation without the request or authority of the state/governor in order to protect the federal government, enforce federal law, or protect the constitutional rights of citizens.

5-29. Responsibility for the coordination of the federal response for civil disturbances rests with the Attorney General. The Attorney General appoints a Senior Civilian Representative of the Attorney General (SCRAG) as his or her action agent. Any DOD forces employed in civil disturbance operations remain under military command at all times. Forces deployed to assist federal and local authorities in a civil disturbance follow CJCSI) 3121.01B, *Standing Rules of Engagement/Standing Rules for the Use of Force for US Forces.*

5-30. USNORTHCOM develops and maintains operations plans dealing with civil disturbance operations. These plans serve as the foundation for any civil disturbances, standardize most activities, and command relationships. Tasks performed by military forces may include joint patrolling with law enforcement officers; securing key buildings, memorials, intersections and bridges; and acting as a quick reaction force.

Training for Civil Disturbance Operations

5-31. Civil disturbance missions require unit training prior to employing crowd control tactics. This normally requires a mobile training team from the military police or trained law enforcement personnel. Note that effective employment of shields and batons requires frequent drilling, and small unit leaders should put their subordinates through these drills during any available time between commitments. Even in an urgent situation, commanders need to drill their forces repeatedly until small unit leaders can execute maneuvers under extreme stress. Training should be all-arms; emphasizing treatment and evacuation procedures, detention and movement of citizens and use of authorized non-lethal systems.

HOMELAND SECURITY PROTECTION AGAINST TERRORISM

5-32. Protecting against terrorism in the United States is a civilian law enforcement responsibility. The Department of Justice (DOJ) and specifically the FBI has primary Federal responsibility for combating terrorism. Responsibilities include measures to anticipate, prevent, and/or resolve a threat or act of terrorism. The FBI works closely with agencies at local, state and federal levels to detect and preempt terrorist activity.

5-33. The FBI continually assesses intelligence and reports of terrorist activity. When there is a credible threat, the FBI is responsible to disrupt it and prevent an attack. Should there be an incident, the FBI is responsible to neutralize any on-scene threat and for criminal investigation. The FBI Special Agent in Charge (SAC) supervises the law enforcement activities at the incident scene. The FBI will establish a Joint Operations Center (JOC) to orchestrate the interagency law enforcement and investigative efforts. The NRF (*Terrorism Incident Law Enforcement and Investigation* Incident Annex) directs the JOC be located with the Joint Field Office (JFO). Other FBI actions can include deploying a domestic emergency support team (DEST), a rapidly deployable special interagency team that provides advice to the FBI on-scene coordinator. The SAC may also request the FBI Hostage Rescue Team (HRT).

5-34. In response to a terrorist incident, several federal law enforcement agencies will deploy assets to the scene. Depending upon the seriousness of the incident, the Attorney General will designate the ranking FBI agent as the Senior Federal Law Enforcement Official (SFLEO) to coordinate the activities of not only the FBI, but also all other federal agents. The SFLEO works within the joint field office.

5-35. The principal Army contributions to this effort are antiterrorism and force protection. Effective antiterrorism and force protection measures taken by State and Federal military forces can not only prevent attacks, but by complicating the terrorists' activities, can increase the likelihood of their detection and apprehension.

Antiterrorism Support

5-36. Anti-terrorism within the United States involves military forces in two basic capacities. The first is force protection. The second capacity addresses requests by civilian law enforcement agencies for training and material assistance for law enforcement personnel tasked with antiterrorism responsibilities.

5-37. Antiterrorism and Force Protection programs are interrelated and must be applied and integrated in all civil support operations. Force Protection is an overarching mission that ties together all mission assurance functions. Force protection activities include actions taken to prevent or mitigate hostile actions against personnel (including family members), resources, facilities, and critical information. Activities contributing to the force protection mission include antiterrorism, Critical Infrastructure Protection (CIP), Continuity of Operations (COOP), logistics, medical, legal, and safety.

5-38. Antiterrorism involves defensive measures used to reduce the vulnerability of individuals and property to terrorist acts, to include limited response and containment by local military forces and civilians. Antiterrorism programs form the foundation for effectively combating terrorism. The basics of such programs include training and defensive measures that strike a balance between the level of protection, the mission, individual freedoms, and resource availability. See the DOD Antiterrorism Handbook, DOD 1200.1.

Counterterrorism support

5-39. Counterterrorism support employs specialized military capabilities against terrorists. If necessary, the FBI may request DOD counterterrorism support. The FBI on-scene coordinator notifies the FBI Director and the Attorney General of any request for DOD assistance. The FBI also informs the Assistant Secretary of Defense for Special Operations/Low Intensity Conflict of the pending request and provides details of the incident. The ASD (SO/LIC) advises the Secretary of Defense, and the Attorney General confers with the Secretary of Defense on the deployment request. They, in turn, confer with the President. The President or Secretary of Defense must approve all DOD support to counterterrorism within the United States.

LAW ENFORCEMENT CONSIDERATIONS

5-40. State National Guard forces frequently support law enforcement during disaster response. Missions include joint patrols with law enforcement officers, securing evacuated neighborhoods, and providing surveillance support. The problems with such missions occur because of the disruption and confusion associated with a disaster. Commanders should evaluate the potential for law enforcement mission as part of their unit's initial reconnaissance and provide their assessment to their state JTF headquarters. Simultaneously, they impress upon their subordinates that they must refrain from law enforcement activities except as authorized.

5-41. Federal forces, when authorized, may support law enforcement activities in a major disaster or a serious CBRNE incident. Their mission assignments could include providing technical assistance, logistical support, and communications assistance. Indirectly, they support law enforcement by relieving National Guard Soldiers of non-law enforcement missions, allowing that state's forces to assist the with direct law enforcement support with maintaining order and protecting private property. This complementary employment of Federal military and State military forces maximizes the effectiveness of military support to law enforcement agencies.

COMMAND AND CONTROL

5-42. Domestic law enforcement support requires expert legal advice to leaders at every level. The command SJA should review plans and orders carefully, even if this delays their release. Plans and orders should identify measure that requires legal consultation, command approval, or both. Supporting commanders should plan for additional liaison personnel and communications to the supported law enforcement agency. Commanders ensure that their Soldiers know the chain of command, and which law enforcement agency they are supporting. Federal military forces and State military forces may operate in proximity. Legally, a divided chain of command exists. Unity of effort is vital. On the ground, however, commanders from both forces co-locate so they can coordinate all operations very closely.

INFORMATION AND INTELLIGENCE

5-43. During a DSCA event, Army units may be called on to indirectly support or assist civilian law enforcement during the consequence management phases of the incident. As they do, they may also be requested to provide capabilities unavailable to civilian law enforcement. However, great care must be taken regarding who is providing this assistance, what the nature of the assistance is, and what the capabilities consist of. Law enforcement operations rely on information to ensure success of the mission. Things are no different in the military, although the restrictions on *who* provides this information, *what* and *how* the information is collected, and *what* is to be done with it, are much more strictly controlled than in the civilian world. Since the PM/AT/FP personnel handle "information", the restrictions upon the use and retention of this type of collection is quite different than that affecting the G2 which handles "intelligence". For this reason, commanders must attain a clear understanding of the differences between "information" and "intelligence" activities before assistance of this nature is provided in order to ensure laws, military regulatory authorities, and DOD policies are not violated. For example, an increased emphasis on intelligence capabilities to fight today's protracted conflicts has resulted in improved ISR capabilities in tactical units. Many of these capabilities can support law enforcement officials during a disaster or CBRNE event if their use is approved by the Secretary of Defense. Robotic systems used to detect explosives in

combat operations can serve similar purposes in the aftermath of a major incident in the United States to assist in SAR types of operations. Few if any civil law enforcement agencies have this sophisticated equipment or the personnel to operate it. Similarly, two of the most important capabilities employed by Soldiers are night vision systems and integrated suites of surveillance systems. Both capabilities become vital in the aftermath of a major disaster, with subsequent damage to the power grids.

5-44. Use of sophisticated night vision capabilities such as forward looking infrared (FLIR) requires approval of the Secretary of Defense. Army aviation, equipped with surveillance systems and flown by night-qualified aviators increases the nighttime capabilities of law enforcement officials significantly. Although remotely piloted aircraft have similar surveillance capabilities, airspace control procedures may limit or prohibit their use. (See UAS appendix)

5-45. Employment of intelligence systems domestically remains a sensitive legal area, particularly when used in support of law enforcement agencies. Non-traditional use of ISR capabilities in support of law enforcement still requires approval by the Secretary of Defense. Refer to chapter 7 for a more extensive discussion of legal restrictions on military intelligence.

MOVEMENT AND MANEUVER

5-46. In any mission that has the potential for lethal force, such as a civil disturbance; commanders should designate a reserve whenever possible. The reserve may be small, even two or three Soldiers, but even a small reserve can become a critical asset when the situation deteriorates. In planning for the reserve, the commander should:

- Provide the reserve with sufficient mobility to move to any area of the AO quickly. In a civil disturbance environment, the reserve should have wheeled armored vehicles.
- Ensure the reserve has tactical communications and monitors the command net. Position the reserve near the command post, where the reserve leader can monitor the COP.
- Task-organize the reserve to enable it to use lethal force IAW the RUF.
- Retain the decision to commit the reserve personally.

5-47. Joint patrols with local law enforcement officers have proven to be a highly effective and efficient use of Soldiers in the aftermath of disasters and disturbances. The typical joint patrol combines a section of Soldiers (3 or 4), a HMMWV with tactical radios, night vision equipment, and one police officer familiar with the area. The patrol combines mounted and dismounted security activity with presence. The inclusion of the police officer allows for rapid administration of law enforcement and facilitates arrest and detention. It also solves many perplexing intelligence issues. The police normally carry non-lethal weapons, allowing for discriminate application of force. The presence of the Soldiers provides command and control even when emergency traffic overwhelms police communications. The military vehicle provides increased mobility, and the night vision equipment provides the patrol with tactical advantages over looters. As with any law enforcement support, the controlling JTF coordinates within its higher chain of command for the authority to commit Soldiers to law enforcement support of any type. Small unit commanders should always confirm RUF through their headquarters before combining Soldiers with police officers. When employing joint patrols, the commander coordinates carefully with the supervising police chief to plan the patrols, and ensures that the military patrol leader conducts necessary preparation and coordination with the supported police department before each patrol.

PROTECTION

5-48. Soldiers assigned to protect critical facilities such as a public utility, transportation nodes, or similar critical infrastructure vital to public health and safety, must understand how to apply the SRUF, especially the use of deadly force, to protect that particular facility

Protective Equipment

5-49. A wide variety of specialized protective equipment enables Soldiers to conduct civil disturbance operations. Personnel protectors provide the individual soldier with added protection to the sensitive and vital areas of his body. They provide excellent protection for the individual soldier from trauma often

inflicted by thrown objects such as rocks, bricks, sticks, and bottles. Some examples include non-ballistic face shields and body shields. Additional protective equipment includes ballistic full-body shields and face shields, leg protectors, and other equipment to protect individuals from small arms fire. Soldiers may carry these items of equipment in lieu of or in combination with the individual ballistic armor based on the situation.

The Use of Force

5-50. Federal military forces supporting law enforcement will often have more severe restrictions on the use of force. Soldiers in Title 10 status may only use deadly force when all lesser means have failed or cannot reasonably be employed and it is reasonably necessary:

- To protect DOD forces when the commander reasonably believes a person poses in imminent threat of death or serious bodily harm,
- To protect yourself and other DOD forces from imminent threat of death or serious bodily harm,
- To protect non-DOD persons in the vicinity from the imminent threat of death or serious bodily harm, if directly related to the assigned mission,
- To prevent the actual theft or sabotage of assets vital National Security or inherently dangerous property,
- To prevent the sabotage of a National critical infrastructure,
- To prevent a serious offense that involves imminent death or serious bodily harm against any person, if directly related to the assigned mission.

5-51. In civil disturbance and other tense situations, commanders need to take extra precautions concerning the employment of weapons. The preferred means is that the company commander maintains designated marksmen under their personal control. The marksmen should be trained marksmen, and armed with precision systems. The marksmen may occupy over watch positions, or remain in reserve at the commander's location. Their orders to engage come from the commander personally; at all other times they observe but do not engage. All other subordinate leaders control their Soldiers and stress that they only employ their weapons in self-defense, to save the life of an innocent citizen, or to protect designated critical infrastructure.

5-52. Commanders should plan for the use of exclusion warnings and barriers around any protected facility. In sharp contrast to combat situations, these markings and barriers should be highly visible and as easily understandable as possible. Units should set up warning signs, entry control points, and crowd control measures intended to prevent any accidental confrontation with security forces. Barrier material, particularly concertina, should be clearly marked and visible at all times. If possible, Soldiers should establish an outer barrier of traffic pylons, police tape, or wooden rails to keep citizens from accidentally injuring themselves on barbed wire. Often a well-informed Soldier posted at a likely primary contact point provides the best means of public control.

Nonlethal Weapons

5-53. Nonlethal Weapons provide an effective alternative means of employing force to reduce the probability of death or serious injury to noncombatants and the individual Soldier while still mitigating the threat. Commanders should evaluate the use of non-lethal weapons in domestic operations plans and RUF. Additionally, commanders should plan for and conduct RUF rehearsals to prepare their personnel for operations that may employ non-lethal weapons.

5-54. Non-Lethal Capability Sets (NLCS) provide Commanders with flexible options to accomplish mission objectives relating to Homeland Security and Homeland Defense. Primarily used by the National Guard Reaction Forces, the NGB NLCS equipment sets includes personal protective gear (face shields, body shields, and shin guards), counter personnel equipment (restraints, electronic stun devices, and chemical spray) and training devices like strike pads and simulation cartridges. With 240 total sets distributed to all states and territories, 36 additional sets available from a central source plus over 380 instructors, the National Guard Non-Lethal capabilities can provide support to law enforcement anywhere in the nation with trained personnel.

5-55. The primary doctrine for Soldiers on the employment of non-lethal weapons tactics during civil disturbance operations is FM 3-19.15 Civil Disturbance Operations and TC 3-19.5. Additional information may be found in multi-service publication Field Manual (FM) 3-22.40; Marine Corps Warfighting Publication (MCWP) 3-15.8; Naval Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (NTTP) 3-07.3.2; Air Force Tactics, Techniques and Procedures (AFTTP) 3-2.45; and U.S. Coast Guard Publication 3-07.31, NLW – Tactical Employment of Nonlethal Weapons.

5-56. Commanders must ensure that they and their subordinates understand when, and how to employ non-lethal weapons. Non-lethal weapons continue to evolve, and Soldiers must be trained to enable them to use these weapons properly. Prior to employing any new non-lethal weapon, the command SJA should review all pertinent orders and instructions for its use. Use of non-lethal weapons, like the use of all weapons, will require approval from higher headquarters. Use of riot control agents by Soldiers requires additional authorization from appropriate authorities, (state or federal). Soldiers need to understand that all non-lethal weapons are not equal; different classes of weapons require different RUF. Prior to employing any new non-lethal weapon, the command SJA should review all pertinent orders and instructions for use. Remember that most non-lethal weapons require approval from higher headquarters, and use of riot control agent by Soldiers must be specifically authorized by the JTF (state or federal). Soldiers should never use a non-lethal weapon that is still in development; the weapon must be approved for the tactical situation extant.

SUSTAINMENT

5-57. Civil disturbance operations may require specialized equipment and munitions, as well as barrier material. The G-4 or S-4 should review the required equipment list and coordinate with the controlling JTF concerning equipment and ammunition on hand. Additional items may include riot batons, concertina wire and pickets, flexible cuffs, face and body shields, protective mask filters, additional stretchers, portable firefighting equipment, and assorted batteries. Critical infrastructure security missions may require additional marking tape etc., in order to delineate the secure area.

USE OF FACILITIES AND EQUIPMENT

5-58. Military Departments and Defense Agencies may make equipment, base facilities, or research facilities available to Federal, State, or Local civilian law enforcement officials for law enforcement purposes, IAW DOD Directives. Additionally, DOD personnel can be utilized to operate or maintain or to assist in operating or maintaining DOD equipment, when the training of non-DOD personnel would be unfeasible or impractical from a cost or time perspective and would not otherwise compromise National Security or military preparedness concerns. This must be approved by the SECDEF or his designated representative. (See DODD 5525.5, DOD Cooperation with Civil Law Enforcement Officials)

Chapter 6

Provide Other Support as Required

This chapter addresses a range of civil support missions that fall outside of the other primary tasks. These missions include providing security for special events, wild land fire fighting, direct support to other federal agencies, safeguarding critical infrastructure, and answering requests for military support received from communities.

6-1. The Army conducts a range of missions in support of civilian authorities that are not disaster related, or consequence management. In fact, they are hybrid missions, combining aspects of disaster response, law enforcement and public relations to accomplish different ends. Missions that fall into this task area include support provided to; support for National Special Security Events (NSSE); direct augmentation of Federal agencies; response to a mass immigration, and planned community support. This chapter provides an overview of these missions.

NATIONAL EVENTS

6-2. The Secretary of Homeland Security, after consultation with the National Security Staff (NSS), designates certain events as a National Special Security Event (NSSE). This designation reflects the importance given to security at certain special events that, by virtue of their political, economic, social, or religious significance, may be the target of terrorism or other criminal activity. The DHS Special Events Working Group (SEWG) designates special events. These events receive a priority by the SEWG. The USNORTHCOM and PACOM commanders monitor special security events in their respective AORs. When a special event becomes an NSSE, the United States Secret Service, as part of DHS, assumes the role of primary agency for the design and implementation of the operational security plan. Events in this category are normally large events, generally with sufficient time for planning. Multiple federal and state agencies may be involved, and will have well-defined situation and operational areas. Planning for possible transition to disaster support is inherent in these operations. Special events requiring DOD support could include large recreational or sporting events such the following: World's Fair, Super Bowl, Olympics, World Series, and NASCAR events; as well important political events such as a Presidential Inauguration, Joint Sessions of Congress, of meetings involving world leaders, such as the G-8 conference.

6-3. Certain events receive special status not because of the numbers of people, but because of security requirements for the participants and the threat of civil disturbance. Examples include: Presidential inaugurations, State of the Union addresses, Group of Eight summit meetings, World Trade Organization Meetings, United Nations General Assembly meetings, Democratic and Republican Party national conventions, and State funerals. If an incident occurs at an NSSE, the FBI leads the law enforcement and criminal investigation efforts, and FEMA leads response and recovery efforts or consequence management.

6-4. Some events are not designated NSSE, yet still receive DOD support. For other special events the JDOMS plans, coordinates, and monitors execution of approved DOD support to other special events according to priorities assigned by the DHS Special Events Working Group. DOD focuses on support related to public safety and security, including but not limited to, physical security, aviation, logistical, communications, joint operations and command centers, and explosive ordnance disposal support. DOD support for events may be reimbursable or non-reimbursable depending on the type of support provided and the nature of the event.

6-5. Other National Guard Civil Support missions range from providing support to law enforcement agencies, supporting National Special Security Events (NSSEs), and protecting critical infrastructure, among others. The general focus of these NGCS missions is usually on providing support that is security-related. Normally, some level of threat or hostility is either possible or anticipated. While some

generalized deliberate planning and preparation may be possible for these missions, normally mission specific planning and training will be required once National Guard support has been requested and approved. The State military forces utilized these missions are typically force packages tailored and trained for the mission requirements and possessing the capabilities necessary for the specific mission. The duration of these National Guard missions is typically weeks to months.

6-6. National events may combine National Guard, Army Reserve and Regular Army forces. During the Presidential inauguration of 2009, more than 10,000 National Guard troops from multiple states assembled under the command of the District of Columbia TAG. Regular and Reserve Army forces provided additional support, both ceremonial and security related. These forces fell under the control of the JTF National Capitol Region. The Federal and National Guard commanders coordinated closely during planning and execution. The event served as an excellent example of parallel command structure involving Federal military and State military personnel working together. Certain aspects of their plans should be considered by Army officers faced with similar responsibilities:

- Integrate plans between Federal military forces and State military forces as early as possible.
- Establish joint and interagency planning protocols and provide liaison officers to key command centers.
- Establish a mobile reserve large enough to handle contingencies. Position the reserve closely enough that it can respond quickly, yet far enough away that it is not visible to the crowds, or impeded by them.
- Maintain operational security.

6-7. Because a special event entails detailed planning, preparation, and execution, there is time to appoint a dual status commander for the event. In most cases, this will be a senior National Guard officer from the state hosting the event. See Chapter 8 for a discussion of dual-status command.

SUPPORT PROVIDED DIRECTLY TO A FEDERAL AGENCY

6-8. Certain domestic situations may require contingency military support outside of the NIMS framework. In such cases, DOD provides support in response to a request from a specific federal agency or at the direction of the President. These incidents fall into three general categories. In the first case, the President may direct the Secretary of Defense to augment the federal civilian work force of an agency that has labor problems. In 1982, the President used military personnel to replace the striking air traffic controllers. Earlier Presidents used the Army to deliver the mail during Postal strikes.

6-9. In the second case, the President may authorize military support to an agency that suddenly expands its responsibilities due to an incident. Some examples include.

- Animal/Plant Disease Eradication: DOD would provide the U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) assistance for emergencies requiring the containment and eradication of plant or animal diseases.
- Oil and Hazardous Substance Spills: The Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and DHS–U.S. Coast Guard have responsibilities for the Oil and Hazardous Substances Pollution Contingency Plan.
- Wild Fires: The National Interagency Fire Center (NIFC), a joint Department of Agriculture and Department of Interior organization is responsible for coordinating the Federal response to wild fires. DOD provides resources for the containment, control and extinguishing of wild fires on lands owned by the Federal government.

6-10. The third event involves a sudden mass immigration to the United States. This could result in DOD providing, when directed, to other Federal agencies support such as housing, security, and logistics while the Federal Government resolves the administrative requirements for migrants to enter the U.S. The Regular Army and Army Reserve provided extensive support to Federal authorities during the period of the Mariel Boatlift in 1980. Thousands of Cubans took advantage of Castro's relaxation of his immigration policy to come to the USA. Local authorities were overwhelmed, and the Army provided extensive support to house, secure, and move the immigrants until all were absorbed into American society.

PROTECT CRITICAL INFRASTRUCTURE

6-11. Law enforcement support and protection of critical infrastructure share certain aspects, but differ in other respects. Both missions require Soldiers to be prepared to use force to protect individuals and facilities. Both require close cooperation with civilian security elements. However, Federal military forces units may be tasked to protect non-military critical infrastructure by the President, and critical military infrastructure by the President or SECDEF. Within the specific limits of their infrastructure protection mission, Federal military forces may remove, detain, and use force against individuals that pose a threat to designated facilities without violating the Posse Comitatus act. Any use of force must remain within the RUF specified for that mission. National Guard forces under state command may receive a specific protection mission by their Governor, or may deploy to protect certain facilities in accordance with pre-existing contingency plans when ordered. Certain USNORTHCOM and USPACOM plans require National Guard forces under Federal Command to alert and deploy security elements for either Homeland Defense or Homeland Security missions.

6-12. The President has Constitutional authority to order Federal military forces to protect critical infrastructure. This authority is derived from his position as the Commander in Chief of the Armed Forces of the United States in Article II of the Constitution. The President may direct DOD forces to protect critical infrastructure in either a homeland security or a homeland defense role. There is a critical distinction between these two roles for two reasons: (1) DOD will be the lead Federal agency for a homeland defense operation and, (2) with the exception of defense critical infrastructure protection functions being part of DOD's core mission, homeland security functions are undertaken only if approved by the Secretary of Defense (SECDEF), consistent with existing legal constraints, and only if they do not negatively impact DOD's primary war fighting missions. Normally, the President will provide prior to exercising authority under Article II; either by issuing either a national emergency declaration, or through executive order. This declaration or order would also trigger the authority the SECDEF, Combatant Commanders, and on-scene commanders to exercise their authority to protect defense critical infrastructures, assets, and property. Before any Federal military forces can use deadly force to protect any infrastructure or asset, the President must designate it as either a "national critical infrastructure" or "asset vital to national security," or an on-scene commander must have designated the property as "inherently dangerous property."

6-13. Critical infrastructure protection requires careful planning and effective small unit leadership. The primary consideration will be the application of the RUF. Soldiers with the mission to protect Presidentially- designated public utility, transportation nodes, or similar critical infrastructure vital to the public health and safety, must understand how to apply the RUF to protect that particular facility. The unit leader should coordinate in detail with the manager of the facility, and any security personnel employed at the facility.

PROVIDE WILDLAND FIREFIGHTING SUPPORT

6-14. The Federal Government manages vast areas of land within the United States. Some of this land is provided for National Parks; some is owned and managed by the US Government for wildlife habitat and natural resources. Each state also has an array of parks and resource preserves. Wildfires occur on these lands on an almost annual basis, and Federal and state forestry services maintain robust firefighting capabilities in order to combat the threat of fires. However, when wildfires exceed the civilian firefighting capabilities, the responsible primary agency will request assistance from DOD, the National Guard, or both. The types of support vary, but range from surveillance, to air movement of personnel and equipment, and may include augmenting firefighting personnel with military units. Support to wild land firefighting is provided under the Economy Act.

6-15. The National Interagency Fire Center (NIFC) located in Boise Idaho, Mission serves as the focal point for coordinating the national mobilization of resources for wildland fire and other fire incidents throughout the United States. The NIFC operates and maintains the National Incident Coordination Center (NICC) The NICC is the sole dispatch center for heavy airtankers, lead planes, smokejumpers, hotshot crews, Type 1 Incident Management Teams, area command teams, medium and heavy helicopters, infrared aircraft, military resources, telecom equipment for fires, Remote Automated Weather Stations (RAWS),

and large transport aircraft. Control of wildland fire fighting is managed by geographic area control centers (GACC). Figure 6-1 illustrates the GACC regions.

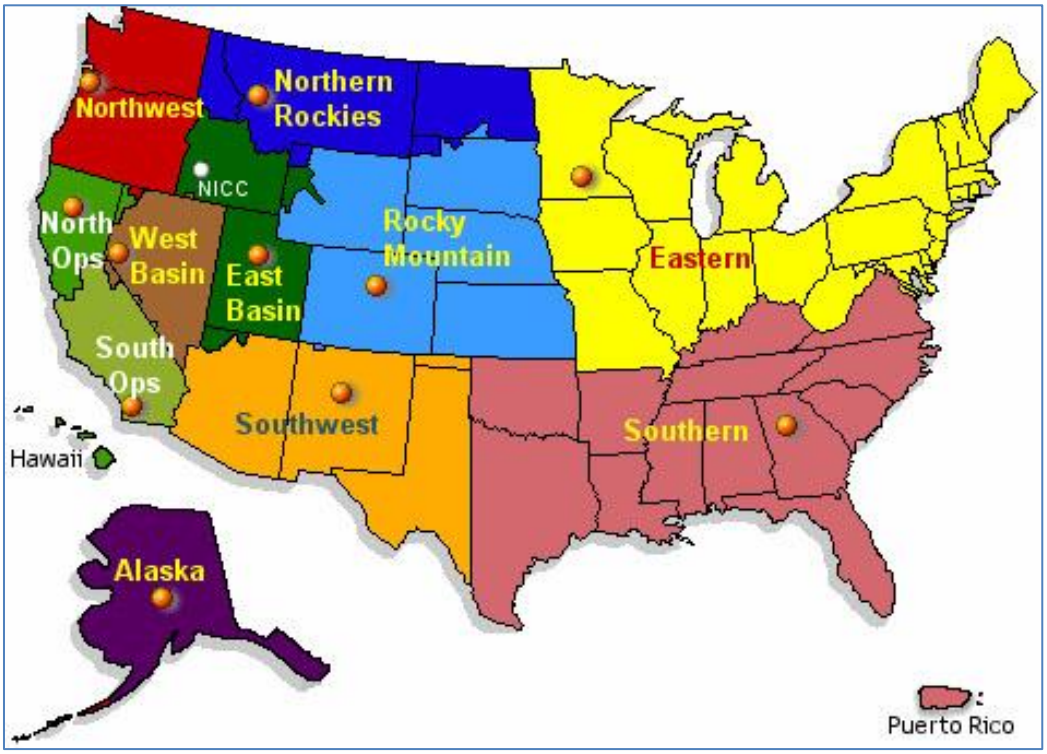


Figure 6-1. Geographic Area Control Centers for Wildland Fire Fighting

6-16. Wildfire fire fighting is a hybrid mission that combines aspects of disaster response with that of other support. It involves response to an incident, but also entails specialized planning, training, and command and control. Although military forces remain under the command of their military leadership, the tactical employment of forces will be directed by civilian professionals. What the first responders need is disciplined manpower that they can rapidly convert into large numbers of personnel along the fire line, and to create reserves to fill gaps created when civilian firefighters reach exhaustion.

6-17. Any large wild fire creates a very dangerous environment for residents and first responders alike. Fighting these fires can be lethal and Soldiers supporting the fire fighting agencies must receive special training and equipment. The NIFC has developed an intensive training program that prepares Soldiers and leaders for service on the fire lines. This training is conducted by the NIFC in conjunction with JRSOI of supporting military units. Commanders need to understand the Forest Service will reorganize their small units into fire fighting teams and place them under the tactical control of an experienced fire fighter. The Forest Service also provides equipment, protective garments, and communications as part of the training. They will provide communications and life support to all personnel not directly involved in fire fighting, such as truck drivers and administrative personnel.

6-18. Force health protection becomes a primary concern of commanders in any wildfire support mission. While the Forest Service can train personnel, it cannot condition them, or enforce field discipline. The role of the small unit leader in caring for subordinates must be stressed by commanders. Medical personnel need to conduct frequent checks on the health of Soldiers and be prepared to treat heat injuries, burns, and trauma.

PLANNED COMMUNITY SUPPORT

6-19. Commanders take an active interest in their relationships with civilian officials, supporting appropriate community events. They initiate and support activities of common interest and benefit. They establish productive relationships with national, state, and community officials that benefit the Army and

civilian communities. Army installation commanders often appoint a community relations committee to review community assistance requests.

6-20. There are limitations on the use of Army forces for community support. Army forces do not compete with resources and services commercially available in the community. Commanders may not authorize military support when local businesses can provide the same or similar support. Army participation in community assistance is never provided for profit. Leaders ensure that no unit realizes a monetary profit, a gratuity, or remuneration in any form unless provided for by public law or regulation.

6-21. Periodic planned community assistance activities can be national missions that focus on developing public support for the Army. They also can be civilian organization or local community missions focused on improving the community, its infrastructure, and quality of life. However, certain programs do not fit neatly into one category or the other. Programs established by Department of Defense or Department of the Army require execution at the installation level. Many require the energy and initiative of the commander to build successful partnerships exercise initiative and form partnerships.

6-22. Army aviation units may fly emergency medical evacuation missions to transport civilians to community hospitals. This is similar to immediate response authority, but there are administrative differences. There is no requirement for the civilian agency to reimburse DOD. Army aircraft must perform the mission from their home airfield and return upon completion. In other words, the aircrew cannot relocate to another state to support emergency services away from their home base.

Requests to the State National Guard

6-23. The requesting organization initially may contact the National Guard. All State National Guard headquarters have established processes for community support requests, generally through their public affairs offices.

Requests to Department of Defense

6-24. DOD capabilities requests are submitted through public affairs channels to the Office of the Assistant Secretary of Defense for Public Affairs, Attn: Directorate for Community Relations and Public Liaison as Community Relations/Public Affairs Support. Organizations use DD Form 2535 or DD Form 2536. Either form can be submitted through Army, Navy, Marine, or Air Force public affairs officer for processing.

Request to Installation Commanders

6-25. Installation Commanders may provide support when it meets the requirements of innovative readiness training (under title 10 USC, section 2012). Innovative readiness training refers to training authorized by a provision of law. It also refers to support provided to a civilian organization that provides military training for the military unit involved.

Chapter 7

Legal Considerations

Civil support is governed by different laws and regulations than military operations conducted in foreign counties against a hostile force. In general, the military services are in a supporting role to civilian authorities when providing assistance during a disaster or civil emergency. Legal issues will often arise and necessitate timely legal advice throughout the DSCA operation. This chapter identifies the primary mission authorities for DOD participation and then discusses the more common legal issues a commander may confront when operating in support of civil authorities to assist fellow Americans. It provides a summary of the President's, SECDEF's, Governor's, and military commanders' authority to respond to a request for assistance from civil authorities. It also provides summaries of the more common legal issues commanders may potentially face at the scene of the incident when asked or directed to provide assistance during civil support.

7-1. The greatest difference between civil support and stability operations is in the area of U.S. law. The unique character of the Constitution and laws enacted by successive Congresses create a complicated legal environment. This chapter provides additional detail on important legal considerations for Army commanders in civil support. Commanders should note that it is only a summary, and not a comprehensive review of every requirement and restriction. The most important rule that commanders should remember is "always ask a staff judge advocate for legal advice."

POWERS OF A STATE GOVERNOR

7-2. Governors serve as Commanders in Chief of their state National Guard and may assume special powers upon the declaration of a disaster, emergency, enemy attack, or riot. The authority of the Governor is circumscribed or limited by U.S. Code and each state's law and statutes. Although the Governors' powers vary from state to state, emergency powers in all states generally include authorities to -

- Suspend statutory and regulatory provisions that otherwise might hinder response to a disaster;
- Require hospitalization for those injured during a disaster;
- Control ingress and egress into the emergency area; to direct the evacuation of residents and prescribe transportation routes;
- Provide temporary shelter;
- Commandeer property (with compensation);
- Control or suspend utility services;
- Limit or suspend the sale and possession of alcohol and explosives following a disaster or emergency.

7-3. Governors also issue executive orders declaring "states of emergency" and ensure that state agencies plan for actions in the event of a disaster. Once a disaster occurs, the Governor determines how to respond to a local government's request for assistance. If appropriate, the Governor declares a state of emergency, activates the state response plan, and may call up the National Guard (under state orders). The Governor gives the National Guard its mission(s) and determines when to withdraw National Guard forces. The Governor informs the FEMA regional director of his/her actions.

AUTHORITIES FOR FEDERAL MILITARY SUPPORT

7-4. The U.S. military has provided support to civil authorities in response to civil emergencies and natural disasters throughout its history. The terminology applied to this function has varied over the years: military assistance, or military support to civil authorities; military support of civil defense; and employment of military resources in natural disaster emergencies within the United States. The change in terminology reflects the evolving changes in authorities granted to DOD by the President and the Congress.

AUTHORITIES OF THE PRESIDENT

7-5. Although Article II of the Constitution and laws passed by Congress provide the primary basis for the present-day authorities of the President, the scope of Presidential authority is much broader. The President possesses inherent authority derived not from specific constitutional provisions or statutes, but from the aggregate of presidential responsibilities as the Nation's Chief Executive, Commander in Chief of the Armed Forces, and the highest law enforcement authority. Supreme Court decisions have held that the President has the inherent authority to preserve order and ensure public health and safety during a national crisis or an emergency, according to the necessities of the situation. This inherent authority empowers the President to act in response to an incident.

7-6. When confronted with a national crisis or emergency where there is no expressed Constitutional or statutory authority, the President can either present the matter to the Congress and wait for legislation that will authorize him to act or take immediate action on the basis of his inherent authority when no one other than he is capable of doing so.

The Stafford Act

7-7. The Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (Public Law 100-707, known as the Stafford Act) is the primary federal statute giving the President the authority to direct federal agencies to provide assistance to state and local authorities during an incident. The purpose of this assistance is to save lives, alleviate human suffering, protect public health and safety, and lessen or avert the threat of a catastrophe. The Stafford Act allows four ways for the President to provide federal, including DOD, support to civil authorities. Within these four categories, military support may be aviation, communications, engineering, logistical, medical, public affairs, and other capabilities.

Major Disaster Declaration

7-8. The President may declare a major disaster when an incident is severe enough to necessitate federal assistance to save lives, protect and preserve property, and provide for the public health and safety. The declaration follows a request from the Governor of the affected state. The President acts through the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) to authorize any appropriate federal agency to support state and local authorities.

Emergency Declaration

7-9. In cases where the President does not declare a major disaster, he or she may declare an emergency. This declaration is either before (in anticipation of) or following an incident necessitating federal assistance to save lives, protect property, provide for the public health and safety, and lessen or avert the threat of a catastrophe. The amount of damage either anticipated or actual is less severe than for a major disaster. Again, a request from the Governor of the affected state is required. The President, through FEMA, may authorize any federal agency to use personnel, equipment, facilities, and technical and advisory services to support state and local authorities.

DOD Ten-Day Emergency Work Authority

7-10. The President may direct the Secretary of Defense to send DOD forces on an emergency basis to preserve life and property for a period not to exceed 10 days. This DOD 10-day emergency work authority includes removal of debris and wreckage and temporary restoration of essential public facilities and services. It follows a request from a Governor for assistance. A Presidential major disaster or emergency

declaration is not required. However, the President may issue a declaration following the 10-day period, if additional federal assistance is requested and necessary.

Federal Primary Responsibility Authority

7-11. The President may, without a request for assistance from a Governor, unilaterally issue an emergency declaration and send federal assets, including DOD, to an area or facility over which the federal government exercises exclusive or primary responsibility by virtue of the Constitution or a federal statute. This may include federal missions, personnel, equipment, and property.

REIMBURSEMENT UNDER THE ECONOMY ACT AND STAFFORD ACT

7-12. Once approved by the Secretary of Defense, DOD may perform DSCA on a reimbursable basis. The Economy Act of 1932 (Title 31 USC, found in chapter 15) is the fiscal authority for a federal agency to reimburse DOD for goods and services that agency ordered and DOD rendered (when a more specific statutory authority does not exist). Under the Economy Act, reimbursement may be provided for DOD's total costs.

7-13. If the President issues a major disaster or emergency declaration under the Stafford Act, then the requesting Federal agency reimburses DOD for the incremental costs of support provided. Reimbursement policies and procedures will differ depending upon the authority under which services are performed. Commanders must work closely with their supporting financial management offices to ensure costs are captured and reported appropriately.

AUTHORITY OF THE SECRETARY OF DEFENSE

7-14. The Secretary of Defense, subject to the direction of the President, has the statutory authority to direct and control the DOD. The Secretary of Defense also has the statutory authority to issue regulations to manage DOD personnel, property, and facilities. This includes the authority to delegate to subordinate officials the authority vested in the Secretary of Defense. Pursuant to these authorities, the Secretary of Defense has issued several Department of Defense directives pertaining to DSCA, such as DODD 3025.15 and DODD 3025.1. The Secretary of Defense designated the Assistant Secretary of Defense for Homeland Defense and Americas' Security Affairs (ASD (HD/ASA)) as the DOD Domestic Crisis Manager in DODD 5111.13. The ASD (HD/ ASA) has policy, planning, advice, and approval authority for DSCA operations, except for civil disturbance and CBRNE events, direct support to law enforcement agencies, and the use or potential use of lethal force by DOD personnel, which the Secretary of Defense retains.

7-15. The joint director of military support (JDOMS) is the action agent for the ASD (HD/ASA) for DSCA. Once DOD receives a request for assistance, the JDOMS evaluates and processes it for the ASD (HD/ASA), and issues an execution order approved by the Secretary of Defense. The JDOMS also recommends to the Secretary of Defense designation of USNORTHCOM or PACOM as the supported commander, depending upon the geographic location of the incident.

AUTHORITY OF THE COMBATANT COMMANDER

7-16. The Secretary of Defense has authorized the commanders of USNORTHCOM and PACOM to provide limited DSCA on their own within their respective areas of operation. Specifically, they are authorized to perform the following actions with their assigned and allocated forces and certain aviation, communication, transportation, and medical units:

- Place them on a 24-hour prepare-to-deploy alert for up to seven days.
- Deploy them for up to 60 days, first notifying to the Secretary of Defense and the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff.
- Employ forces in an emergency after personally approving a request for immediate assistance from a primary federal agency such as FEMA, first notifying the Secretary of Defense and the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff.

AUTHORITY OF A DUAL STATUS COMMANDER

7-17. Federal law permits the use of a dual-status military commander to integrate federal and state military forces, reduce duplication of effort, and ensure unity of effort during a national-level (interagency) incident or special security event. In practice, the authority is used only in pre-planned special events. In most emergencies and disasters, the Federal military and State military chain of command remain separate, the former supporting the JFO and the latter the state emergency management authority. In a large, protracted response, particularly one limited in geographic scope to a single state, the President and Governor may agree to appoint a dual status commander. Note that in any extreme emergency, and particularly in case of an external attack on the United States, the President may consolidate all military forces under DOD by federalizing the National Guard, and exercising command through USNORTHCOM or PACOM. This is not "dual status" command.

7-18. Title 32 USC, section 325, allows a National Guard officer to serve on active duty in a federal status (Title 10) while retaining his National Guard status, if the President authorizes service in both duty statuses, and the Governor of the affected state consents. Title 32 USC, section 315 allows the President to approve a Title 10 active duty officer who is detailed to duty with the State National Guard by a Service Secretary to accept a commission from a Governor into the State National Guard and serve concurrently in both a federal and non-federal status. Only the commander is in a dual status; subordinate forces are not.

Note: The dual status commander may elect to combine or keep separate sections of the staff.

7-19. Four documents are necessary to implement this arrangement: Presidential authorization, Governor's consent, order by the appropriate Service Secretary bringing the designated dual-status commander onto active duty, and a memorandum of agreement between the two chains of command.

7-20. A Memorandum of Agreement (MOA) must be signed by the Governor and the President or their respective designees before a Dual Status commander can be established. The purpose of the MOA is to avoid future complicating liability determinations and confusion over the application of the Posse Comitatus Act. This MOA between the two chains of command should define, at a minimum:

- An agreement that each chain of command will not attempt to issue orders to the Dual Status Commander that concern forces or missions assigned to the other chain of command;
- Delineation of missions to be performed by forces in each chain of command and that the federal missions will not involve law enforcement duties;
- The military justice authority that can be exercised by the Dual Status Commander in each of his statuses;
- The successor of command authority for each chain of command; and,
- Rules for the Use of Force for both chains of command.
- Procedures to resolve any conflicts that may arise.

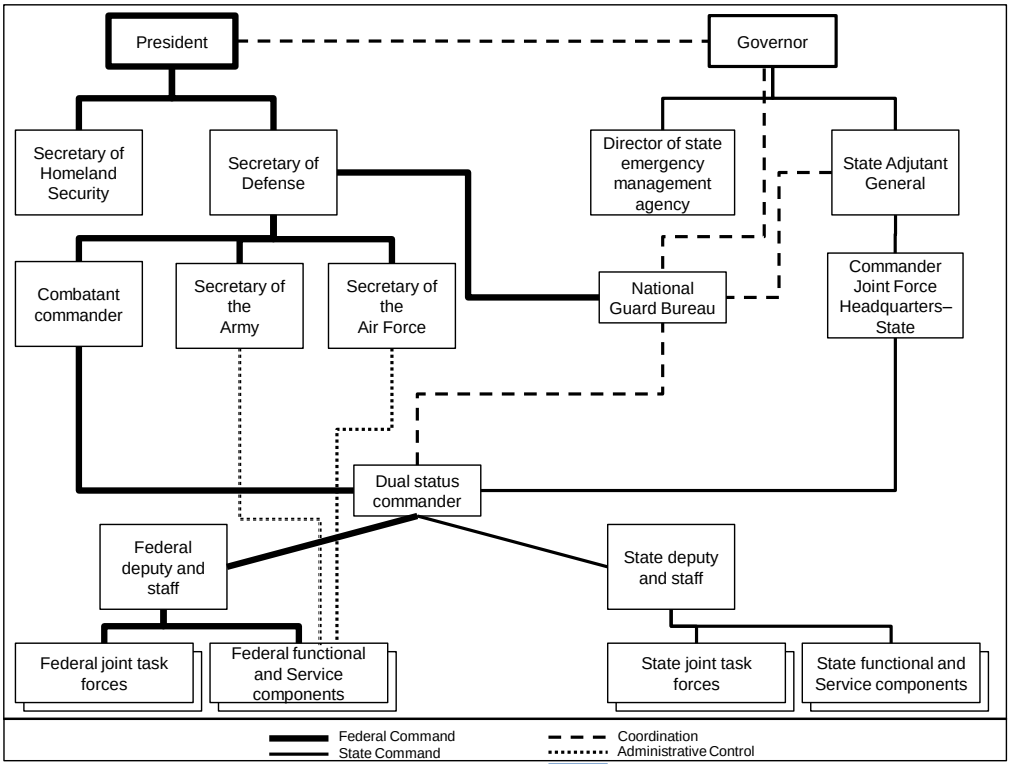


Figure 7-1. An Example of a Dual-Status Command

7-21. A dual-status commander may receive orders from both the federal and state chains of command. However, both chains recognize and respect that the dual-status commander cannot exercise dual authority simultaneously on behalf of two mutually exclusive sovereign governments. Instead, a dual-status commander exercises authority in a completely mutually exclusive manner, (either in a federal or nonfederal status), but never in both statuses at the same time. In other words, a dual-status commander holds a federal hat in one hand and a non-federal hat in the other hand but can wear only one hat at a time. Figure 7-1 shows an example of a dual-status command structure.

7-22. When in a Federal status, the dual-status commander takes orders from the President or those officers the President and the SECDEF have ordered to act on their behalf, and may issue orders to Federal forces under his command. When in a non-Federal status, the dual-status commander takes orders from the Governor through the Adjutant General of the State and may issue orders only to National Guard Soldiers serving in a non-Federal (Title 32 or SAD) status under his command.

THE POSSE COMITATUS ACT

7-23. The Constitution does not explicitly bar the use of military forces in civilian situations or in matters of law enforcement, but the United States has traditionally refrained from employing troops to enforce the law except in cases of necessity. The Posse Comitatus Act, 18 U.S.C. 1385, punishes those who, "except in cases and under circumstances expressly authorized by the Constitution or Act of Congress, willfully use any part of the Army or the Air Force as a *Posse Comitatus* or otherwise to execute the laws …" Questions arise most often in the context of assistance to law enforcement. In this context, Courts have held that, absent a recognized exception, the PCA is violated (1) when civilian law enforcement officials make "direct active use" of military investigators, (2) when the military "pervades the activities" of civilian officials, or (3) when the military is used so as to subject citizens to the exercise of military power that is "regulatory, prescriptive, or compulsory in nature." The Act applies by regulation to the Navy and Marines. It does not prohibit activities conducted for a military purpose (base security or enforcement of

military discipline) that incidentally benefit civilian law enforcement bodies. The Act does not apply to the state forces, but state law may impose similar restrictions.

7-24. Congress has provided for a number of statutory exceptions to the PCA by explicitly vesting law enforcement authority either directly in a military branch (e.g., the Coast Guard) or indirectly by authorizing the President or another government agency to call for assistance in enforcing certain laws. There are several exceptions to the PCA. Some important exceptions include:

- Under the Prohibited Transaction Involving Nuclear Materials statute, if the Attorney General and the Secretary of Defense jointly determine that the Nation faces an emergency, the Secretary of Defense may authorize DOD personnel to provide direct support to civilian authorities to protect nuclear materials.
- The Insurrection Act governs the President's ability to deploy federal military forces and federalized National Guard forces within the United States to put down lawlessness, insurrection and rebellion with or without the consent of the governor depending on the situation.
- Under the Emergency Situation Involving Chemical or Biological Weapons of Mass Destruction statute, if the Attorney General and the Secretary of Defense jointly determine that the Nation faces an emergency involving an attack using CBRNE, the Secretary of Defense may provide resources and personnel to assist civil authorities regarding the enforcement of this statute.

7-25. Although not an exception to the prohibition against direct engagement in the execution of the law, the US military may assist State and local law enforcement agencies within limits. Federal law allows DOD personnel to provide "indirect" support to federal, state, and local law enforcement authorities. This includes passing information relevant to a violation of federal or state laws; providing equipment, supplies, spare parts, facilities; supplying sensors, protective clothing, antidotes, etc. appropriate for use in responding to a chemical and biological incident; training in the operation and maintenance of equipment; giving expert advice; and allowing personnel to maintain and operate certain detection and communications equipment. The Secretary of Defense or his designee exercises approval authority for this level of support.

THE INSURRECTION ACT

7-26. Congress has delegated authority to the President to call forth the military during an insurrection or civil disturbance. The Insurrection Act authorizes the President to use the military within the United States to restore order or enforce federal law after a major public emergency when requested by the state governor or when the President determines that the authorities of the state are incapable of maintaining public order. The President normally executes his authority by first issuing a proclamation ordering the dispersal of those obstructing the enforcement of the laws. The President may act unilaterally to suppress an insurrection or domestic violation against the authority of the United States without the request or authority of the state governor.

7-27. The Insurrection Act has been used to send the armed forces to quell civil disturbances a number of times during U.S. history, most recently during the 1992 Los Angeles riots and during Hurricane Hugo in 1989, during which widespread looting was in reported in Saint Croix, Virgin Islands. During the civil rights movement, a few governors of southern states attempted to defy federal law and court orders, necessitating action by the President of the United States under the "Insurrection Act". In 1957, President Eisenhower federalized the Arkansas National Guard at Central High School in Little Rock. In 1962, President Kennedy invoked the act when rioting broke out at the University of Mississippi in Oxford upon the admission of a black student. It was again invoked by President Kennedy on June 11, 1963 and September 10, 1963 to enforce court decrees opening public schools to blacks in the state of Alabama. The statue was also invoked by President Lyndon Johnson as a preemptive measure in 1965 to federalize National Guardsmen and deploy Federal military forces when the state officials in Alabama refused to protect participants during a civil rights march.

THE NATIONAL EMERGENCIES ACT

7-28. The National Emergencies Act, 1976 (Tile 50 U.S.C. Section 1601-1651). The "National Emergencies Act" or "national emergency powers" is a declaration invoked by the President of the United States and Congressional regulation of that emergency. Under the powers delegated by these statutes, the

President may seize property, organize and control the means of production, seize commodities, assign military forces aboard, institute martial law, seize and control all transportation and communication, regulate the operation of private enterprise, restrict travel, and, in a variety of ways, control the lives of United States citizens. Moreover, Congress may modify, rescind, or render dormant such delegated emergency authority.

MOBILIZATION OF THE RESERVE COMPONENT

7-29. When the President declares a major disaster or emergency under the Stafford Act, the Reserve Component may support the relief effort. Under title 10 USC, section 12304, the President has the authority to involuntarily call-up no more than 200,000 members of the Selected Reserve. There are specific limitations on mobilization of Army Reserve Units and National Guard for DSCA. This authority cannot be used for any civil disturbance or a DSCA event, except to respond to an emergency involving the use or threatened use of a weapon of mass destruction or a terrorist attack or threatened terrorist attack in the United States that results or could result in significant loss of life or property. Thus, the President may use this statutory authority to federalize and deploy the National Guard civil support teams of several states in the event of a CBRNE event in another state.

Note: Title USC 12304 (c) restricts the involuntary call up of Reserve Components. They may not be used under this authority for disaster response or to repress rebellions. The latter situation requires insurrection act authority.

7-30. Soldiers on inactive duty for training (Battle Assembly) or annual training may be available to perform a DSCA mission and may support relief operations during these training periods, subject to the approval of the Secretary of Defense or under immediate response authority. Under title 10 USC, section 10147(a)(2), a United States Army Reserve unit's annual training may be extended, upon the approval of United States Army Reserve Command, to continue to perform civil disaster relief assistance up to 29 days (including travel time).

RULES FOR THE USE OF FORCE

7-31. Soldiers deployed to a combat zone follow rules of engagement (ROE) established by the Secretary of Defense and adjusted for theater conditions by the joint force commander. Within the United States and its territories, Soldiers adhere to rules for the use of force (RUF). There are many similarities between them, for example in the inherent right of self-defense, but they differ in intent. Rules of engagement are by nature permissive measures intended to allow the maximum use of destructive combat power appropriate for the mission. Rules for the use of force are restrictive measures intended to allow only the minimum force necessary to accomplish the mission. The underlying principle is a "continuum of force"; a carefully graduated level of response determined by citizen behavior. The application of RUF also differs somewhat between National Guard forces and forces under DOD command. Figure 7-2, below, illustrates the continuum of force and the graduated response required of Soldiers. Civilian behavior, on the left, rises from "cooperative" (behaves as ordered by the Soldier) to potentially lethal confrontations. The corresponding military response is on the right.

7-32. When deployed, both National Guard and Regular Army forces will encounter situations where Soldiers and small unit leaders will have to know and adhere to the RUF. Therefore leaders at every level review the rules for the use of force with their subordinates as part of their pre-mission inspections and confirm that the Soldiers know the rules. Commanders should obtain and issue a RUF summary card to each Soldier prior to deploying from home station, and the small unit leaders should inspect to ensure that the Soldiers have it. The potentially confusing situations associated with infrastructure and property protection require particular attention from commanders. The Soldiers securing the facility or area must understand the RUF as they apply to that specific location. Above all, the unit leader must understand if, when, and how he or she may use lethal force to protect the facility.

REGULAR ARMY AND RESERVE FORCES

7-33. All Federal military military forces involved in DSCA must follow the standing rules for the use of force (SRUF) specified in CJCSI 3121.01B, Standing Rules of Engagement / Standing Rules for the Use of Force for US Forces. The Secretary of Defense approves SRUF, and the supported combatant commander incorporates them into plans and orders for different DSCA missions. The SRUF also apply to DOD forces performing a land homeland defense mission within U.S. territory. They apply to DOD forces, civilians, and contractors performing law enforcement and security duties at all DOD installations (and off-installation, while conducting official DOD security functions), unless otherwise modified by the Secretary of Defense. This includes protection of critical U.S. infrastructure both on and off DOD installations, DOD support during a civil disturbance, and DOD cooperation with federal, state, and local law enforcement authorities.

7-34. Prior to employment in DSCA, all Soldiers require training on the appropriate rules of the use of force. Training focuses upon the particular RUF in the OPLAN issued by the gaining joint force commander, but in the absence of the plan commanders should train according to the SRUF. Commanders should include a staff judge advocate to assist with leader training. SRUF cards should be issued to each person during training and personnel should not deploy until they are trained in SRUF. Supported combatant commanders submit a request for mission-specific rules for the use of force to the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff, for approval by the Secretary of Defense. Unit commanders may further restrict mission-specific RUF approved by the Secretary of Defense, but may not make them more permissive. Unit commanders notify their chain of command up through the Secretary of Defense of any additional restrictions (at all levels) they place on approved rules for the use of force. In time-critical situations, notification to the Secretary of Defense occurs concurrently with notification to the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff.

NATIONAL GUARD FORCES

7-35. State law governs RUF for National Guard forces in a state status. As such, each state must take into account its own specific criminal laws when drafting RUF. As an example, in the case of the airport security mission conducted by the National Guard following the September 11, 2001 terrorist attacks, there were over 50 different RUF used by the various states and territories conducting the mission. Although virtually identical, all of these RUF addressed similar subjects, the specific implementation of these subject areas varied from state to state because of their differing state and territory legal foundations.

7-36. Note that states that provide National Guard forces in SAD or Title 32 duty status to another state normally will adopt the RUF of the supported state for those forces while they deployed. The states involved will normally specify in their memorandum of agreement on the RUF the forces will follow prior to deployment. As an example, states worked through this process with Louisiana, Texas, and Mississippi following Hurricanes Katrina and Rita.

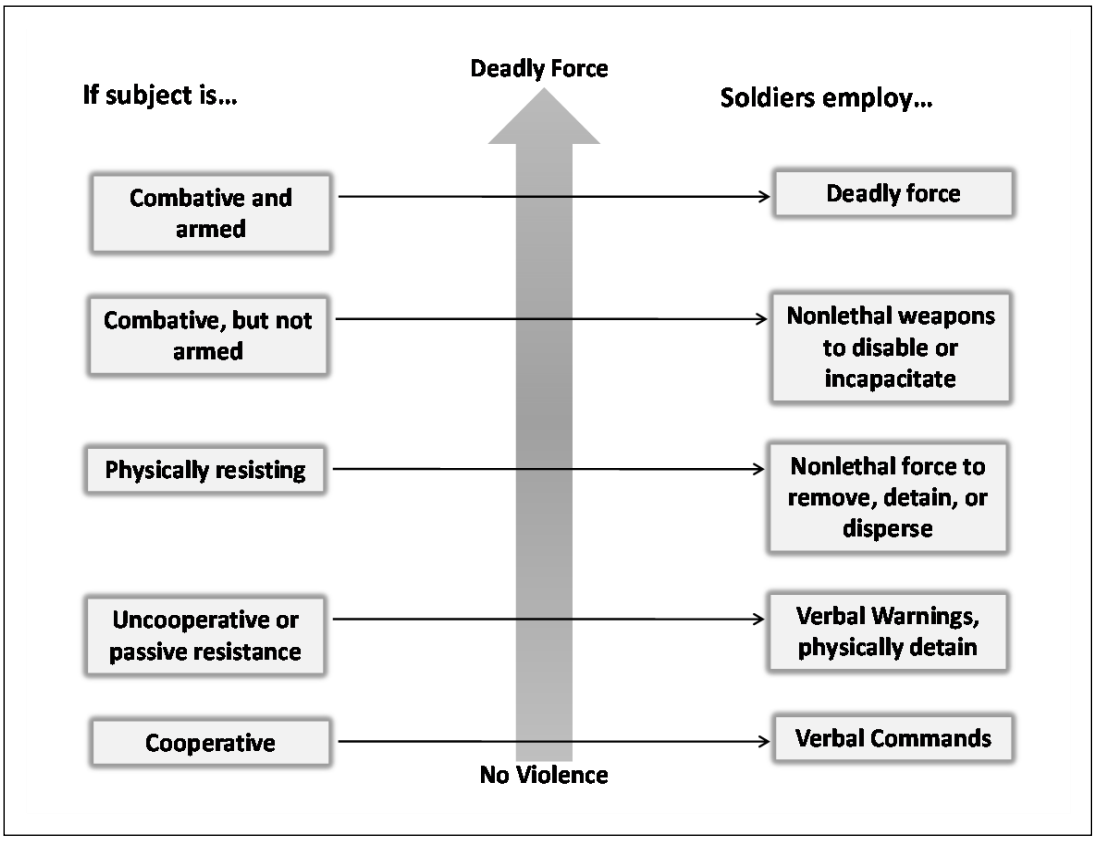


Figure 7-2. Illustration of the continuum of force

7-37. Note also that there is no single term used to describe state RUFs. Each state uses a different term. States may refer to them as Rules of Engagement, Rules for the Use of Force, Rules on the Use of Force, and Rules of Interaction. State RUF, as used in this document, is a generic term intended to refer to those rules of the 54 National Guard jurisdictions based upon the criminal laws of those individual states or territories. Each state prepares and issues a reference card for their rules of force. Figure 7-3 illustrates the type of card that a Guardsman might carry.

RESISTANCE LEVEL (LOW → HIGH)										
	Armed crowds (firearms)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
	Armed civilian persons and crowds (weapons except fire arms)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		
	Unarmed civilian (physically active)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		
	Threat or show of force	X	X	X	X	X				
	Verbal	X	X	X						
	Presence	X								
The recommended use of force and levels of resistance matrix is general in nature and does not cover all situations.		Arrival and command presence	Interview and dialogue	Verbal direction	Show of force	Use of formations	Riot control agents	Restraint devices	Non-lethal kinetic	Selected marksman and direct fire
Every Soldier and Airman has the right under law to use reasonable necessary force to defend himself or herself against violent and dangerous personal attacks.		SHOUT			SHOVE or SHOW A WEAPON		SHOOT (NON-LETHAL)			SHOOT (LETHAL)
		LOW → HIGH								
		RESPONSE LEVEL								

Figure 7-3. Example RUF Card carried by National Guard forces

INTELLIGENCE OVERSIGHT – RULES AND RESTRICTIONS

INTELLIGENCE OVERSIGHT

7-38. Intelligence oversight refers to the law and regulations that balance the Constitutional right of individuals to privacy with the need for the federal government to collect intelligence for national security purposes. Commanders need to understand that DOD directives and Service regulations restrict the military from collecting or possessing information on U.S. citizens, whether individuals and groups. (See table 7-1). Because of the difficulty of determining an individual's legal status, DOD imposes restrictions on collection and storage of any civilian personal indentifying information, or information on groups of citizens that make up a civilian organization (e.g., a church congregation or parish). This restricts Army units under DOD command from collecting or retaining information that identifies individuals with businesses, voluntary organizations, or civilian agencies, except as authorized by DOD directives and regulations.

Table 7-1. Individuals and groups protected by intelligence oversight rules

- U.S. citizens
- Lawful permanent resident aliens
- Unincorporated associations substantially composed of U.S. citizens or permanent resident aliens
- Corporations incorporated in the United States, except for those directed and controlled by a foreign government

7-39. Seven documents contain the core legal authorities for intelligence oversight (table 7-2). The restrictions put in place by intelligence oversight directly impact specific Army elements and organizations conducting authorized intelligence activities.

Table 7-2. Intelligence oversight authorities

- Constitution
- Executive Order 12333 (1981)
- National Security Act of 1947
- Foreign Intelligence Surveillance Act of 1978 (Public law 95-511)
- DODD 5240.1
- DOD 5240.1-R
- AR 381-10

7-40. Although units limit incident awareness and assessment (IAA) operations in order to safeguard the rights of U.S. citizens, they may receive and retain intelligence concerning foreign intelligence and counter-intelligence. Commanders and intelligence personnel require further authorization, however, to continue to retain information if a foreign group or non-citizen is within the United States. The best practice for commanders is to limit intelligence capabilities to support of situational awareness, assessment, and force protection unless they have a specified task to support civilian law enforcement, or national intelligence requirements.

7-41. Collection, retention, and further dissemination of law enforcement derived information intelligence are permissible only IAW DODD 5200.27, paragraphs 3, 4, and 5. For example, local police may know that a violent gang is active in a neighborhood affected in a disaster. The police may provide the Army unit with information on known locations used by the gang, peculiar paraphernalia associated with that gang, and the types of weapons and vehicles used by the gang members. Army units may only retain this information if there is a clear foreign intelligence or counterintelligence relationship or nexus. Military police or force protection units may only retain this information if these gangs constitute a direct and articulable threat to DOD missions, personnel, or resources, IAW DODD 5200.27, paragraphs 3, 4, and 5. The police may ask Soldiers to report any gang activity they observe through their chain of command to the police, although this information may only be acquired incidentally since DOD personnel may not directly

assist civilian police in developing criminal information. Such information may be reported by Army intelligence or military police and force protection units IAW DODD 5525.5, and DOD 5250.1-R, Procedure 12, and DODD 5200.27, paragraphs 3, 4, and 5. The unit may retain law enforcement intelligence provided by the police only IAW DODD 5525.5, and DOD 5250.1-R, Procedure 3, and DODD 5200.27, and log any information provided to the police under intelligence oversight or Sensitive Information Program standards, as long as no specifically identifying information is retained regarding the USPs collected on. Prior to any further dissemination, the staff should confirm with the SJA that they could distribute the information to subordinate units.

7-42. Airborne sensors and unmanned aircraft systems pose particular challenges for intelligence oversight. These systems provide commanders and civil authorities with powerful tools to help them assess the situation on the ground, particularly in the initial stages of response. However, information gathered by these systems can conflict with the intelligence oversight restrictions. For example, an Army helicopter equipped with forward looking infrared (FLIR) may be tasked to assess the stability of flood control constructed earlier in the day. During the course of the surveillance mission, the aircrew may spot a group of looters near the flooding. They may legally report this to their chain of command, without identifying the looters, IAW DOD 5240.1-R, Procedure 12. No identifying United States personal information may be retained by the Army unit. Pursuant to DOD 5240.1-R, Procedure 3, information of this nature may be incidentally retained for this purpose of relaying it to civilian law enforcement, after which time it must be destroyed, not later than 90 days after acquisition.

7-43. Airborne support for IAA traditionally required specific Secretary of Defense approval on a case-by-case basis. This type of support falls under incident awareness and assessment when used for civil support operations. The DSCA EXORD contains pre-approved, incident awareness and assessment support modules. Even though pre-approved, any use of the capabilities for any purpose other than that specified in the EXORD requires specific SECDEF approval. See Table 7-3.

Table 7-3. Current Incident awareness and assessment support modules

- Situational Awareness Module
- Damage Assessment Module
- Evacuation Monitoring Module
- Search and Rescue Module
- Dynamic Ground Coordination Team
- Hydrographic Survey Module
- CBRNE Assessment Module

SENSITIVE INFORMATION

7-44. Any information acquired on individual citizens and specific civilian organizations by military intelligence personnel and capabilities or by DOD law enforcement AT/FP personnel is extremely sensitive; its collection must be authorized; and all information collected must be provided directly to the supported law enforcement agency, unless separate exceptions exist permitting retention by the DOD. Otherwise, the military unit may not retain it. Violations are reported in accordance with DODD 5240.1-R, Procedure 15 for G2 and intelligence violations, and pursuant to DODD 5200.27 for improper PMO/AT/FP collection activities. Information dissemination may only occur IAW DODD 5525.5, and Encl. 2; DOD 5240.1-R, and DODD 5200.27. Any waivers or exceptions to these restrictions may only be granted by SECDEF or the Secretary of the Army.

7-45. Sensitive information includes criminal intelligence generated by civilian law enforcement agencies and passed to military units involved in DSCA; similarly it includes information and reports from Soldiers who witness what they believe to be criminal activity. Army forces may assist civil and military law enforcement through the dissemination of incidentally acquired information reasonably believed to reveal violations of federal, state or local law. Support must be consistent with DODD 5200.27, and 5240.1R which provides the following guidance: “Operations Related to Civil Disturbance. The Attorney General is the chief civilian officer in charge of coordinating all Federal Government activities relating to civil disturbances. Upon specific prior authorization of the Secretary of Defense or his designee, information

may be acquired that is essential to meet operational requirements flowing from the mission assigned to the Department of Defense to assist civil authorities in dealing with civil disturbances. Such authorization will only be granted when there is a distinct threat of a civil disturbance exceeding the law enforcement capabilities of State and local authorities."

7-46. Information developed by law enforcement agencies regarding non-DOD affiliated personnel during civil support operations is handled according to DODD 5200.27 and AR 381-13. Most of this information is law-enforcement derived. DOD policy limits collecting, reporting, processing, or storing law-enforcement-derived information on individuals or organizations not affiliated with DOD. Chapter 6 provides additional information for handling intelligence and information related to citizens. This is a major difference between stability and civil support operations. These directives and regulations ensure compliance with various laws intended to protect the rights of citizens and restrict military intelligence collection to external threats. Although not discussed here, similar restrictions limit the activities of National Guard forces operating in either state active duty or Title 32 status. Each state and territory has specific instructions governing the collection and processing of information on U.S. citizens, legal aliens, and illegal aliens. In general, these are not as restrictive as DODD and Service regulations applicable to federal military forces. The Adjutant General works with the state attorney general to clarify instructions pertaining to National Guard support of civil authorities.

7-47. There are legal restrictions on using information about individuals and organizations physically located within the United States and its possessions unless they are part of DOD (military, civilian, or contractor). The core regulations pertaining to these restrictions are DODD 5200.27 and AR 381-13. The restrictions on the use of law enforcement information govern the activities of all members of DOD (uniformed members and civilians). Like intelligence oversight program objectives, these restrictions are designed to ensure that the rights of, and information on, individuals or organizations not affiliated with DOD are protected unless such information is essential to the accomplishment of specified DOD missions. Any information collected on people not affiliated with DOD must pertain only to the protection of DOD functions and property, personnel security, or operations related to civil disturbance. Specific prohibitions regarding information acquisition are in table 7-4.

Table 7-4. Prohibitions on information acquisition

- Information acquired on individuals or organizations not affiliated with DOD may be restricted to that which is essential to the accomplishment of assigned DOD missions.
- No information shall be acquired about a person or organization solely because he or she lawfully advocates measures in opposition to government policy.
- Physical or electronic surveillance of federal, state, or local officials or of candidates for such offices is prohibited.
- Electronic surveillance of any individual or organization is prohibited, except as otherwise authorized by law (e.g., by warrant).
- Covert or otherwise deceptive surveillance or penetration of civilian organizations is strictly prohibited, unless specifically authorized by the Secretary of Defense (or designee).
- No DOD personnel shall be assigned to attend public or private meetings, demonstrations, or other similar activities for the purpose of acquiring information, without specific prior approval by the Secretary of Defense (or designee). However, an exception to this policy may be made by the local commander concerned, or higher authority, when, in his judgment, the threat is direct and immediate and time precludes obtaining prior approval. In each such case a report is made immediately to the Secretary of Defense (or designee). (While permissible IAW DODD 5200.27, paragraph 5.6, this is not recommended as it places the Commander at great legal risk.)
- Absolutely no computerized data banks shall be maintained relating to individuals or organizations not affiliated with the Department of Defense, unless specifically authorized by the Secretary of Defense (or designee).

SHARING INFORMATION

7-48. Because of these restrictions, commanders should ensure intelligence and sensitive information is not only lawfully collected or acquired, but is also is lawfully retained and disseminated. DOD operates under

the common Congressional mandate to ensure all agencies, including DOD, share homeland security and homeland defense information and intelligence with the proper authorities to identify threats rapidly and effectively. However, the process requires careful compliance with existing laws and regulations. The key is to understand these requirements, their inherent complexities, and the requirement to protect civil rights. Because information acquired during DSCA missions often refers to non-DOD personnel, commanders should require their subordinates to segregate and label electronic and paper files generated during a civil support mission. This facilitates efficient disposal of all information on non-DODD personnel and organizations following return to home station.

7-49. At the conclusion of any DSCA mission, commanders should direct their subordinates to inspect printed and electronically stored information acquired during the operation. There is a 90-day window for disposal of sensitive information related to non-DOD U.S. citizens (measured from the time of acquisition). The DODD states, "Information within the purview of this Directive, regardless of when acquired, shall be destroyed within 90 days unless its retention is required by law or unless its retention is specifically authorized under criteria established by the Secretary of Defense, or his designee." (DODD 5200.27) All staff sections and subordinate units should inspect their paper and electronic archives. The purpose of this inspection is to ensure that the unit has not inadvertently retained personal information on any citizen or civilian organization. In general, units should only retain operational records and documents related to expenditures. They should delete or destroy any information containing civilian names, phone numbers, addresses, or any other personal identifying information, even if acquired incidental to the mission (e.g. an aircraft manifest). Some information on non-DOD individuals and groups may be retained if it falls within the limits specified in AR 25–400–2. This states, "U.S. person information in intelligence files, databases, and repositories is retained in accordance with disposition criteria in AR 25–400–2. U.S. person information deleted from user electronic files, but remaining on servers or archived files, may remain until systems administrators purge or retire them in accordance with systems maintenance policies, AR 25–400–2, or Archivist of the United States disposition instructions."

7-50. In combat, many units reconfigure command post configurations and processes to create a "fusion center" for different types of intelligence, particularly in a counterinsurgency mission. Any information received from a variety of sources is funneled to the fusion center where it is analyzed and used in data bases. While a powerful tool in combat situations, units engaged in civil support operations should not use a fusion center to combine operational information with any sensitive information, including criminal intelligence or law enforcement information. "Fusing" information using combat intelligence techniques and procedures with information received from civilian police authorities on United States Persons or Persons not Affiliated with the DOD will invariably lead to violations of intelligence oversight and Sensitive Information restrictions. In a civil support operation, commanders and their staffs segregate any sensitive information into appropriate law enforcement channels and keep it there.

EXPLOSIVE ORDNANCE DISPOSAL SUPPORT

7-51. The primary responsibility for off-post explosive ordnance disposal lies with civil authorities. Installation commanders may provide assistance, if it involves DOD munitions or if assistance is required in the interest of preserving public safety.

ISOLATION AND QUARANTINE

7-52. *Isolation* refers to the separation and the restriction of movement of people who have a specific infectious illness, from healthy people in order to stop the spread of that illness. *Quarantine* refers to the separation and restriction of movement of people who are not yet ill, but who have been exposed to an infectious agent and are therefore potentially infectious. A geographical quarantine, known as a "*cordon sanitaire*," is a sanitary barrier erected around an area. Both isolation and quarantine may be conducted on a voluntary basis or compelled on a mandatory basis through legal authority.

7-53. The federal government has the authority to prevent the spread of disease into the United States (foreign) or between states and territories (interstate). The Department of Health and Human Services is the lead federal agency for isolation and quarantine. The Secretary of Health and Human Services has delegated to the Director of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention the authority to determine

whether measures taken by health authorities of any state are insufficient to prevent the spread of any communicable diseases from that state to another state. The Director of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention may take measures to prevent the spread of the disease interstate as he or she deems reasonably necessary.

7-54. The SHHS is authorized to accept from State and local authorities any assistance in the enforcement of Federal quarantine regulations that those authorities are able and willing to provide. The SHHS shall cooperate with and aid States in the enforcement of their quarantine and other health regulations. At the request of State authorities, the SHHS may extend temporary assistance not to exceed six months to a State in meeting health emergencies of a nature warranting Federal assistance. The SHHS may require reimbursement for any assistance provided as he may determine to be reasonable under the circumstances.

7-55. Apprehension, detention, examination, isolation and quarantine by Federal civil authorities are authorized for a period of time and in such a manner as may be reasonably necessary, but only for those "communicable" diseases that are set forth in executive orders issued from time to time by the President. The current order's (E.O. 13295 as amended by E.O. 13375) list includes cholera, diphtheria, infectious tuberculosis, influenza caused by novel or re-emergent influenza viruses, plague, severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS), smallpox, yellow fever, and viral hemorrhagic fevers.

7-56. There is only one Federal statute that permits DOD personnel to enforce quarantine laws under very narrow circumstances. Title 42 U.S.C. § 97 allows military commanders of any coastal fort or station to assist in the execution of State quarantines with respect to vessels arriving in or bound for the U.S. Otherwise, there have been several legislative proposals to expand this enforcement authority to other situations, but Congress has always refused to consider them. Consequently, absent a Presidential decision under his inherent authority or an exception to the Posse Comitatus Act (see Chapter 6), DOD forces cannot to used to enforce a quarantine or isolation.

7-57. Under Title 7 U.S.C. Sections 8301-8321, the Secretary of Agriculture, in order to protect the agriculture, environment, economy, and health and welfare of the population by preventing, detecting, controlling, and eradicating diseases and pests of animals, is authorized to cooperate with foreign countries, States, and other jurisdictions, or other persons, to prevent, regulate, and eliminate burdens on interstate commerce and foreign commerce. When DOD support is requested, it will be provided under the Economy Act.

LIABILITY

7-58. Under the Stafford Act (Title 42 USC, section 5148) for federal employees, and under the Federal Tort Claims Act (FTCA) (Title 28 USC, sections 1346(b) and 2671 through 2680) for all personnel, such personnel are immune from personal liability if they cause death, injury, or property damage as a result of their negligent acts (not intentional misconduct) while carrying out duties under the Stafford Act or within the scope of employment under the FTCA, respectively. As long as they are performing DSCA duties under a valid mission authority, they are protected. If a negligent act causing the death, injury, or property damage was committed outside the scope of their duty or employment, a Soldier or civilian employee may face personal liability, criminal prosecution, or both.

Chapter 8

Sustainment—Logistics and Personnel Services

This chapter covers the first two parts of sustainment; logistics and personnel support and human resources. The sustainment warfighting function is the related tasks and systems that provide support and services to ensure freedom of action, extend operational reach, and prolong endurance (FM 3-0). **Logistics** is the science of planning and carrying out the movement and maintenance of forces. **Personnel support and Human Resource Services** are those sustainment functions related to Soldiers' welfare, readiness, and quality of life.

8-1. Sustainment often determines the degree of success achieved by units conducting civil support. Effective sustainment, especially logistics, allows units to move into the JOA rapidly and commence operations quickly. Logistics capabilities determine to a significant extent the flexibility that the commander has to complete mission assignments quickly and accept other missions. The ground and rotary wing distribution capability of Army forces is often critical to alleviate suffering within the JOA.

8-2. Federal military and State military forces receive logistical and personnel support through their controlling commands. Federal military forces receive support through DOD channels, primarily through their parent Service channels, while National Guard units in Title 32 or state active duty receive support through their state National Guard supply agencies. Both Federal military and State military obtain consumables through contracting to the maximum extent feasible. In practice, commanders adjust logistics support to the situation. Recent operations have featured Federal military installations providing facilities and common user logistics to National Guard forces conducting civil support operations. In other instances, DOD may receive support such as basing and facilities from the National Guard through a memorandum of agreement coordinated between the Adjutant General, NGB, and DOD.

8-3. Federal statutes and DOD policy restrict DOD components from procuring or maintaining any supplies, materiel, or equipment exclusively for providing civil support; unless otherwise directed by the SECDEF. Federal military forces may lease or hand receipt real property such as vehicles, generators, etc., from other agencies or contracted vendors, but may not purchase these items without specific authority from DOD. All leased or borrowed real property must be returned to the owning agency, transferred to other Federal agencies as directed by the JFO, or returned to the vendor as part of the unit's transition and redeployment. The DCO can coordinate through the FCO for FEMA to acquire certain items for use by Federal military forces, and then hand receipt the items to the deployed forces. Such items must be returned to FEMA prior to redeployment.

Flooding in North Dakota

Recent floods in North Dakota provide an excellent example of unified effort in domestic disaster response. Severe flooding of the Red River in 2009 led to a multi-component response that featured innovative cooperation between all military forces in the disaster area. Grand Forks Air Force Base, a Regular Air Force installation located outside the flood plain near Grand Forks, ND, became the nexus for Federal and State response forces. The North Dakota National Guard provided most of the military forces, with assistance from DOD-tasked capabilities. Federal military force helicopters and unmanned aerial system providers used Grand Forks AFB for basing and sustainment. The North Dakota National Guard utilized the Air Force EPLO to coordinate for use of the AFB to bed down of NG aircraft. FEMA utilized the AFB to warehouse emergency supplies (cots, food, water, etc.). The National Guard used its working relationships with the Base Commander to accommodate all National Guard flood fighting forces, ground and air. During the flood fight...when the status of National Guard aircraft crews transitioned from Title 32 status to state active duty status, the issue of financial reimbursement surfaced. The North Dakota Adjutant General has since negotiated a MOU with the Air Force so that their National Guard has a "standing agreement" for use of the Grand Forks Air Force Base for any future floods in the region.

DEPLOYMENT OF FORCES

8-4. Deployment and redeployment of military forces to an incident requires planning and preparation that is similar to that used in deploying and redeploying from operations outside the United States. However, there are some notable differences. The most important difference is one of infrastructure – the United States has one of the most developed transportation infrastructures in the world. A robust and advanced communications network ties the transportation infrastructure together. In fact, in many ways, the commercial communications architecture exceeds the military's capability. For the deployment planner, this means that there are many options. There are also challenges. The most important of these is civilian control of the transportation system. All military movements using military transportation need coordination through military channels to civilian agencies such as the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) and state transportation authorities. In addition, movement of equipment and supplies needs to comply with any applicable federal and state transportation restrictions on oversized and hazardous materials. Movement to and from a disaster must comply with the same restrictions that apply to movement to and from a major training event; however, the priority accorded to the movement is much higher.

8-5. Deployment into the area of operations will be administrative in nature. Movement plans will be coordinated by the gaining headquarters through TRANSCOM and the installation transportation officers for Federal military forces. The state or territorial joint force headquarters will coordinate movement requirements for road movement with state transportation and highway patrol officials. The National Guard Bureau will also assist the supported and supporting Adjutants General with air movement of additional National Guard units when required.

DEPLOYMENT OF NATIONAL GUARD FORCES

8-6. Following an alert order, National Guard forces assemble at their designated marshalling point, which is normally their unit armory. Unit leaders conduct equipment issue and pre-movement inspections. As they do this, the state joint force headquarters coordinates for movement clearance and support through the state transportation officials for road movements of military convoys, since movement for most equipment will be by road. Advance parties and liaison elements normally self deploy in one or two vehicle elements, and draw fuel using state credit cards or state agency facilities coordinated by the JFHQ-STATE-State. When required, the JFHQ-STATE-State directs movement of convoy support detachments (maintenance, fuel, and possible medical) to support areas coordinated with state transportation officials through that state's ESF.

8-7. Reception, staging and onward movement of units normally occurs at a designated location that the JFHQ-S and state JTF commanders have selected as the base area for the support. This may be a National Guard air base, state maintenance facility, or contracted property. As they reach their assembly areas, unit commanders report their status and coordinate for logistical support and forward operating bases as required. They then self-deploy into their areas of operations and conduct civil support operations.

8-8. Air assets normally self-deploy to the area of operations using pre-established procedures managed by that state's Air National Guard. All air movement remains under the airspace control authority of the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA). Normally, fixed and rotary wing aircraft will deploy to the nearest Air National Guard facility; if that lies beyond supportable range, the JFHQ-S will contract for space and facilities at a commercial airport. The third option bases Air and Army Guard helicopters at a field location contracted through the state or local emergency mangers.

8-9. Emergency management assistance units from other states may move by either ground or air assets. When moved by Air National Guard assets, the supported state coordinates with the supporting state and the National Guard Bureau for necessary air movement. The National Guard Bureau coordinates with USTRANSCOM and the Joint Staff to ensure that Air Guard support to DOD operations continues. When moving by ground, the providing JFHQ-STATE coordinates with state transportation officials from the point of departure through any adjoining states until the supporting unit moves into the supported state, at which time the unit passes to the movement control of the gaining state.

DEPLOYMENT OF DOD FORCES

8-10. Deployment of federal military assets to the area of operations in the continental United States is under the direction of the supported command (USNORTHCOM). USNORTHCOM determines deployment priorities and movement timelines in conjunction with its Service Components or JTF. United States Transportation Command (USTRANSCOM) executes the deployment plan and sources required transportation assets to move the required force. The joint movement control center (JMCC) coordinates with the state emergency operations center for necessary road clearances.

8-11. USTRANSCOM schedules movement by military aircraft and contracted commercial aircraft according to priorities established by the supported combatant commander. The supporting commander, normally JFCOM, provides support to the APOE. Upon arrival at the APOD, the gaining commander conducts reception, staging, onward movement, and integration (RSOI) activities necessary to get the unit into the JOA. Competing worldwide strategic lift requirements, particularly during war, may prevent rapid air movement for the main body. Therefore, planners give priority movement to critical command and control elements necessary to support RSOI and initial phases of operations.

8-12. Road movement to the JOA is often the most effective means to move personnel and equipment.. Military convoys are coordinated between the deploying unit's installation and the defense movement coordinators in states where the convoys originate. A representative from the supporting BSIs Installation transportation Office (ISO), in conjunction with a Movement Control Team (MCT) coordinates military movements with a state's transportation, emergency management, and law enforcement officials. USTRANSCOM and USNORTHCOM coordinate liaison officers for more complex movements. National Guard forces coordinate their movements with the JFHQ-S and state officials. The latter serve as the nexus to coordinate with TRANSCOM and state law enforcement for movements. Unit staffs should coordinate with their parent commands and USARNORTH for movement support.

8-13. Managing RSOI in the early stages of a disaster response requires flexible leaders and patience. Prior planning provides a framework for responding to contingencies, but cannot capture all situations requiring military support of civil authorities. Commanders need to be flexible and innovative to meet the demands of civil support operations. An essential component of contingency operations is effective command and control. As soon as possible following alert, the deploying unit headquarters should deploy an early entry command post to the designated RSOI location, and liaison officers to the gaining headquarters. Liaison personnel should have cell phones, laptops, and unit information. The early entry command post should have tactical communications as well as commercial communications. The deploying command post reports to the RSOI commander at the APOD and coordinates for the reception of units.

8-14. During deployment/redeployment planning, units should consider the use of commercial assets in an effort to minimize overall transportation costs. The servicing installation transportation office in the area of operations procures the commercial transportation, prepare and issue shipping documentation, and monitors carrier performance.

LOGISTICS IN CIVIL SUPPORT

8-15. Flexible application of logistical capabilities is an essential consideration for many civil support missions. The principal logistics function of the military during disaster response is to move, maintain and secure logistical capabilities necessary for the response effort.. The characteristics of the JOA must be taken into consideration by all levels of command in order to properly assist with the response effort and support military personnel. The military must be dependable in their ability to respond and provide assistance in the most austere and damaged environments. The unit will deploy with basic sustainment (food, water, and fuel), and coordinate with the higher headquarters for resupply. As the situation improves, contracted support plays a greater role within the affected area. The capability of the civilian population to provide for logistics decreases or eliminates the military requirement.. In other missions, the supported state or federal agency may provide the full range of support, with easy access to amenities and rapid response to requirements. This might be the case during planned support to law enforcement agencies. The Army possesses significant logistical capability and is able to respond with its organic assets to assist civil support operations. Additionally, the Army is able to leverage other component and Service installations in order to support operations.

8-16. Army units are expected to be self-sustaining during any civil support operations and individual units should deploy with their sustainment requirements for the initial phase of operations, usually 72 hours, unless prior coordination has been made and is in place. Units should arrive at the location of an incident with enough sustainment to conduct operations for at least 72 hours. This eases the sustainment requirements on the gaining headquarters during any rapid response situation. After the 72 hours, Army units must utilize the unit supply system, government purchase card or military contracting officers in order to provide sustained internal support that incorporates all classes of supply. Except in rare circumstances, the need for Class V (ammunition) is not required. Any deployment order will specify whether or not ammunition is required for the specific mission. Except in extreme circumstances, ammunition supply is not a factor; units deploy with small arms and ammunition as specified by their gaining headquarters and normally return with every round they took with them. In most cases, National Guard forces under state control receive sustainment from National Guard installations and supply centers, while Federal military forces draw from DOD resources and installations. However, this may not always be the case.

8-17. The DCO serves as a key link between the primary agency and JFO, state agencies, and the combatant commands providing forces and support. Activities within the JFO or regional coordination center (RCC) involve more than requests for DOD support. The DCO also coordinates for support to DOD forces supporting incident response. For example, if Federal military forces require additional radios to communicate with civilian responders, the DCO may coordinate a loan through FEMA or other agency resources. The DCO coordinates through the logistics section at the JFO, which includes ground support, communications, supply, facilities, and medical support units for additional support available through FEMA and other agencies.

LOGISTICS SUPPORT PROVIDED BY FEMA

8-18. For any disaster response, FEMA is responsible for the overall coordination of logistical support at the federal, interagency level during a disaster response operation. At this level, commercial, private, government, volunteer, and faith based organizations work with FEMA using coordination guidance contained within the National Incident Management System (NIMS) and the National Response Framework (NRF). Note that some military organizations involved in logistical support may operate outside the Federal military JTF chain of command. For example, the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE), as an agency, draws directly upon its own and federal resources in coordination with FEMA. The Corps of Engineers will also support National Guard and Regular Army units when tasked, and may submit requests for assistance through the JFO to the Federal military or National Guard JTF.

8-19. In a disaster response, FEMA coordinates and provides most of the sustainment needed by responding organizations and victims. Army forces may provide some support to disaster victims as part of a mission assignment. Officials from FEMA coordinate and sustain the majority of these people using the resources of the Federal government and agencies such as the Red Cross. FEMA has a number of logistic centers (see figure 8-1) that support responding agencies. These sites provide the resources required for FEMA to manage any emergency. The sites are located near Atlanta, GA; Berryville, VA; Cumberland,

MD; Ft. Worth, TX; Frederick, MD; Kansas City, MO; and San Jose, CA. The three offshore storage sites are located in Guam, Hawaii, and Puerto Rico. With access to 50 additional cache storage facilities used by FEMA's National Disaster Medical System to store medical supplies and equipment across the country and 252 Pre-Positioned Disaster Supplies containers located in logistical centers and 14 states, FEMA can expedite the shipment of emergency commodities to any disaster in the U.S. or its territories.

8-20. Most of the centers provide resources such as blankets, meals ready-to-eat (MRE's) and emergency meals, bottled water, generators, cots, blankets, tarps, and Blue Roof sheeting all of which can be distributed through state and county distribution points in time of need. In addition to the equipment listed above, FEMA has two centers that provide specialized resources: the Berryville, VA, center stores and maintains computer equipment and electronics mainly for disaster field office operations and the Frederick, MD, center provides emergency medical supplies and equipment for emergency medical operations in affected areas. FEMA supports actual emergencies regularly from these centers. FEMA also includes logistical planning as part of its national exercise program involving commercial, private, government, volunteer, and faith-based organizations.

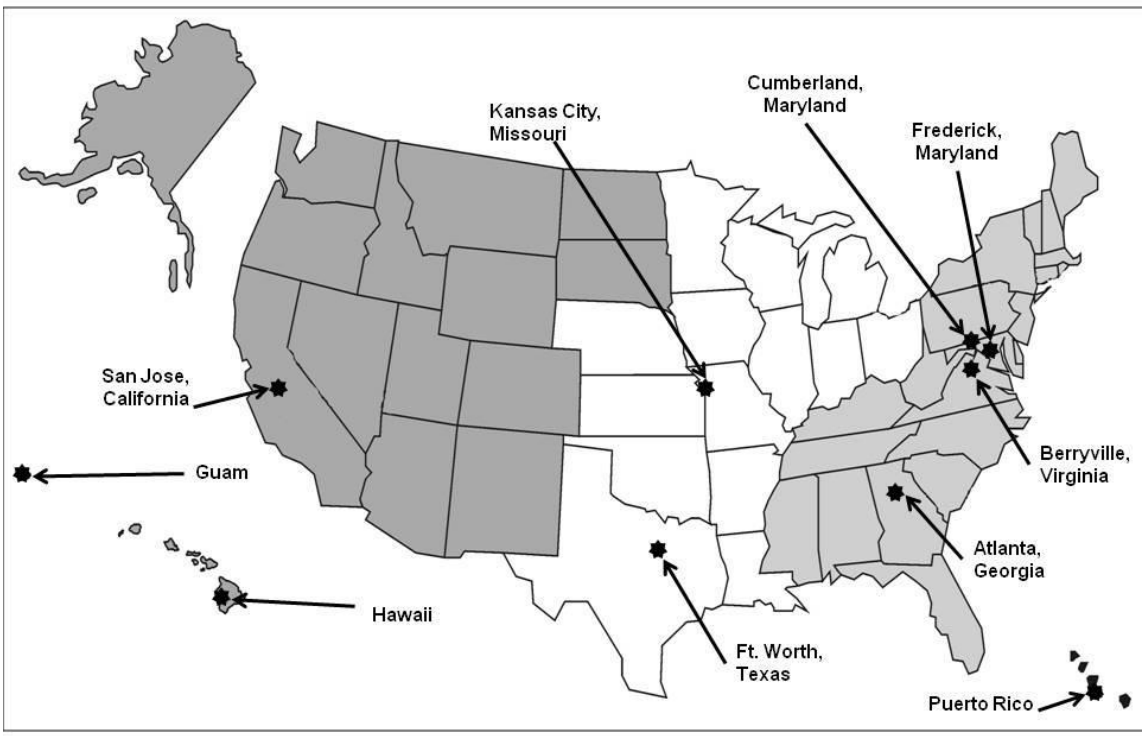


Figure 8-1. FEMA logistics centers

8-21. Federal support under ESF #5 (Emergency Management) includes staffing and operating the Regional Response Coordination Center (RRCC) and the Joint Field Office (JFO). FEMA personnel coordinate the establishment of site facilities, supplies and equipment to support federal activities, but may coordinate with the military for any identified shortfalls in their capability.

8-22. The integration of the DCO and DCE with FEMA into normal operations helps facilitate logistical coordination during emergencies. When an incident occurs, the DCO and the DCE coordinate with the resource staff in the Joint Field Office (JFO).Each agency working in the JFO is responsible for documenting the costs of its own normal activities and response efforts.

NATIONAL GUARD LOGISTICS

8-23. National Guard forces continue to be supported through their state's military infrastructure for military specific support. Initially, this support comes from unit armories, but the state JFHQ shifts bulk resupply of military items to resources maintained at the state level, normally at that state's military

training facilities. The Adjutant General and JTF Commander work through the state emergency manager and state coordinating officer to establish contracts for bulk consumables, temporary facilities and commercially available services such as laundry and sanitation support (portable latrines). The JTF staff coordinates with unit commanders, local officials and state contracting representatives to obtain facilities capable of providing field services or submits a request for forces (RFF) for Army field service units. For example, the Army Corps of Engineers may respond to a National Guard request for specialized engineering equipment.

8-24. Out of state National Guard forces receive logistical support from the supported state. Because different state units may have different equipment, the supporting state headquarters remains prepared to respond to requests for assistance from the supported state.

ARMY SERVICE COMPONENT - USARNORTH

8-25. The Primary ASCC for DSCA is USARNORTH, providing logistical support within the continental states, Alaska, Puerto Rico and Virgin Islands. Although US Army Pacific Command (ARPAC), located in Hawaii, has operational control of the Federal military units located in Alaska, there are significant geographical barriers that have led to the implementation of JTF Alaska. JTF Alaska supports DSCA operations within Alaska and is a subordinate command of NORTHCOM.

8-26. USARNORTH makes extensive use of both DOD and Federal capabilities to sustain deployed Army forces. The Army Service Component Command (ASCC) supports all deployed Federal Army forces and provides common user logistics to other Federal military forces as directed by the Combatant Commander. The ASCC works with the deployed JTF and the DCO to coordinate for FEMA support, usually through a series of federally negotiated contracts. The keys to success are flexibility and coordination between logisticians from each Service element. Logisticians must keep in mind not only mission accomplishment, but also good stewardship of taxpayer dollars when determining the most effective and efficient method of support. As the ASCC, USARNORTH coordinates with the Army staff, Army commands, and direct reporting units for Service specific logistical support. Figure 8-2, below, shows the sustainment structure that USARNORTH may use to support a large incident.

8-27. The primary means for providing ASCC-level support is a dedicated theater sustainment command (TSC). The TSC serves as the senior logistics command in the JOA. This support may include:

- Establishment of lines of communication
- Joint reception, staging, onward movement, and integration of deploying forces as required
- Transportation and movement control of military and displaced civilian personnel, equipment, and supplies
- Distribution sources for water, food, ice, and other classes of supply
- Establishment of temporary shelter
- Managing staging and throughput
- Managing fuel support and distribution
- Managing medical and veterinary support
- Managing rotary and ground ambulance support
- Mortuary affairs, explosive ordnance disposal
- Vertical and horizontal engineering support
- Military police support

8-28. One of the most important functions of the ASCC is coordination with the Army Commands and Direct Reporting Units (DRU) that lie outside the combatant commander's control. The ASCC provides the direct linkage to Department of the Army capabilities. For example, the ASCC coordinates with Army Installation Management Command (IMCOM) for support provided by Army installations. Other support is coordinated through the Army Material Command (AMC) for distribution directly from strategic stocks to deployed Army forces.

8-29. Not all DSCA involves large forces. The ASCC monitors the sustainment of small detachments providing civil support. The DCO exercise tactical control of a small detachment deployed to an incident

site, and will normally coordinate for any logistics, human resources support, and medical support that is not available from the parent installation or through the primary agency. While the situation may vary, the ASCC manages sustainment for company-sized formations and larger (approximately 250 personnel or more).

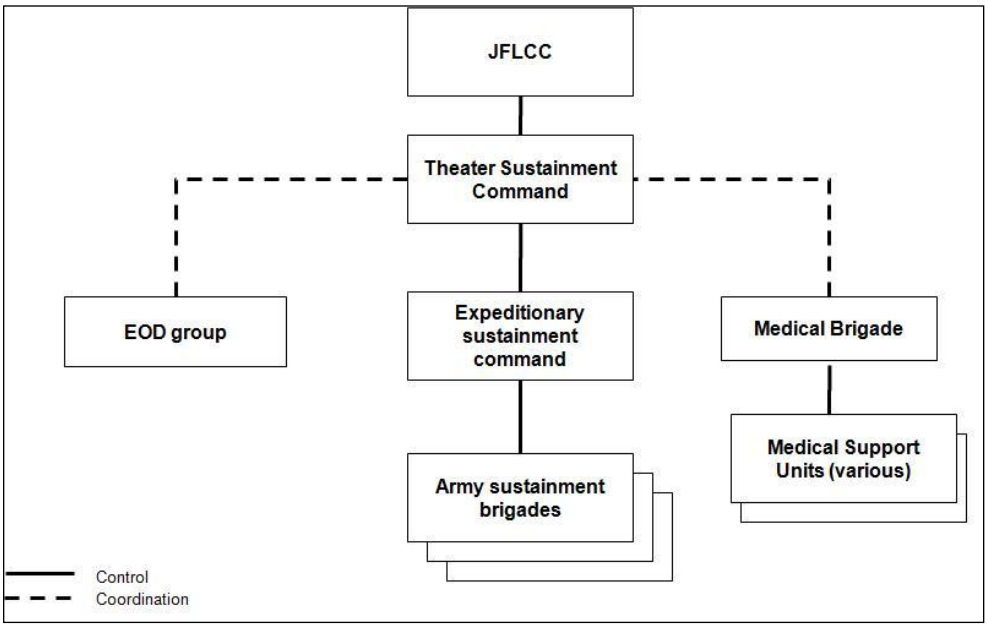


Figure 8-2. USARNORTH sustainment structure

STRATEGIC AND NATIONAL PROVIDERS

8-30. Several organizations assist in sustainment activities. When requested, they can provide an LNO or potentially a team to provide support to the deployed joint task force. Some of the providers are DLA, AMC, TRANSCOM, and AAFES. Additionally, the JFLCC has a habitual relationship with 20th Support group to provide EOD and Dog teams, 412th Contracting Support Brigade to provide contingency contracting teams, and 3rd Human Resources Command to provide personnel services. The Defense contracting agency and General Services Administration (GSA) also provide support.

CATASTROPHIC INCIDENT RESPONSE

8-31. USARNORTH plans for sustainment in Phase 0 and provides sustainment in the next five phases. Phase I involves coordinating and preparing for efficient flow of USARNORTH forces and materiel. Phase II includes establishment of logistic operations. Phase III involves the deployment of USARNORTH forces and materiel. Phase IV involves on the ground sustainment operations. Phase V involves transition of sustainment operations to appropriate local, state, and federal level organizations.

8-32. During Phase I, the theater sustainment command and its expeditionary sustainment commands plan and prepare for JRSOI of deploying Federal military forces. During the initial phases of any response, the DCO estimates the required capabilities and USARNORTH assesses the sustainment needed. A USNORTHCOM assessment team (NSAT) may help assess federal and DOD sustainment requirements. Actions are shown in table 8-1:

Table 8-1. USARNORTH Phase I sustainment actions

• Gather information • Assess logistical support requirements • Assess required logistical capabilities • Identify unit capabilities required to support ground forces.

8-33. Phase II is the staging phase in preparation for deployment of sustainment of command and control elements capable of opening the theater for the arrival of federal military assets. The JFLC commander, in coordination with the FCO, prioritizes essential units and equipment required to support of life saving operations. Phase II actions are in Table 8-2.

Table 8-2. USARNORTH Phase II sustainment actions

- Plan and prepare for operation of distribution networks, base support installations, and support of displaced civilian centers. (State National Guard units prepare based on guidance from their state chain of command while Regular Army units respond to approved mission assignments
- Plan and prepare to support sustainment of decontamination operations in support of a chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear, and high-yield explosives (CBRNE) event
- Augment logistical command and control activities capability based upon mission analysis
- Establish JRSOI C2, facilities, and procedures
- Monitor force readiness of units
- Conduct health service review
- Review and adjust existing support contracts
- USARNORTH coordinates with the State to identify key distribution nodes in the affected region and alternate logistic routes.
- Identify status of key distribution nodes in the affected region. Identify alternate logistic routes
- Develop options for providing sustainment support to active component forces
- Coordinate sustainment actions with state National Guard forces, FEMA, General Services Administration, and other organizations to help optimize sustainment operations.

8-34. Phase III involves continuous support to deployed forces. During this phase, USARNORTH serving in its role as both JFLCC and ASCC ensures that logistical support is as efficient as possible. When authorized by the Secretary of Defense and the TAG, JTF commanders of both components develop common user logistics (CUL) agreements and accounting procedures. In this phase, USARNORTH may also support ESF as determined by the mission assignment process. Phase III actions are in table 8-3.

Table 8-3. USARNORTH Phase III sustainment actions

- Manage sustainment, establish and maintain a distribution network, manage the base installation sustainment as directed in mission assignments
- Support decontamination operations
- Conduct JRSOI
- Support force protection requirements of DOD Title10 forces as required and authorized
- Support force readiness
- Plan and execute force rotation due to exposure to chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear, and high-yield explosives (CBRNE) elements

8-35. Phase IV encompasses preparation and planning for transition to civilian support throughout the JOA. This requires assessment at the JFO of logistical support requirements for the deployed forces and continuing support needed for the civilian agencies once military assets redeploy. Phase V involves a staged execution of sustainment to appropriate local, state, federal, or civilian organizations. USARNORTH does this in close coordination with the unified coordination group and specific ESF managers. Phase IV actions are shown in table 8-4.

8-36. When the mission nears completion, sustainment units continue to support other units awaiting redeployment. Military support is not curtailed before civil authorities assume the function. Transportation is arranged through the appropriate movement control organization in accordance with established priorities.

Table 8-4. USARNORTH phase IV sustainment actions

• Initiate logistical planning for redeployment and reset requirements • Manage sustainment operations, distribution networks, and support installations in preparation to return to civilian control • Remove debris • Decontaminate personnel and equipment • Distribute fuel • Coordinate, as required, actions for procurement, production, and distribution of water • Support dislocated civilian operations • Prepare for force redeployment

BASE SUPPORT INSTALLATION

8-37. A crucial early decision is selection of the BSI. BSI selection is a seven step process that follows guidance given by the DOD "manual for Civil Emergencies" (DOD Manual 3025.1-M) and the Joint Chiefs of Staff (JCS) DSCA Standing Execution Order (EXORD) (08 June 2007). Support provided by the designated BSI may include, but is not limited to: general supply and maintenance, transportation, contracting, communications, personnel and equipment reception/staging, facilities, civil engineering, health, and other life support services to include billeting, food service, and force protection. The preferred location for the BSI is at a DOD installation with these capabilities:

- Close proximity to the incident site (less than 100 miles)
- Close proximity to a major airfield that is suitable for use as an APOD
- Life support services
- Open and covered areas for staging of supplies and equipment
- Adequate transportation infrastructure to and from incident site
- Communications infrastructure sufficient to meet the surge of forces arriving in the area.

8-38. If a designated BSI is a major installation within a reasonable travel time from the incident area, then that installation will augment JTF common user support to all responding forces to the greatest extent possible. This will enable the responding JTF to focus on the civil support mission. The installation staff should be able to assume responsibility for the majority of the joint reception and staging mission. Acting in the role of ASCC, USARNORTH coordinates for Army specific support through the BSI.

8-39. Figure 8-3 illustrates the selection process for DSCA Missions. BSI selection is a seven step sequence to allow for the selection of the best possible location to provide support. The seven steps include:

- Data Collection and Coordination. The regional DCO is the primary contact with installations in the affected area. Along with the DCE, SEPLO and potentially a BSI recon team from ARNORTH, the DCO will collect data on installation capabilities to make a recommendation for site selection.
- Data Reporting. Installation Commanders will be given USARNORTHs BSI Handbook along with the NORTHCOM BSI selection criteria. This data will be reported to ARNORTH, consolidated and sent to NORTHCOM. At this time any capabilities and shortfalls will be identified.
- Evaluation. Each situation is different and BSIs will be evaluated on their ability to provide the various forms of support listed above.

- Incident Response. After the CDR USNORTHCOM designates the Joint Area of Operations (JOA), dialogue between USARNORTH staff, DCO, IMCOM, and prospective BSI locations will start to determine the exact nature of the capabilities that will be required or requested.
- BSI Nomination. USARNORTH considers input from IMCOM, regional DCO, and installation staff prior to submitting BSI nomination to NORTHCOM.
- BSI Designation. For Homeland Defense (HLD) missions, the SECDEF designates primary and alternate BSIs. In DSCA operations, CDRUSNORTHCOM can designate BSIs after conferring with and reaching an agreement with the owning Service Component. If an agreement cannot be reached the SECDEF will make the final decision
- BSI Build-up and Sustainment. When BSI selection is approved, IMCOM will provide ARNORTH with the installation capabilities and shortfalls. This allows the USARNORTH staff to submit request for forces (RFF) to augment the BSI and ensure mission success.

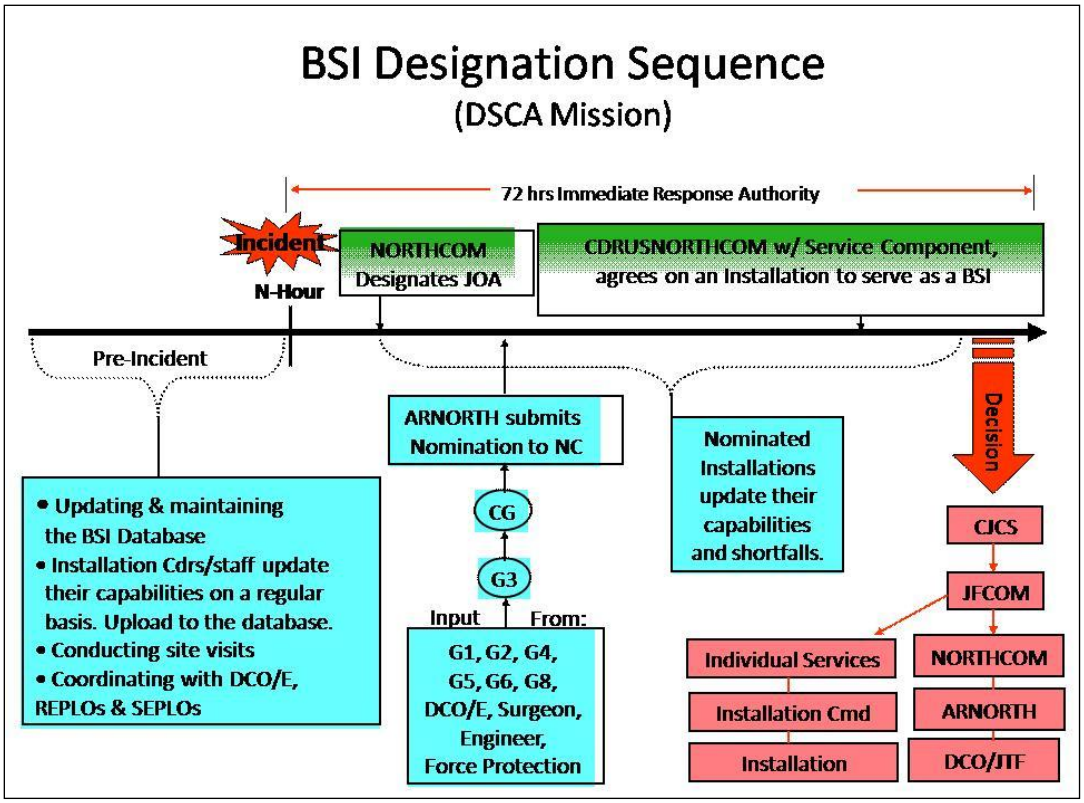


Figure 8-3. Example BSI selection

8-40. Depending on the location of the catastrophic incident, there may not be a major DOD installation close enough to support the operation. In these instances, the JTF will complete an estimate of the situation and request either contract support or submit requests for forces in order to mitigate logistic capability shortfalls due to limited personnel, equipment, facilities, or interrupted or extended lines of communications between the BSI and those DOD elements operating at the incident site. In some cases, the Secretary of Defense may authorize USNORTHCOM to coordinate to use a state military installation either as the BSI or as a forward operating base. Commander, USNORTHCOM can designate BSI(s) after conferring with and reaching an agreement with the owning Service Component (Detailed information is found in USNORTHCOM BSI Handbook).

LOGISTICS CONSIDERATIONS

8-41. There are several unique aspects to logistical support during DSCA. By understanding these differences and applying their initiative, logisticians can provide effective and efficient support to not only

their Soldiers, but also the supported civilian population. The major advantages between operations conducted inside the United States and those on foreign soil include:

- The availability of rapid and reliable commercial transportation;
- Robust communications grid;
- The availability of professional contracted support for most logistical requirements;
- Minimal language barriers;
- Honest public officials;
- An affectionate population;
- Straightforward access to the Nation's military support organizations (DLA, AMC, TRADOC, etc.) and installations, including home stations;
- Potable water and safe food are readily available anywhere there is electrical power (outside a disaster area).

8-42. The first difference that logisticians and commanders need to understand are legal requirements concerning movement, handling, and storage of hazardous materials, including fuel, ammunition, and many other seemingly mundane support items. The environment matters and environmental regulations apply to all DSCA. Local installation transportation officer's and movement control team personnel can also provide specific guidance on what may be required for military drivers to haul hazardous cargo. The Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and other agencies can provide guidance when requested. Additionally, commanders should also consider any specific environmental concerns for their particular operating area and noise abatement requirements for any space they occupy.

8-43. Fuel is readily available throughout the United States, barring temporary disruption of a power grid. However, it is not military grade JP-8. Tactical vehicles will require military refueling support, or a command waiver to use commercially available diesel fuel with attendant maintenance requirement upon redeployment. Military aircraft can normally obtain fuel from commercial or military airfields. The DLA representative can coordinate with the Defense Energy Supply Center (DESC). The DESC coordinates for direct bulk fuel delivery for ground or aviation operations to established BSIs or airfields. Units should plan to deploy with sufficient tankers to support the tactical vehicles, and coordinate with the JTF for continued support. Any refueling operations need to comply with environmental restrictions, and NCOs need to emphasis safe handling and cleanup procedures.

8-44. Rental equipment and vehicles go quickly near a disaster. If the mission depends upon additional commercial equipment, units should be prepared to obtain it through providers well outside the disaster areas.

8-45. Units should prepare to deploy items and personnel capable of executing a field arms room. The decision to deploy with weapons rests with the Secretary of Defense for Federal military forces and with The Adjutant General for National Guard. Unfortunately, many civil support operations involve aspects of law enforcement and infrastructure protection that may require arming some Soldiers. Depending on proximity to home station or armory, plan to establish a field arms room for at least some of the deploying force.

8-46. Sustainment officers should work closely with the JTF to obtain adequate bath and laundry support for the force. One of the lessons of Hurricane Katrina is that bath and laundry is not just a morale booster, it is a critical force protection measure. For planning purposes, contract or deploy sufficient resources to allow Soldiers to have a clean uniform and shower daily. Medical, Food Service, and Mortuary Affairs personnel receive priority for showers and laundry in order to conduct their jobs on a day to day basis Commanders should ensure that their Soldiers involved in disaster response have ready access to replacement uniforms or separate work clothing. Hurricane Katrina and other disasters indicate that expensive ACUs need replacement after exposure to filthy water, various contaminates, and jagged debris.

CONTRACTING

8-47. Operational contract support can be an effective and efficient method of rapidly augmenting organic military support capabilities in civil support actions if properly planned and executed. Contracted support can be especially viable as a source of BSI augmentation support. Contracted support in civil support

operations may include all classes of supply, labor, mortuary affairs, laundry, showers, food service, sanitation, billeting, transportation, maintenance and repair, access to communications networks, temporary real property leasing, and construction. And while lessons learned from recent major DSCA operations clearly indicate contracting of supplies and services was an important source of support for these operations, there are some key limiting factors that must be kept in mind when planning for these types of operations. These limiting factors include:

- Limited pre-planning opportunities.
- Very short time requirement.
- Very limited availability of commercial supplies and services within or near the joint operational area.
- Numerous federal, state and local agencies competing for locally available commercial capabilities.
- Low priority to the military for any locally available commercial support.

8-48. In most DSCA missions, the Army will be the lead Service responsible to plan and execute contract support to the joint force. In these operations, the ASCC will utilize their aligned contracting support brigade (CSB) to perform this task. This AMC unit has unique capabilities to plan for and integrate contract support. A related CSB mission is to ensure any expansion of existing contracts or development of new contracts does not adversely impact other federal, state, or local responder contracting efforts. At the tactical level, the CSB contracting battalions and teams, taking advantage of organic BSI contracting support capabilities, award contracts, provide contract oversight, and assist in the overall integration of contract support effort. Additionally, the Army may also utilize the USAMC's Logistic Civil Augmentation Program and the US Army Corps of Engineers contract support capabilities as necessary.

8-49. Commanders should understand DOD is not normally the lead contracting authority in DSCA missions. In most of these operations, FEMA will be the lead common contract coordination effort between state agencies, local agencies, National Guard forces operating under Title 32 authority, and Federal military forces. This centralized coordination effort is essential since numerous contracting agencies will be competing for the same locally available resources. Additionally, in DSCA operations priority of commercial support will normally be to local emergency services (e.g. hospitals, fire and police services, etc.) displaced civilians, and support of mobilized/deployed military forces, respectively. Because of this lower priority of support and the often short-term nature of DSCA missions, Army forces operating inside a disaster zone must be prepared to deploy with their full MTO&E sustainment capabilities and to live in field conditions. Deployed Army forces also must be prepared to provide sufficient trained contracting officer representatives (COR) with the required subject matter expertise to assist in contract oversight.

8-50. The key to successful contracting actions is proper operational contract support planning, requirements development and as well as having a adequate contracting capabilities available to support the force. Failure to accomplish these critical operational contract support related tasks may lead to costly delays of materiel and services during civil support operations. Supported units must also be prepared to assist in contract oversight through the nomination of qualified contracting officer representatives and receiving officials as required by the responsible contracting officer.

NEGOTIATED SUPPORT

8-51. In some cases, civil agencies and organizations may have enough logistical resources to support not only themselves but also Army personnel providing assistance. Such support is negotiated on a case-by-case basis with the appropriate civil authorities. Memorandums of agreement are established before an operation to reduce time of negotiation.

SUPPORT FROM OTHER ORGANIZATIONS

8-52. General Services Administration provides support to civil organizations. General Services Administration provides general supplies and services common to organizations of the federal government. General Services Administration may support DOD through its procurement and leasing service capability for supplies, office supplies and furniture, real property, service contracts, transportation, machine and hand tools, photo supplies, various types of batteries, and numerous other items. Commanders utilize the normal

procurement process. However, military forces should not expect to be supported from other agencies providing assistance during DSCA operations

8-53. The Defense Logistics Agency provides common user logistics and services used by the military when conducting civil support operations. Normally the classes of supply may consist of class I (subsistence, bottled water, etc.), class II (clothing, textiles, tents, etc), class III (packaged and bulk fuel), class IV (construction and barrier material), class VIII Medical, Dental and Veterinary Supplies/Equipment and blood products, and class IX (spare parts). Services may include storage, distribution, disposal, document automation and printing production. Normally, a Defense Logistics Agency response team will collocate with various logistical headquarters to coordinate supply and fuel support. Defense Logistics Agency distribution depots are located strategically throughout the continental United States along major distribution networks to quickly launch needed supplies to its customers

RESOURCE MANAGEMENT

8-54. The Department of Defense provides civil support on a reimbursable basis unless directed otherwise by the President. Cost reimbursement for civil support is usually in accordance with the Economy Act, which mandates cost reimbursement by the federal agency requesting support. However, when a Presidential disaster or emergency declaration is declared, the Stafford Act sets the guidelines for reimbursements to federal agencies and states from federal funds set aside to support these missions.

8-55. When possible, resource management analysis precedes key operational decisions and actions. Army financial managers must seek early guidance regarding reimbursement from published orders, HQDA published guidance, the USARNORTH Reimbursement Cell (ARC), or the NORTHCOM Financial Management Augmentation Team (FMAT). These sources provide guidance on the reimbursable process, specific accounting codes that have been established and allocation of reimbursable authority from funding received from other federal agencies.

Reimbursable Activities

8-56. In most cases, state, local, and federal agencies provide reimbursement for assistance provided by the Department of Defense during the conduct of Civil Support missions. The reimbursement process requires the DOD components to capture and report total and incremental costs in accordance with applicable DoD financial management regulations. Supported agencies should also maintain records of support received from the Department of Defense. To distinguish these costs from those related to training or normal operating expenses, resource managers must maintain accountability throughout an operation for equipment and material costs associated with operational support. Organizational record keeping needed to support cost-capturing must begin at the start of the operation and extend to the lowest functional level.

8-57. Reimbursable Activities. Commanders must work closely with their financial management staff to ensure all reimbursable activities are documented and accounted for properly. Note that under current policy, DOD components shall not procure or maintain any supplies, materiel, or equipment exclusively for providing civil support, unless otherwise directed by the Secretary of Defense.

8-58. Table 8-5 lists costs that directly result from disaster relief or other Domestic Operations and are generally considered eligible for reimbursement:

Table 8-5. Costs eligible for reimbursement

- Pay for personnel specifically hired for disaster response support.
- Regular Pay and Allowances are reimbursable for Economy Act Orders only – military and civilian.
- Overtime.
- Travel and per diem.
- Cost of consumables (such as fuel, rations) requisitioned to support disaster operations.
- Transportation of personnel, supplies, and equipment.
- Cost to pack and crate supplies and equipment lost, destroyed, or damaged as a result

of civil support operations, (except aircraft, motor vehicles, and water craft).

- Cost of aircraft flight hours.
- Cost of port (air, ocean, inland-waterway) loading, off-loading, and handling.
- Cost to repair or recondition non-consumable items returned (allocated according to percentage of repair costs attributable to the support provided).
- Replacement costs of supplies and equipment furnished and not returned.
- Cost of parts used to repair end-items used in disaster relief (excluding depot or field maintenance on a time compliance basis)

8-59. Additional guidance in this area from the federal military can be found in DOD 7000.14-R, Department of Defense Financial Management Regulation. A second source of additional federal military information is JP 1-06, Financial Management Support in Joint Operations.

Nonreimbursable Activities

8-60. Table 8-6 shows expenses not considered reimbursable in the context of civil support operations.

Table 8-6. Costs ineligible for reimbursement

- Generally, regular pay and allowances of military and civilian personnel. (Regular pay and allowances for civilian and military personnel are reimbursable for Economy Act orders.) USACE personnel pay and allowances may be eligible for reimbursement. See the G-8.
- Charges for use of military vehicles and watercraft.
- Aircraft, vehicles, or watercraft damaged, lost, destroyed, or abandoned.
- Administrative overhead.
- Annual and sick leave, retirement, and other benefits.
- Cost of telephone, telegram, or other transmissions used to requisition items in a disaster area to replenish depot stocks.

8-61. Accounting codes, for use in accumulating costs, are requested at the onset of a disaster relief effort. The key is to maintain accounting records and monitor how much funding is expended. All organizations supporting operations such as the Army Materiel Command, Theater Sustainment Command elements, Sustainment Brigades, or Medical Brigades that receive, store, issue, and account for DOD material ensure complete accountability of all supplies.

8-62. State, local, federal organizations, DOD, and other military services normally reimburse the Army for its assistance. Civil support sustainment events are reimbursable operations. Unit commanders are required to maintain accurate records of expenditures. Accounting codes help track accumulation of costs. The reimbursement process requires accurate billing records for legitimate costs. Discrepancies are resolved with the supported and/or reimbursing agency. Supported organizations keep records of support and services received from the Army. Army financial managers maintain accountability throughout operation for costs of support and services to distinguish costs from those related to training or normal operating expenses.

8-63. Commanders and staff integrate financial management into all phases of the operation. Early involvement is essential for advice and review procedures. Responsive financial management calls for detailed planning procedures to account for the expenditure of all resources supporting sustainment for an operation with the expectation of being audited. By requesting early on-site involvement and advice from external functional experts, for example, Army Audit Agency and General Accounting Office, resource managers can head off major accounting problems that may occur later in the support operations. Specific financial guidance and point of contact information is included in operation orders, execution orders and deployment orders published by USNORTHCOM, USARNORTH and service command channels.

CRITICAL SERVICES

8-64. The supported state and federal coordinating officers identify certain critical sustainment functions to reduce loss of life, limb and property, and to meet basic logistic requirements. These critical services include mortuary affairs, establishment of temporary facilities and relief supplies. Commanders providing these capabilities should:

- Tailor the package for the mission.
- Contract for support and services early.
- Utilize local resources when possible.

Mortuary Affairs

8-65. Disasters may create higher than normal casualty rates that initially overwhelm local and state assets. When requested, Army mortuary affairs units can provide valuable assistance. Army mortuary affairs units normally provide collection point, transport to designated storage area, and identification services in support of civil authority. Ensure there is link-up between mortuary affairs and local morgues, medical facilities, funeral parlors and ensure cultural considerations are considered during operations. Chapter II of Joint Publication 4-06 outlines additional information for Mortuary Affairs support in a DSCA environment. Chapter 9 provides additional discussion on the handling of human and animal remains.

8-66. The local, territorial, tribal, or state medical examiner or coroner normally maintains jurisdiction over fatalities and military forces support that official when authorized. Within the United States, the civil jurisdiction has authority to order and perform an investigation to include an autopsy or an appropriate examination of human remains. This local authority can waive jurisdiction to the military or request an Armed Forces medical examiner. This is a sensitive topic and requires analysis and legal advice on case-by-case basis.

8-67. A mass fatality disaster or emergency may exceed the capabilities of local and state authorities to perform mortuary affairs services. Because mortuary affairs capabilities within DOD are extremely limited, mortuary affairs units support civil authorities only when response or recovery requirements are beyond the capabilities of civil authorities. When directed by the President or Secretary of Defense, DOD can provide advisory support, search, recovery, receiving, decontamination, identification, processing, storage, and transportation assistance of the remains. DOD mortuary affairs personnel integrate into federal, state, and local operations to assist and augment the medical examiner or coroner according to state laws. It is DOD guidance that only mortuary affairs personnel handle human remains, with the reverence, care, and dignity befitting them and the circumstances.

8-68. In most states, the state medical examiner or coroner is legally responsible for operations associated with the identification, processing, and disposition of human remains. Each state and territory has different laws for processing human remains. DOD personnel may assist National Guard and civilian law enforcement authorities in locating human remains and transporting them after processing. The search, recovery, and movement of human remains may become a law enforcement issue when there is a requirement to enter private property or when the location is clearly a crime scene. In the former, a law enforcement official must enter the private premises first to conduct a search to determine if any deceased persons are inside. In the latter, permission from law enforcement authorities must be received before moving human remains.

8-69. The National Response Framework under Emergency Support Function #8 gives Department of Health and Human Services the lead in providing mortuary services (table 8-7). See Chapter 10 and Appendix L for more information.

Table 8-7. Mortuary services under ESF #8

• Identifying victims (by means such as fingerprint, dental, DNA, pathological, and anthropological)
• Providing temporary morgue facilities
• Processing, preparation, and disposition of remains
• Returning personal effects

- If necessary, making remains and personal effects available to law enforcement

8-70. There are three types of searches for victims and for human remains. Soldiers may conduct an immediate or hasty search in the aftermath of a disaster, such as a flood or hurricane, to find and rescue living personnel who are on rooftops, front porches, or trees, for example, waiting for rescue. A primary search follows, by going house-to-house, knocking on doors, looking into windows, and listening for sounds to determine if someone inside needs assistance. DOD forces may accompany National Guard or civilian law enforcement authorities and stand by to assist while they do the initial entry into the house or private business. A deliberate or secondary search follows later by going house-to-house and entering the premises to determine if any deceased persons are inside. DOD forces again may accompany and stand ready to assist National Guard or civilian law enforcement authorities.

Temporary Facilities

8-71. The U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Army and other Service engineers may prepare temporary or improve facilities needed to house military and supporting civilian personnel, and additional support basing. Mission assignments determine the support provided to supported agencies, while USARNORTH coordinates with the BSI and subordinate Army commanders for additional facilities to support military forces. USARNORTH and the JFHQ-S may also coordinate for shared logistical facilities and housing; a memorandum of agreement may follow that assigns shared costs and responsibilities. The USARNORTH and subordinate engineer staff coordinate with Service engineer agencies (such as Naval Facilities Command or NAVFAC) to analyze cost, availability, and schedules for construction of temporary facilities. Normally housing for displaced citizens comes through the JFO under ESF#6, coordinated by FEMA, assisted by other Federal agencies, USACE, and the American Red Cross. In situations involving a mass evacuation or refugee crisis, DOD may receive mission assignments to provide shelter to civilians.

8-72. Service capabilities developed and procured for rapid global deployment may prove equally useful in domestic emergencies. Such capabilities may include Air Force RED HORSE and PRIME BEEF; Army rapid deployment logistics and medical modules such as FORCE PROVIDER; or pre-packaged Marine logistics sets stored in the United States or on sea lift currently in U.S. waters. See figure 8-4.

OTHER LOGISTICS SUPPORT

8-73. Army units may require an extensive storage complex based on mission requirements and flow of supplies. During an incident response, FEMA, state, and NGO distribute large quantities food, water, ice, and clothing to affected citizens. Frequently, stockpiles of military supplies supplement resources from civilian emergency stockpiles. When tasked, Soldiers assist in distribution. Leaders need to understand that the law requires an accurate accounting for both the supplies and the Soldiers' effort.

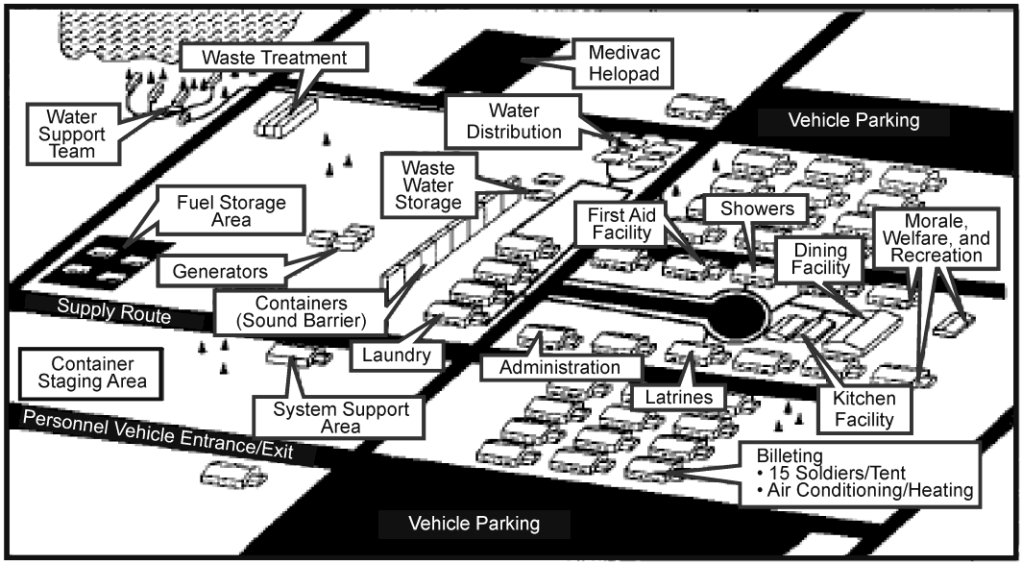


Figure 8-4. FORCE PROVIDER module for 550 persons

Real Property

8-74. When requested and approved by their respective headquarters, National Guard and DOD bases may support civilian agencies. Vacant warehouses, parking lots, open fields, potential staging areas, universities, airports and airfields, hospitals, and other facilities may be used for support and service activities, and temporary resettlement of dislocated persons. The Secretary of Defense, in coordination with the owning service secretary, commits active military installations to support civilian agencies. The Adjutant General exercises decision authority for use of National Guard bases and armories.

8-75. Permanent or temporary transfer of any accountable equipment from an Army unit to sister services, other service component, and to civilian agency requires Department of the Army approval. Loans require proper authorization and documentation. The borrower signs a statement assuming liability for equipment during the period of the loan, and for care, custody, security and safeguarding, proper use and maintenance, and responsibility for all incremental costs accrued to the Army. Before issue, the Army clearly defines condition standards for return and how and where to find the agency or organization that borrowed the item. In an emergency situation, Soldiers may provide items of equipment to their military counterparts or a civilian organization. They should document the transfer either in writing, or in an operations log at their TOC. One expedient means of documentation is to record it digitally on cell phone cameras. Transfer of weapons, combat or tactical vehicles, water vessels, and aircraft requires the approval of the Secretary of the Army.

Maintenance

8-76. Army commanders and staff cooperate with the lead civil authority. Commanders consider support for their own equipment and support for civilian equipment such as buses, trucks, ambulances, and power generation equipment. Federal military forces require a mission assignment in order to provide maintenance assistance to civilian equipment. National Guard assets provide support through immediate response or upon approval by their JTF. Maintenance support to nearby NGOs is worth considering, as this can be one of the most effective means of building unity of effort while improving support. As soon as possible, however, contractors should replace military maintenance support to external agencies.

TRANSPORTATION

8-77. USARNORTH planners assist USNORTHCOM and TRANSCOM to plan, schedule, and control Federal military movements into, within, and out of an area of operations. They support joint movement control and coordinate support with civilian agencies in the JOA.. When tasked by a mission assignment, Army movement control personnel may augment and assist civilian authorities manage traffic into and out of a declared disaster area. The preferred means of manning traffic control points is through National Guard forces, in order to avoid any conflict with the PCA. Regular Army personnel may support in a staff capacity or in a liaison capacity with law enforcement and National Guard elements. The State JTF and Federal military JTF may establish a joint movement center to ensure efficient movement within declared disaster areas. Federal military and State military commanders coordinate manning requirements. Transportation units may serve as part of a joint force headquarters or as part of a pure Army force transportation headquarters. (See Figure 8-5.)

8-78. Transportation units may serve as part of a joint headquarters or a pure Army transportation headquarters. Units serve as part of forces (except for small TOE staff elements), not as part of the headquarters. They may provide services in unity of effort with civilian transportation assets. Wheeled military units can distribute large quantities of essential cargoes over terrain normally impassable to most civilian trucking. Inland cargo transfer companies prepare cargo for transshipment at distribution centers. Seaport operations companies operate water ports, load and offload ships, or assist civilian port operators. Watercraft companies move units, supplies, and equipment along intra-coastal and inland waterways.

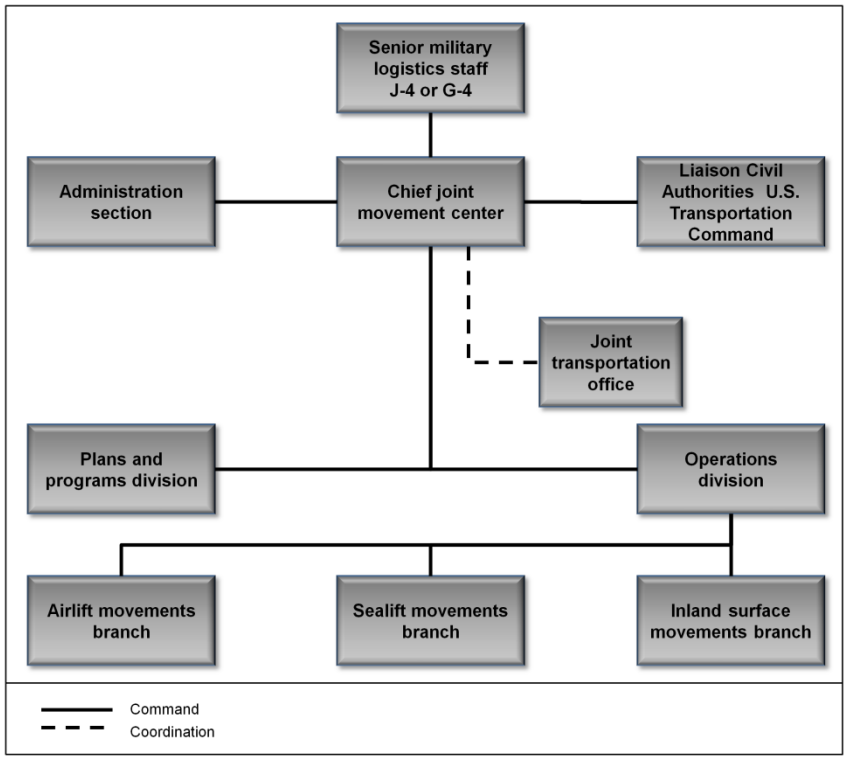


Figure 8-5. Example joint movement center organization

GEOSPATIAL SUPPORT

8-79. In civil support operations, map coverage is critical to responding military and civil agencies. When possible, all controlling headquarters operate from the same geographic reference(s). In many cases, locally produced large-scale (1:10,000 or 1:5,000) maps are optimal. Many of the local residents and first responders are familiar with such local products. Local planning agencies, realtor associations, travel agencies, or utility company records may be able to provide such detailed map coverage. Army geospatial

engineer units, federal mapping agencies or local topographic or printing companies may be able to reproduce or modify these products as required. If map coverage does not exist over the area of operations, agencies can request image-based products, which can be produced in a relatively short period.

8-80. The US Army Geospatial Center at Fort Belvoir provides direct geospatial support and products to deployed forces conducting civil support operations. This includes products such as maps, hydrological studies, and "flyover capabilities." These products can support the unit's incident awareness and assessment before, during, and after deployment.

PERSONNEL SUPPORT

8-81. During a civil support operation, personnel support to military forces should not be overlooked. Personnel support activities encompass the elements of postal operations management; morale, welfare and recreation (MWR); and band operations. For DSCA operations, personnel support operations not only support the military, but can also assist civil authorities in restoring capabilities that may be degraded

8-82. The ability of the Army to support the U.S. Postal Service is important and may be requested to augment postal operations until normal postal services are restored in the affected are restored.

8-83. The MWR network, in coordination with servicing BSIs, provides DOD personnel with an opportunity to relax and unwind while deployed normally through opportunities for sports and recreation. While HR organizations are not the executors of MWR centers, acknowledging this aspect of personnel support during DSCA operation s is essential to provide military and civilians alike with an outlet that improves morale.

8-84. Administrative control over personnel remains with the parent Service and providing headquarters unless otherwise specified by the supported combatant commander. National Guardsmen remain under the ADCON of their respective states. The Army Reserve Command continues to exercise ADCON over mobilized Army Reserve Soldiers. Active Component Soldiers receive administrative support through their home station. The supporting commander may attach a human resources team with the deploying unit to assist with administrative actions and coordinate with home station for additional support as required. Adequate personnel support to the deployed force must be a planning consideration for commanders and Human Resource (HR) providers..

HUMAN RESOURCES SUPPORT

8-85. HR Support to military personnel supporting DSCA operations is dependent on the operatational environment. Some HR support can be coordinated at home station, the BSI, when deployed with the organization, or from multiple deployed locations. HR planners must consider the numbers and type of organizations involved, task organization of the force, level of support needed, and the operating environment, specifically technological capabilities available.

8-86. Civil support operations may require additional planning and preparation by the personnel staff officer. The biggest single challenge is maintaining accurate strength accountability. This is a problem for both National Guard and Federal military forces. There are several steps that commanders should take to maintain personnel accountability. These include:

- Establish and maintain a central control point through which all Soldiers report and depart from the JOA. This is not easy to control, since there are numerous ways to arrive and depart.
- Ensure accountability procedures and reporting requirements are accurate and integrated with not only with the higher headquarters, but also the rear detachment..
- National Guard JTF commanders should manage units provided by other states under EMAC carefully, since these units normally have a 30-day employment window.
- If possible, commanders should maintain unit integrity at as high a level as feasible, and specify a support relationships between dissimilar units. This allows the parent unit commanders to mange missions and accountability more effectively.
- Commanders need to be aware of Soldiers in their command that may be affected personally by a disaster response mission. These Soldiers may have Family in the affected area.

- In some civil support operations, it may be necessary to bring in one or more human resources platoons or teams to support civil authorities in accomplishing their mission using civilian agency systems. These elements may include postal platoons to assist the U.S. Postal Service or casualty liaison teams to assist in casualty operations.

8-87. The entire chain of command should ensure that basic services continue with particular attention to mail and internet connectivity. The latter becomes increasingly important each year as more soldiers depend upon online services for banking and communications. The commander should contract for connectivity (e.g. wireless networks) sufficient for Soldiers to use their own devices or leased terminals to remain connected when off duty.

8-88. During extended operations, commanders should develop rotational plans to allow Soldiers and Civilians to spend a short time back at home station to deal with personal and professional issues. In most civil support operations, there will be numerous courier vehicles and flights, and a well-managed personnel control system can ensure that Soldiers get to where they need to go and back again efficiently.

8-89. One of the key policies that the supported commander will establish concerns the use of alcohol. Commanders and leaders need to understand and enforce the personal conduct rules on consumption of alcohol.

8-90. Personnel officers should review the awards and decorations that the command may award for service, achievement, and heroism during civil support. Careful personnel accountability will help ensure that Soldiers receive service ribbons authorized for civil support missions. Provide information to subordinate commanders on the criteria for awards and decorations and assist in their expeditious submission and approval.

HUMAN RESOURCES SERVICES

8-91. Even during DSCA operations, there may be a requirement for casualty reporting and operations. For military and civilian members who are killed or injured while performing a DSCA mission, the nearest military installation will coordinate with the home station Casualty Area Command (CAC) for Family notification and transportation. DOD civilians are treated similar to military members while deployed in support of DSCA operations

8-92. Casualty reporting procedures during a DSCA operation are just as important as if in a combat environment. It must also be understood that media access within the United States can potentially be greater and any delays in reporting can undermine the Family notification process

RESOURCE MANAGEMENT OPERATIONS

8-93. When developing command resource requirements, the appropriate staff section must determine if there are any existing agreements, regulations, or policy guidance that the financial manager must support. Based on this staff review, the financial managers ensure adherence to proper billing and reimbursement procedures. Resource requirements include, but are not limited to contracting, transportation, support to other agencies and force sustainment. The financial manager determines the method to fund these requirements; and what appropriations, authorities, and fiscal laws apply during the mission.

8-94. Accounting systems track costs (by event, program, unit, MDEP, and AMSCO for each transaction) based on the accounting classification associated with transactions. Financial managers use the accounting classification for two main purposes. First, it helps track expenditures at a detailed level. Second, it helps prepare and present fiscal information to the command and staff, including the status of funds, mission or event cost, status of unfunded requirements, and obligations rates.

8-95. Reimbursable costs may occur because of providing support to other organizations, units, and Services, or agencies. Financial managers normally seek reimbursable authority by contacting the USARNORTH Reimbursement Cell (ARC) or the USNORTHCOM Financial Management Augmentation Team (FMAT). The ARC and FMAT manage reimbursable budget authority for DSCA events and document expenses associated with these events.

Finance Operations

8-96. Deployed units depend on support provided to the logistical system and to contingency contracting efforts. A large percentage of financial management wartime efforts support the procurement process and oversight is critical in preventing improper or illegal payments. Financial managers coordinate with contracting officers and the staff judge adjutant regarding local business practices. Procurement support includes two areas: contracting support and commercial vendor services support.

8-97. Civil support operations may require additional financial management support. Financial Management consists of two core functions, resource management and finance operations. Resource management support is found in the support brigade Budget Section. Finance Operations support is dependent upon METT-TC. Additional resource management and finance operations support should be included in planning requirements for the support brigade. Financial managers will coordinate with contracting officers and the staff judge adjutant regarding local business practices. Financial management detachment operations may include support to procurement, pay, disbursing, and accounting

8-98. Financial Management Detachment operations may include procurement and disbursing support. Deployed units depend on support provided to the logistical system and to contingency contracting efforts. A large percentage of financial management wartime efforts support the procurement process and oversight is critical in preventing improper or illegal payments. Financial managers coordinate with contracting officers and the staff judge adjutant regarding local business practices. Procurement support includes two areas: contracting support and commercial vendor services support.

Temporary Duty

8-99. Not every DSCA mission requires a large operation. Often the support provided may consist of a small element such as a dive team (such as the Navy element that responded to the Minneapolis bridge collapse) or a pair of helicopters. Temporary duty status remains an effective means of deploying and sustaining Soldiers performing limited missions. Depending on the situation, the supported agency may contract the necessary support, the DCO may provide for their support, or the Soldiers may make arrangements following normal travel procedures.

RELIGIOUS SUPPORT

8-100. The unit ministry team deploys during civil support operations for the primary purpose of providing religious support to authorized DOD personnel. In this context, authorized DOD personnel is defined as military members, their families and other authorized DOD civilians (both assigned and contracted) as determined by the JFC. Laws implementing the Establishment Clause of the U.S. Constitution generally prohibit chaplains from providing religious services to the civilian population. However, following certain rare and catastrophic large-scale disasters, local and state capabilities of all types, to include spiritual care, may be overwhelmed. In these situations unit ministry teams may serve as liaison to NGOs (including faith-based organizations) when directed by the JFC. In addition, the primary supported agency, in coordination with local and state authorities, may determine that additional caregivers are needed and may request DOD chaplains to provide care, counseling, or informational services to non-DOD civilians. Commitment requires meeting four criteria:

- Such support is incidental; meaning that there is generally no significant cost and that such support does not significantly detract from the primary role of the UMT as defined above.
- Pursuant to an emergency which results in a Presidential Disaster Declaration.
- There is an acute need for immediate ministry recognized by appropriate authorities, and directed by a DOD commander.
- There is a government-imposed burden of some sort such as quarantine on a federal facility, or when there is no reasonable civilian alternative to meet the needs of non-DOD personnel impacted by the emergency.

Chapter 9

Army Health Service Support

This chapter provides information on Health Service Support during civil support operations. It covers three broad areas – Emergency Medical Support; Medical Logistics; and Specialized Medical Response Capabilities.

9-1. Army Health System (AHS) support includes all mission support services performed, provided, or arranged by the Army Medical Department to meet health service support (HSS) and force health protection (FHP) mission requirements for the Army and as directed, for joint and intergovernmental agencies during civil support operations. Commanders review considerations for transition to civilian medical organizations throughout operations. Department of Defense provides HSS for declared emergencies and major disasters under the guidance of Emergency Support Function (ESF) #8, led by the Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS). This requires a coordinated effort by DHHS, FEMA, DOD, and the Department of Veterans Affairs (VA), State and local governments, and the private sector. The primary department responsible for coordinating the federal medical response is the DHHS. Requests for federal level DOD medical capabilities are coordinated through the DCO. Generally, the primary coordination of local, state, and federal medical assets occurs within the JFO. This multi-organization coordination helps determine what Army HSS capabilities are required in response to an incident. Primary authorities within a JFO can include state and federal ESF #8 representatives, state National Guard surgeon(s), the Joint Regional Medical Plans and Operations Officer (JRMPO), and the supported Combatant Command surgeons.

EMERGENCY MEDICAL SUPPORT

9-2. Emergency Support Function (ESF #8) of the National Response Framework discusses multiagency public health and medical support to State, tribal, and local governments. The National Response Framework continues to evolve; the most up-to-date information is available online at **http://www.fema.gov/emergency/nrf/**. The functional support areas covered by ESF #8 (See table 9-1.)

Table 9-1. Functional support areas covered by ESF #8

- Assessment of public health and medical needs.
- Health surveillance.
- Medical care personnel.
- Health, medical, and veterinary equipment and supplies.
- Patient evacuation.
- Patient care.
- Safety and security of drugs, biologics, and medical devices.
- Blood and blood products.
- Food safety and security.
- Agriculture safety and security.
- All-hazard public health and medical consultation, technical assistance, and support.
- Behavioral health care.
- Public health and medical information.
- Vector control.
- Potable water and wastewater and solid waste disposal.

- Mass fatality management, victim identification, and decontaminating remains.
- Veterinary medical support.

9-3. Incident response begins at the local level and increases from the bottom up as needed, based on requests from local and state authorities. A broad response may include Department of Defense (DOD) public health and medical support. DOD ESF #8 support functions are in Table 9-2. (This table omits the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.)

Table 9-2. DOD public health and medical support responsibilities in ESF #8

DOD performs the following support functions:

- Alerts DOD National Disaster Medical System federal coordinating centers (Army, Navy, Air Force) and provides specific reporting and regulating instructions to support incident relief efforts.
- Alerts DOD National Disaster Medical System federal coordinating centers to activate National Disaster Medical System patient reception plans in a phased, regional approach, and when appropriate, in a national approach.
- At the request of the Department of Health and Human Services, provides support for the evacuation of patients and medical needs populations to locations where hospital care or outpatient services are available.
- Using available DOD transportation resources, in coordination with the National Disaster Medical System Medical Interagency Coordination Group, evacuates and manages victims and patients from the regional evacuation point in the vicinity of the incident site to National Disaster Medical System patient reception areas.
- Provides available logistical support to public health and medical response operations.
- Provides available medical personnel for casualty clearing and staging and other missions as needed, including aeromedical evacuation and medical treatment. Mobilizes and deploys available Reserve and National Guard medical units, when authorized and necessary to provide support.
- Coordinates patient reception, tracking, and management to nearby National Disaster Medical System hospitals, Veterans Administration hospitals, and DOD military treatment facilities that are available and can provide appropriate care.
- Provides available military medical personnel to assist ESF #8 in the protection of public health (such as food, water, wastewater, solid waste disposal, vectors, hygiene, and other environmental conditions).
- . Provides available military veterinary personnel to assist ESF #8 personnel in the evacuation, triage, medical treatment and temporary sheltering of pets, companion animals and livestock.
- Provides available DOD medical supplies for distribution to mass care centers and medical care locations being operated for incident victims with reimbursement to DOD.
- Provides available emergency medical support to assist State, tribal, or local officials within the disaster area and the surrounding vicinity. Such services may include triage, medical treatment, behavioral health support, and the use of surviving DOD medical facilities within or near the incident area.
- Provides assistance, as available, in managing human remains, including victim identification and mortuary affairs and temporary internment of the dead.
- Provides evaluation and risk management support through use of defense coordinating officers, emergency preparedness liaison officers, and joint regional medical planners.
- Provides available blood products in coordination with the Department of Health

and Human Services.

- Provides medical surveillance and laboratory diagnostic and confirmatory testing in coordination with the Department of Health and Human Services.

9-4. Most states have a statutory provision that addresses the recognition of medical licenses issues by another state or the waiver of the states' licensure requirements for military health care providers who enter the state to provide medical treatment to civilians during an emergency or disaster. These health care providers will be covered by the federal Tort Claims act and the medical malpractice immunity act.

INITIAL ACTIONS

9-5. The Department of Health and Human Services coordinates initial federal-level incident response actions. These actions begin with assessment of public health and medical needs and health surveillance. The Department of Health and Human Services deploys teams and assets based on requests and the situation.

9-6. Primary health service support authorities in a joint field office include state and federal ESF #8 representatives; a joint regional medical planner; and JTF Surgeon. Through multiagency coordination, these authorities determine the DOD support capabilities needed.

NATIONAL DISASTER MEDICAL SYSTEM

9-7. The Department of Health and Human Services, Office of Preparedness and Response, activates the National Disaster Medical System when requested by local and state authorities. This system integrates federal medical support into a unified medical response to augment state and local capabilities. The system activates in either preparation for or response to a declared major disaster or emergency, for a specific period of time. If DOD support is needed, requests are processed as requests for assistance. Normally, requests for assistance are developed into approved mission assignments.

9-8. The National Disaster Medical System has three major components:

- Deployable medical response to a disaster area in the form of individuals and teams, supplies, and equipment.
- Patient movement from a disaster site to unaffected areas of the nation.
- Definitive medical care at participating hospitals in unaffected areas.

DEPLOYABLE MEDICAL RESPONSE

9-9. The deployable medical response capability includes response teams and equipment designed for rapid deployment. Team members are non-federal volunteers who may be federalized as part-time employees when activated. They are principally a community resource available to support local, regional, or state requirements. DOD medical teams may support these teams in emergency situations. In contrast to the Army health system, the National Response Framework and the National Disaster Medical System classify mortuary services under public health and medical care. For additional detail on non-DOD assets, see HHS, Public Health Service, and FEMA (insert references).

PATIENT MOVEMENT

9-10. To move patients out of a disaster area, local authorities initially set up casualty collection points. Initial transportation support may include commercial aviation companies, private organizations, and individual citizens. If local medical services are inadequate, local authorities request state assistance. A state may operate regional evacuation points. When local authorities request state assistance, support may include the National Guard. If state and local authorities are unable to establish casualty collection points or regional evacuation points, they may request federal authorities to rapidly deploy teams, such as U.S. Public Health Service Commissioned Corps teams, to assist. If resources still are inadequate, local and state authorities can request additional federal medical evacuation assistance.

9-11. When necessary, the Department of Health and Human Services requests DOD federal-level support through ESF #8 for evacuating seriously ill or injured patients. DOD support may include providing transportation assets, operating and staffing National Disaster Medical System federal coordinating centers, and processing and tracking patient movements from Regional Evacuation Points to reception facilities. DOD takes the lead for federal-level evacuation efforts.

9-12. The U.S. Transportation Command (USTRANSCOM) Global Patient Movement Requirements Center may deploy a joint patient movement team. A joint patient movement team regulates and tracks all patients, including civilians, transported on DOD assets to reception facilities. The team regulates and tracks patients using the USTRANSCOM regulating and command and control evacuation system.

9-13. USTRANSCOM coordinates DOD transportation assets. Most seriously ill patients are evacuated by air. USTRANSCOM establishes aeromedical evacuation centers. Depending on the nature and scope of the disaster, transportation may be by air, surface, or sea:

- Air Mobility Command.
- Military Surface Deployment and Distribution Command.
- Military Sealift Command.

9-14. Civilian medical teams meet patients at the reception facilities. These teams determine which patients will go to which National Disaster Medical System hospitals. Procedures are based on local agreements and advance coordination among National Disaster Medical System federal coordinating centers and hospitals. Transportation directly to the hospitals is by local ground and air transport.

DEFINITIVE MEDICAL CARE

9-15. The National Disaster Medical System provides a nationwide network of nonfederal acute care hospitals. These hospitals provide definitive care for disaster victims when the need exceeds the capabilities of the affected local, state, or federal medical systems.

9-16. Sixty-two federal coordinating centers coordinate with a network of approximately 1,800 nonfederal National Disaster Medical System member hospitals and eighty-two patient reception areas to provide an 80,000-bed capability for definitive acute medical care.

9-17. Within this system, the federal coordinating center roles include—

- Soliciting participation in the National Disaster Medical System by nonfederal area hospitals.
- Assisting in coordination of area disaster plans with hospital representatives.
- Arranging annual National Disaster Medical System exercises, and developing procedures for participants to report on bed availability.
- Triaging.
- Transporting and tracking of incoming patients to area hospitals. USAMECOM

CONSIDERATIONS FOR INCIDENT MEDICAL SUPPORT

9-18. This section briefly discusses special considerations for medical support during civil support operations. Refer to FM 8-42 for additional doctrine information. This discussion is not exhaustive. The overarching consideration is that disaster response operations are multiagency operations in support of civil authorities. Army health system units support and cooperate with various nonmilitary organizations, consistent with ESF #8 and under appropriate local, state, and federal laws. . Army health system units support and cooperate with various nonmilitary organizations, consistent with ESF #8 and under appropriate local, state, and federal laws. Multiagency coordination helps avoid duplication of effort. In each situation, the nature and scope of the response depends on the requirements of the incident.

9-19. Public health authorities conduct surveillance and rapid needs assessment immediately after an incident. Army health system personnel review all relevant intelligence products from the Armed Forces Medical Intelligence Center, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, U.S. Army Center for Health Promotion and Preventive Medicine, and other public health entities before deployment and employment. Army health system personnel deploy on military advance party detachments. Health service support units acquire information as rapidly as possible for developing medical courses of action.

9-20. Commanders ensure that medical personnel conduct pre and post-deployment assessments for all Soldiers IAW DOD and Service policies. On-scene, following the emergency treatment or evacuation of civilian patients, Army health system units focus on preventive medicine and force health protection.

COMMAND RELATIONSHIPS

9-21. Based on the size of the disaster and capability of local and state assets, medical forces may be aligned under the command and control of a defense coordinating officer, a task force commander, or a joint task force commander. Army medical forces that deploy under immediate response authority remain under the command and control of their parent unit until the DCO or JTF assumes OPCON of forces.

9-22. Under a joint task force, medical forces may be aligned functionally, geographically or by service (such as a joint force land component command or a joint force air component command) depending on the joint task force commander's concept of support and intent. Likely tasks remain the same as those listed below.

9-23. Task force medical and its subordinate units are organized to accomplish assigned medical tasks for disasters. Task force medical's focus normally is on medical evacuation, triage, treatment, and public health and preventive medicine and force health protection to deployed DOD forces.

MEDICAL SURVEILLANCE

9-24. Medical surveillance and sharing of health-related intelligence help guide decisions for incident response operations. Medical personnel gather data and monitor health threat indicators throughout operations. Integrated medical surveillance tasks are listed in Table 9-3.

Table 9-3. Integrated medical surveillance tasks

- Describing and monitoring medical, public health, and psycho-social effects.
- Identifying changes in agents and host factors.
- Detecting changes in health practices.
- Detecting illness or injuries, including sudden changes in disease occurrence.
- Detecting, investigating, and analyzing collected data to identify necessary interventions.
- Monitoring long-term disease trends.
- Providing evidence for establishment of response protocols.
- Providing information about probable adverse health effects for decisionmaking.
- Investigating rumors.
- Determining needs and match resources in affected communities.

9-25. Medical personnel identify potential health hazards and develop and implement countermeasures. They provide education and training to personnel on potential health threat exposures. They perform environmental and personal monitoring and sampling to document exposure. They monitor the health of the force; gauge the pre-deployment health status of units; and identify preexisting (baseline) health characteristics of assigned Service members. They ensure sampling data, reports, and assessments are evaluated, reported, and archived. They ensure that occupational and environmental hazard exposure incident data and reports are submitted to the Defense Occupational and Environmental Health Readiness System (DOEHRS) portal. Refer to DODI 6490.03 for more information.

9-26. Additionally, veterinary personnel develop a vigorous veterinary surveillance program that includes food, water and ice inspections, suspected animal-to-human disease outbreak investigations, animals treated, and any other veterinary-related events. They archive veterinarian-related sampling data for analysis.

MEDICAL RISK ASSESSMENT

9-27. A Medical Health Risk Assessment is developed as part of the preventive medicine estimate. Army units coordinate risk assessments with civil authorities. The intent is to identify any health threat and its potential impact on the mission. The assessment includes analysis of weather, altitude, terrain, endemic diseases, local food and water sources, zoonotic diseases (disease transmitted from animals to humans), parasites, hazardous plants and animals, and potential exposure to hazardous and toxic materials. Refer to FM 4-02.17 for Army doctrine on preventative medical services. See also AR 11-35.

9-28. The completed medical risk assessment is used to—

- Determine immunization and chemoprophylaxis requirements.
- Determine personal protective equipment requirements.
- Conduct health threat briefings on the health hazards.
- Provide individual training to all deploying personnel on health and specific protective measures.
- Educate medical support personnel on recognition, prevention, and treatment of potential diseases, injuries, exposures."

9-29. Educate medical support personnel on recognition, prevention, and treatment of potential diseases, injuries, exposures." The primary health threats during most disaster response operations are listed in Table 9-4.

Table 9-4. Disaster-related health threats

• Contaminated food.
• Contaminated water.
• Environmental conditions (heat and cold).
• Environmental contamination (air, water, soil).
• Inadequate living/sleeping conditions (crowding, ventilation).
• Disease vectors.
• Accidents.
• Stress.

ASSISTING CIVIL AUTHORITIES WITH INSPECTIONS OF WATER, FOOD, AND WASTE

9-30. Army health system units assist civil authorities with water, food and waste disposal inspections as requested. This includes monitoring approved sources of food, water, and ice products as well as production, distribution and storage systems. Waste disposal site inspections include solid, medical and hazardous waste streams and will comply with state and federal standards. Public health hazards caused by inadequate or contaminated services may pose a greater threat than the initial incident. Health service support units, when requested, support civil authorities with sanitation inspections of potable water sites, systems, and containers. Inspections or surveys are conducted using civilian forms in accordance with local, state and federal guidelines.

9-31. Under most conditions, threats posed by contaminated water and food are interrelated. Medical personnel may support civil authorities with food service sanitation inspections, food service sanitation training, and illness outbreak investigations. Inspections are performed according to local, state, and federal standards.

9-32. Medical personnel may help civil authorities to conduct sanitation inspections of waste handling operations to determine health threats. Medical personnel may also assist with training on countermeasures and use of personal protective equipment, sanitation inspections, or environmental surveillance of affected areas."

BEHAVIORAL HEALTH

9-33. Disasters produce strong and unpleasant emotional and physical responses in victims and rescuers. Common symptoms are listed in Table 9-5.

Table 9-5. Common emotional and physical symptoms related to disaster response

Confusion	Guilt
Fear	Shock
Anxiety	Aggressiveness
Hopelessness	Mistrustfulness
Helplessness	Loss of confidence
Sleeplessness	Physical pain
Anger	Over-dedication to mission
Grief	

9-34. Behavioral health personnel play a vital role in any DOD force performing civil support operations. Behavioral health personnel apply psychological first aid when required and advise leaders on preventive measures. Examples of preventive measures for behavioral health during disaster response operations are listed in Table 9-6.

Table 9-6. Examples of preventive measures for behavioral health

- Providing basic needs for food, shelter, and health care.
- Listening to peoples' stories.
- Keeping families together.
- Providing frequent, clear, updated information to victims.
- Helping maintain connection with friends and family.
- Providing responders with regular communication with family members back home.
- Maintaining awareness of the stress levels of others.
- Providing responders with a rest area for sleep, hygiene, and food that is separate from the public and media.
- Insisting on proper sleep, nutrition, and exercise among responders.
- Not forcing people to share stories.
- Not giving simple, generalized reassurances (such as "everything will be ok").
- Not telling people how they may feel, or "why" things happened to them.
- Not making promises one cannot keep.
- Not criticizing current relief efforts in front of those needing help.

9-35. Handling of human remains is particularly stressful. Examples of behavioral health preventive measures used during handling of human remains are in Table 9-7.

Table 9-7. Examples of preventive measures for handling human remains

- Remembering the greater purpose of the work.
- Wearing protective clothing, taking frequent breaks, and maintaining hygiene and hydration.
- Talking with others and listening well.
- Using humor to relieve stress, as long as it is not too personal or inappropriate.
- Limiting exposure to bodies as much as possible.
- Breathing through one's mouth to help avoid smells.
- Not focusing on individual victims.
- Getting teams together for mutual support and encouragement.

- Providing opportunities for voluntary, formal debriefings.
- Limiting exposure to human and animal remains as much as possible.

9-36. Additional stress management personnel may be required to meet health requirements. Combat and operational stress control (COSC) and behavioral health teams" educate Soldiers about recognition and treatment of stress prior to operations. During deployment, they conduct investigations of suspected stress outbreaks. They use results of the investigations to identify corrective measures. Stress management personnel inform commanders of the impact stress may have on operations and of any irregularities in stress statistics or trends. They conduct briefings to newcomers arriving in the area of operations about stress threats and countermeasures. They brief personnel exiting the area of operations on possible stress-related conditions that may manifest and procedures for follow-up.

VETERINARY SUPPORT

9-37. Humans are not the only ones impacted by a natural disaster or catastrophic events. Pets and livestock require veterinary care during incident response operations. Veterinary issues should be anticipated and planned for. Preventive measures help reduce the spread of disease and minimize injuries. Veterinary concerns affecting public health are listed in Table 9-8.

Table 9-8. Veterinary concerns affecting public health

- Spoilage of human food and water supply (through contamination by animals).
- Animal bites.
- Outbreaks of diseases transmitted between animals and humans.
- Impact on public behavioral health due to the emotions owners feel for their animals. (This is more evident in seniors and children.)
- Overall health of pets, companion animals, and livestock."

Military Working Dogs

9-38. Veterinarians care for working animals during operations (military and interagency). Based on risk assessments and potential exposures to medical threats additional immunization and chemoprophylaxis may be required for working animals prior to or during deployment. Veterinarians also ensure follow-up care and health surveillance upon redeployment. Additional immunization and chemoprophylaxis may be required for military working dogs prior to deployment. Veterinarians care for military working dogs during operations. They ensure follow-up care upon redeployment.

Animal Remains

9-39. To avoid potential spread of disease, animal remains should be disposed of properly and as expeditiously as operations allow. Army units may be tasked to assist civil authorities with carcass disposal operations. Carcass disposal methods and locations will be determined by local and State authorities. Soldiers assisting in animal carcass disposal operations should consider the precautions listed in Table 9-9. Waivers may be required.

Table 9-9. Precautions related to handling animal carcasses

- Wearing protective clothing (waterproof gloves, waterproof boots, protective eyewear).
- Covering any open wounds.
- Using duct tape to seal tops of gloves and boots to prevent water seepage.
- Wearing respiratory protection—an N-95 respirator or better.
- Recognizing the smell hydrogen sulfide (a rotten egg smell) and evacuating if detected.
- Cleaning and disinfecting all clothing and boots after handling carcass-

contaminated materials.
- Washing work clothes separately from other clothes.
- Washing hands thoroughly.
- Showering and washing hair thoroughly after handling carcass-contaminated materials.

MEDICAL LOGISTICS

9-40. During civil support operations, US Army Medical Command (USAMEDCOM) continues medical logistics support to Army installations through its medical treatment facilities and clinics and serves as the Theater Lead Agent for Medical Materiel (TLAMM) for USNORTHCOM. As the TLAMM, USAMEDCOM coordinates directly with USNORTHCOM, Defense Logistics Agency (DLA) (as the DOD Executive Agent for medical materiel), and the single integrated medical logistics manager (SIMLM) to ensure the appropriate level of medical logistics support. Medical logistics support is normally a Service responsibility. However, in joint operations, the NORTHCOM commander will designate one of the Service components to serve as the single integrated medical logistics manager responsible for providing centralized medical logistics support to USNORTHCOM designated JTFs and other government agencies.

9-41. 10-39. The USAMEDCOM uses existing Army medical logistics automated systems, infrastructure (including installation medical supply activities located at Army MTFs throughout the CONUS), DLA contracts, and support relationships with regional DOD logistics organizations and supply support activities to execute the TLAMM mission. As the TLAMM, USAMEDCOM's medical logistics capability is ready to rapidly deploy in support of civil support operations. Support includes providing Class VIII supply chain and medical logistics support to deployed medical JTFs. When directed, USAMEDCOM medical logistics enablers can assist the JTF in coordinating for the receipt and distribution of resources from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention's Strategic National Stockpile. The Strategic National Stockpile is a national repository of antibiotics, chemical antidotes, antitoxins, life-support medications, IV administration, airway maintenance supplies, and medical and surgical items. The Strategic National Stockpile is designed to re-supply state and local public health agencies in the event of a biological and /or chemical terrorism incident within the US.

9-42. The USNORTHCOM JTF Class VIII requisitions flow from the supported units, through the TLAMM designated Master Ordering Facilities, to the prime vendor contracted to provide the requested item. The designated prime vendor delivers the requested item to the supporting medical logistics company. Joint task force medical units are expected to deploy with their full unit basic load of Class VIII supplies. Service components are responsible to resupply its forces for the first ten days of the operation or until the TLAMM and JTF medical logistics unit are operational. Once the medical logistics units are operational, supported units will establish accounts with the deployed medical logistics company for Class VIII resupply support. Requisitions are forwarded using existing automated systems. The primary DOD requisitioning system is the Defense Medical Logistics Standard Support system's Customer Assistance Module. The TLAMM conducts post-operational financial reconciliation with other Service components and USNORTHCOM for reimbursement.

BLOOD AVAILABILITY

9-43. The Department of Health and Human Services monitors blood availability nationally. It maintains contact with the American Red Cross, American Association of Blood Banks Inter-organizational Task Force on Domestic Disasters and Acts of Terrorism, and the Armed Services Blood Program Office. The Department of Health and Human Services determines—

- The need for blood, blood products, and supplies used in their manufacture, testing, and storage.
- The ability of existing supply chain resources to meet needs.
- Emergency measures needed to augment or replenish existing supplies.

9-44. Department of Health and Human Services sends a request for assistance through military channels when blood product requirements exceed capacity. The USNORTHCOM Joint Blood Program Office, in

coordination with the Armed Services Blood Program Office, manages DOD blood product support for most domestic disasters.

9-45. The Armed Services Blood Program has blood distribution and storage assets in the continental United States. The Armed Services Whole Blood Processing Laboratories are the major blood product distribution hubs. Deployable blood distribution assets include Blood Support Detachment and Blood Transshipment Systems. Also, DOD medical treatment facilities can be used for limited expanded blood product storage.

9-46. When Department of Health and Human Services requests blood distribution assets, the USNORTHCOM joint blood program office coordinates with USARNORTH, joint task force-medical and Joint Forces Command to accommodate blood distribution and storage.

SPECIAL NEEDS POPULATIONS

9-47. The National Response Framework defines a special needs population as a group with special functional needs before, during, and after an incident. Special functional needs include maintaining independence, communication, transportation, supervision, and medical care. For example, individuals in need of additional assistance may have disabilities, live in institutionalized settings, be very young or very old, or have limited English proficiency. Army medical and nonmedical personnel may support response efforts for special needs populations.

MANAGEMENT OF MASS CASUALTY EVENTS

9-48. The military may be tasked to support civilian medical capabilities as needed in the handling of mass casualties. DOD coordinates closely with Department of Health and Human Services and other public health providers in the JOA. Army medical planning staffs cooperate closely with responding organizations under the guidelines of the National Incident Management System and the National Response Framework. The military augments civilian medical capabilities as needed in the handling of mass casualties resulting from chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear, and high-yield explosives attacks CBRNE) or other toxic material contamination. For pertinent Army doctrine, refer to FM 4-02.283, 4-02.285, 4-02.7, and 8-284. Also see the *Field Management of Chemical Casualties Handbook*, Third Edition for additional information.

9-49. In a mass casualty situation, triage establishes who receives treatment first by placing casualties into four categories. Terminology and priorities for these categories differ in military and civilian environments, but the basic concepts are similar. See FM 3-28.1, Table VII-2 and Table VII-3 for more information about triage in civil support operations. The Army's senior medical commander coordinates treatment priorities with the lead civil medical authority.

US ARMY MEDICAL COMMAND SPECIALIZED RESPONSE CAPABILITIES

9-50. The USAMEDCOM has the capability to task-organize its TDA assets in support of assigned Army Medical Department missions. These capabilities are not intended to supplant TOE units, but can be used to respond to civil disasters, terrorist incidents, and other civil support or Defense Support of Civil Authorities (DSCA) missions as directed. The TDA assets of the USAMEDCOM and its subordinate commands will be used to provide the capabilities necessary in response to civil support missions. There are several different types of capabilities which the USAMEDCOM Commander can task-organize his resources to support, such as:

- Health facilities planning which provides a rapid deployable capability to address, assess, and assist in the comprehensive evaluation of health facility support systems and medical facility specific issues.
- Investigational new drug capability which provides guidance in the administration of investigational new drugs/vaccines as bio-threat countermeasures in mass casualty incidents (anthrax, botulinum, smallpox, and so on).

- Radiological advisory medical capability which provides direct comprehensive radiological health and medical guidance and specialized services to the combatant commander, on-scene commander and local medical officials responding to a radiological nuclear event.
- Theater Lead Agent for Medical Materiel (TLAMM) support which provides rapid deployment capability of medical logisticians to NORTHCOM's designated Base Support Installations in support of its Joint Medical Task Force, DOD installations, and DSCA missions during emergency incidents. The TLAMM capability will coordinate linkage of medical supply chain support from the BSI to Class VIII supply/support sources.
- Medical command, control, communications, and telemedicine capability which provides an intuitive, compact, and deployable medical command, control, communication and telemedicine information technology package as augmentation for incident response.
- Behavioral health/religious support capability which provides behavioral health care and religious support to local, state, federal, and other government authorities in response to man-made and environmental disasters. These capabilities augment behavioral health and religious support to local medical authorities. They support trauma ministry, mass casualty ministry, and spiritual assessment.
- Public health support which is a multifunctional capability that combines preventive medicine, veterinary services, and smallpox epidemiological response. This capability is still being refined but will be able to provide initial disease and occupational and environmental health threat assessments, conduct or assist in the field investigations of disease or injury outbreaks or clusters, and assess environmental destruction or risk related to animal health and food safety.
- Burn capability which provides expert worldwide aeromedical evacuation for any critical illness or injury, with particular expertise in the stabilization and management of trauma and burn patients.

Appendix A

Planning Checklists

INITIAL SITUATIONAL AWARENESS AND ASSESSMENT

- Damage Assessment estimates from incident commanders and situational assessment teams
- Homes, especially those with light construction, such as mobile homes.
- Status of roads, rail lines, airports, airfields, communications nodes and seaports.
- Other factors associated with the local community and the nature of the disaster. (Refer to appendix B for more information on safety considerations.)
- Status of first responders and their assets (such as vehicles, communications, and fuel).
- Debris removal and clearing lines of communication.
- Environmental hazards, natural or manmade.
- Fires, toxic chemical spills (toxic and nontoxic), ruptured pipelines, downed power lines.
- Weather or geographic hazards.
- New and emerging threats (such as civil disorder, or another natural disaster).
- Further evacuations needed or taking place.
- Sustainment
- Medical capacity
- Communication status
- Aviation facilities
- Search and rescue efforts underway
- Water purification, ice, and means of delivery.
- Availability of basic personal hygiene and cleaning materials.
- Sanitation capabilities.
- Security.
- Available shelter.
- Availability of food and means of distribution.
- Electrical power and electrical grid.
- Availability of gasoline and diesel fuel
- Availability of JP -8
- Command and Control
- Incident command structure in place
- Liaison and planning staff for headquarters.
- Counselors for citizens affected by the disaster
- Communications
- Chains of command and positions of authority.
- Types of communication and information management systems in use by first responders and other responding organizations.
- Communication assets required for Soldiers to communicate with the JTF HQ and other responding groups.
- Identifying alternatives when communication systems are not operating or not compatible.
- Identification of responding organizations not yet integrated with the overall effort; facilitating cooperation with these groups (including volunteer groups).

- Maps, global positioning system (GPS), and other topographic resources to navigate to specific locations when roads and landmarks are destroyed. Map products used by local organizations and first responders. Identifying a map system useable by most organizations.
- Electronic and hard copy products used to portray the common operational picture across boundaries or jurisdictions and all organizations.
- Location for the Army headquarters and where to place supporting staff and liaisons.
- Existing staff and liaisons needing augmentation.
- Public affairs assets required to acquire and relay accurate, useable information to the public.
- Synchronization of public affairs operations with the lead civil authority and local news media.
- Resource requirements
- Document actions to assure prompt acquisition of resources and timely reimbursements. (Refer to chapter 6 for information required for reimbursement.)
- Resources available now and later in the operation.
- Contracting management and support.
- How to synchronize civil and military resource prioritization.
- Communication assets required to obtain resources during the operation.
- Transportation assets available to move resources and transport personnel.
- Accounting systems to activate for military reimbursement.
- Procedures to track expenditures within funding systems.
- Legal
- Initial plans and orders review by staff judge advocate
- Review Standing rules of the use of force (RUF).
- Permissible actions according to military status of Soldiers (federal Title 10 Active Duty, National Guard Title 32, and State Active Duty).
- Pertinent local, state, and federal laws.
- Coordination and planning with other responding groups
- Obtain a copy of the most up-to-date disaster plan from the lead civil authority with the applicable Emergency
- Obtain a copy of the Applicable JFLCC contingency plan
- Extract how the plan covers the tasks and responsibilities of all organizations based on METT-TC.
- Determine where Army support is required.
- Review the makeup and focus of the other organizations.
- Designate staff responsibility to collect lessons learned.

JTF CHECKLIST:

- Coordinate with military (Air National Guard, Army National Guard, Coast Guard, Air Force, Navy, Marine Corps), local, state, Federal agencies and organizations and NGOs and volunteers. The bottom line is command control systems coordinate with virtually any agency, organization or individual that can help support the mission to reduce loss of life, limb and property. Determine the most feasible solutions for effective communication.
- Ensure that initial communications capabilities are self-sufficient and interoperable with both first responders and local authorities. This usually means commercial internet and telephone capability.
- Bring all communications equipment, to include computers, cables, routers, switches, and power supply. Procure and plan for the use of additional communication devices: telephone (satellite, cellular or land line), radio (military maritime, and civilian, in all bandwidths), Non-Secure Internet Protocol Router Network, SECRET Internet Protocol Router Network, video equipment, video teleconferencing, and satellite-based commercial Internet systems. The goal is to communicate effectively and reduce restrictions to effective communication.

- Ensure all equipment has operators, essential repair parts, operating and repair manuals, tools, initial fuel and power generation required.
- Send qualified signal leaders to ensure operators and equipment are used effectively.
- Prepare to provide a limited amount of critical communications equipment (cell phones, radios, base sets, etc.) to first responders.
- Plan and coordinate for additional, extended logistical and maintenance support for equipment and personnel as well as unexpected requirements including generator support; maintenance of equipment; fuel requirements of vehicles, systems, and generators; and support for others' equipment (i.e. charging cell phones from your power source, charging satellite phones, identify internal and external electronic repair capabilities).
- Ensure that communications structures are expandable and flexible to meet future needs. Remember that military units and civilian agencies may require extended communications support.
- Conduct a synchronization meeting between all primary agencies/entities that have impact as soon as possible.

ORGANIZATIONAL/UNIT CHECKLIST:

- Bring all communications equipment, to include computers, cables, routers, switches, and power. Ensure all equipment has operators, essential repair parts, operating and repair manuals, tools, initial fuel and power generation required.
- Send qualified signal leaders to integrate signal systems and to ensure operators and equipment are used effectively.
- Plan and coordinate for additional, extended logistical and maintenance support for equipment and personnel.
- Ensure that communications structures are expandable and flexible to meet future needs.
- Establish reach-back capability.

LOCAL AGENCIES

A-1. A complete or precise list of potential responding groups is not practical. Initial disaster response efforts tend to be chaotic, and responders in various regions or types of disasters are different. At the beginning, no one knows exactly who is responding. Therefore, these lists provide a starting point for Army staffs to seek and obtain precise information during a given mission so they can establish communication. Most local government contact information is available in local phone books under "government." Some information is available by internet searches or even word of mouth.

CIVILIAN LEADERSHIP

- Local town hall (local government employees and elected officials).
- County seat (county government employees and elected officials).
- Location and staff of emergency operations center.

PRIMARY EMERGENCY RESOURCES

- Law enforcement (local sheriff or chief of police).
- Fire department.
- Ambulance
- Department of public works or engineering to include a geospatial information and services offices
- Search and rescue.
- Hazardous materials (HAZMAT) response team.
- Local transportation assets (private or public).
- Bomb disposal (locations of bombs, bomb disposal assets).

- Local medical centers and hospitals.
- County, city, or town transportation departments.
- Department of public works or engineering.
- Finance.
- Public safety center.

OTHER RESOURCES

- Local library (source for maps, specific local information).
- Recreation and tourism center (source for maps and specific, local information).
- Chief medical examiner.
- Local and regional religious and service club organizations
- Morgue.
- Forensics.
- Department of education (temporary infrastructure, storm and fallout shelters).
- Labor center (hiring of local workers).
- LP gas and petroleum boards (location of damaged gas and oil lines, oil spills).
- Historical preservation society.
- Local Chamber of Commerce

VOLUNTEER RESPONDERS

- Volunteer security.
- Volunteer fire fighters.
- Volunteer and commercial security and law enforcement.
- Volunteer and commercial skilled labor with equipment.
- Volunteer and commercial transportation with knowledge of locations.
- Volunteer and commercial medical services and search and rescue crews.
- Volunteer and commercial organizations providing food, water, and shelter.
- Corporate and independent agriculture.
- Private education facilities and staff.
- Local veterinarians, animal shelters, and wildlife volunteers.
- Commercial gas and petroleum companies.
- American Red Cross.
- Salvation Army
- Volunteer Responders
- Young Lawyers Association
- Catholic Charities

STAFF CHECKLISTS

A-2. The following checklists assist with initial planning for S1, S2, S3, and S4 staffs. Staffs use the military decision-making process and simple, concise statements in language all parties understand. The Army uses the National Incident Management System and National Response Framework for planning and coordination with other organizations as much as possible. Table A-1, below, lists initial planning items for S1, Human Resources. This list is not all inclusive.

Table A-1. Planning checklist for S1, human resources

S1 performs checks on the following — • Soldier Readiness Processing.

- Personnel accountability, to include government, contractor, and volunteer personnel.
- Coordinate for postal service with the local postal service office
- Request military pay support
- Coordinate Chaplain activities
- Automation equipment including power generation, back-up battery packs with surge protection, photo copiers, printing capability with backup printer, field filing systems, supplies, tool kit, mobile shelving, tables, chairs, waterproof shelter, heating, cooling.

A-3. Table A-2, below, lists planning initial items for S-2, Intelligence. This list is not all inclusive.

Table A-2. Planning checklist for S2, intelligence.

S2 performs checks on the following —

- Intelligence preparation of the battle field (modified intelligence preparation of the battlefield). NOTE: This is an analysis of the environment and civil considerations under incident awareness and assessment.
- Maps (paper and electronic) both civilian and military, electronic topographic capability. Knowledge to incorporate systems to build map products useable to help locate personnel and critical facilities or infrastructure in areas where road signs, roads, and landmarks are destroyed. Do military and Army civilian areas of responsibility correlate?
- Population demographics of residential areas. Residents of economically distressed areas are more likely to remain in the area and require support.
- Ethnic distribution of population in disaster areas; identify types of linguists required.
- Areas without electricity.
- Areas without water, status of water purification systems, and availability of commercial purification equipment and products, improvised water purification systems.
- Location and capabilities of medical facilities.
- Status of sanitation systems.
- Relief and drainage systems. Effects on mobility for unit vehicles in rescue and relief efforts. Estimated time to drain flooded areas; include bridging requirements if applicable.
- Obstacles. Identify areas where debris impedes mobility.
- Surface materials. Type and distribution of soils and subsoils in area and soil trafficability.
- Manmade features. Identify roads, railroads, bridges, tunnels, mines, towns, industrial areas, and piers. Identify unsafe structures requiring demolition.
- Availability of unmanned aircraft systems (UAS).
- Topographic systems with global positioning system and software.
- Operations and physical security.
- Arms room.
- Automation equipment including power generation, back-up battery packs with surge protection, photo copiers, printing capability with backup printer, field filing systems, supplies, tool kit, mobile shelving, tables, chairs, waterproof shelter, heating, cooling.
- Local criminal activity and gangs for Force Protection purposes. Note this may

contain Sensitive Information – check with the SJA

- Coordination with local law enforcement to proscribe registered sex offenders from family sections of emergency shelters. Note this will contain Sensitive Information – check with the SJA
- Special needs populations i.e. retirement homes and group homes. Note this may contain Sensitive Information – check with the SJA

A-4. The next four tables present planning items for S3, Operations.

Table A-3. Initial planning checklist for S3, operations

S3 performs checks on the following —

- Simple, concise definition of command and support relationships (Army and other coordinating organizations).
- Priority: location of victims requiring rescue, evacuation, and medical treatment; status of local emergency medical capabilities; hazards or potential threats; and facilities (such as schools or warehouses) for temporary housing.
- Status of lines of communication, major roads, railroads, waterways, ports, and airports, and airfields in the area. State the nature and extent of damage and projected repairs.
- Characteristics of physical damage in specific areas: housing, commercial, industrial, public utilities, and so on. Start damage assessment in high-density and low-income areas: mobile homes, high-rise apartment buildings, and business offices.
- Numbers and locations of dislocated persons. Economically distressed areas tend to have more victims. These areas may be near industrial areas containing hazardous materials. Identify hazards such as fires, chemical spills, or ruptured pipelines.
- Local sources of media reproduction, especially high-speed, large-format printing.
- Availability of civilian engineer equipment and personnel.
- Advance party. Include signal officer, engineer, provost marshal, JAG, contracting officer, information operations officer, and internal logistical planner.
- Daily schedule.
- Briefings and reports.
- Points of contact for subject matter experts.
- Packing lists.
- Transportation (tactical)/convoy operations.
- Mission-related training and mission rehearsal exercises.
- Weapons qualification.
- After action reviews. See appendix C.
- Composite Risk management. See FM 5-19 and Appendix B
- Liaison officers.
- Air Space Command and Control. See appendix G.
- Checks with S6 on Dedicated satellite/cell phones and satellite/cable Internet capability.
- Automation equipment including power generation, back-up battery packs with surge protection, photocopiers, printing capability, field filing systems, supplies, tool kit, mobile shelving, tables, chairs, waterproof shelter, heating, cooling.
- Set end state conditions as soon as possible and recognize when the unit's work is complete. Coordinate these conditions with other organizations. The Army responds to disasters when conditions temporarily overwhelm State and local governments.
- Avoid Staying Too Long:

- State and local governments may expect Army assistance much longer than actually needed.
- The Army avoids allowing state and local governments to become dependent on Army assistance, thus impeding long-term recovery.
- If local businesses and contractors can perform the missions and tasks assigned to the Army, the continued employment of the Army may be unnecessary or illegal. It may rouse resentment of local citizens who feel deprived of employment opportunities.
- The primary role of the Army is to train, prepare for, and execute combat operations. Even a short absence from this focus on combat operations may degrade a unit's preparedness.
- End state and exit strategy. Include the following checks:
- Be attentive to measures of performance and the conditions the Army achieves to declare mission success and the end state.
- Make clear to state and local governments that the Army presence is limited and temporary.
- Agree with state and local governments on the acceptable end state, usually recognized as when state and local governments can re-establish normal operations.
- Use commercial vendors and contractors.
- Unit training prior to CSO mission

A-5. Table A4 provides planning items for S4, Sustainment. These lists are not all inclusive.

Table A-4. Planning checklist for S4, sustainment

S4 performs checks on the following —

- Sources of all classes of supply needed for critical restoration activities.
- Life support: mobile weatherproof shelters with all required equipment, billeting, mess, rations, water, bath and laundry.
- Funding. Units capture costs for reimbursement. Reimbursable authority may be provided.
- Transportation (administration). See chapter 2 of "Coordinating Military Deployments on Roads and Highways: A Guide for State and Local Agencies," dated May 2005, published by the U.S. Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Department, Petroleum, oils, and lubricants.
- Fuel access and fuel requirements.
- Minimum of a 90-day supply of repair parts based upon weather and increased use of certain types of equipment in unique environments.
- Locations/sources to purchase parts, fuel, oils, lubricants.
- Maintenance and recovery.
- Reception, staging, onward movement, and integration.
- Ammunition storage.
- Automation accessories required for austere environment.
- Maintain an accurate record of the mission. Items to include:
- Record of missions performed.

- Rosters of personnel involved.
- Travel and per diem (military and civil service).
- Civilian employee overtime
- Temporary personnel wages, travel, and per diem.
- Lodging cost.
- Transportation cost (car and bus rentals, chartered aircraft, fuel).
- Contracting cost.
- Equipment provided or operated (estimated hourly cost for operation).
- Material provided from regular stock. (all classes of supply).
- Laundry expenses.
- Official or morale phone calls.
- Retain receipts and other supporting documents. Supporting documents include:
- Unit orders.
- Temporary duty (TDY) orders.
- TDY payment vouchers. (Refer to unit procedures for Defense Travel System Management)
- Vehicle dispatch logs.
- Fuel card receipts.
- Hand receipts.
- Request and receipt of supplies.
- Government credit card receipts.
- Copy of contracts.
- Memorandums and other documentation of exceptions to policy/regulations.
- Mortuary services

A-6. Table A-5, below, shows planning items for C2, command and control systems. This list is not all inclusive.

Table A-5. Planning for command and control systems

S-6 or G-6 —

- Incorporate local and state responders into exercises prior to an incident to identify likely communications challenges.
- Establish liaison with military (Air National Guard, Army National Guard, Coast Guard, Air Force, Navy, Marine Corps), local, state, Federal agencies and organizations and NGOs and volunteers. The bottom line is command control systems coordinate with virtually any agency, organization or individual that can help support the mission to reduce loss of life, limb and property. Determine the most feasible solutions for effective communication.
- Initial communications capabilities are self-sufficient and interoperable with both first responders and local authorities.
- If operating as a JTF headquarters, the Joint Communication Control Center (JCCC) should incorporate and co-locate technical representatives from subordinate units (TF S6s, assigned signal battalion etc) with JCCC to facilitate planning and collaboration.
- Plan for all means of communications and purchasing of additional communication devices: telephone (satellite, cellular or land line), radio (military maritime, and civilian, in all bandwidths), Non-Secure Internet Protocol Router Network, SECRET Internet Protocol Router Network, video equipment, video teleconferencing, and

satellite-based commercial Internet systems. The goal is to communicate effectively and reduce restrictions to effective communication.

- Do not send equipment without operators, essential repair parts, operating and repair manuals, tools, initial fuel and power generation required.
- Send qualified signal leaders to ensure operators and equipment are used effectively.
- Prepare to provide communications equipment (cell phones, radios, base sets, etc.) to first responders based on mission assignments.
- Plan and coordinate for additional, extended logistical and maintenance support for equipment and personnel as well as unexpected requirements including generator support; maintenance of equipment; fuel requirements of vehicles, systems, and generators; and support for others' equipment (i.e. charging cell phones from your power source, charging satellite phones, identify internal and external electronic repair capabilities).
- Know the power requirements for your equipment. Always bring your own power generation equipment, parts and fuel for essential communication equipment.
- Communications (voice, data, video) with various emergency operations centers including military (Air National Guard, Army National Guard, Coast Guard, Air Force, Navy, Marines), local, state, or federal.
- Communications structures are expandable and flexible to meet future needs. What can be established initially and expanded to handle a greater demand? Small deployable packages ahead of larger deployable command posts for immediate feedback of requirements.
- Establish reach-back capability.
- Conduct a synchronization meeting between all primary agencies/entities that have impact as soon as possible.
- Realize that geography and weather affects signal performance. A communications system that worked well at one location might not work in another.

188

Appendix B

Safety

This appendix highlights safety concerns in the DOD Civil Support arena. In a civil support operation, safety and accident prevention are critical to mission accomplishment. Training and operating to standard are key elements in ensuring safe and effective mission accomplishment. Responses to any of the events addressed in this publication do not indicate a need for participants to cast aside safety and standards in order to accomplish the assigned tasks. Commanders, leaders at all levels, Soldiers, and Army Civilians are responsible for safety and safe completion of all tasks while conducting Civil Support Operations and activities.

B-1. The DODI 6055-series is the basis for DOD Safety and Occupational Health Programs. The Army Safety Program is addressed in AR 385-10 and DA PAM 385-10 and supporting publications. The US Air Force uses the Air Force Instruction or AFI 91 series and the US Navy uses the OPNAV Instruction or OPNAVINST 5100 series; the USMC uses the Marine Corps Orders (MCO) 5100 series in applying the DODIs.

B-2. Hazard identification, mitigation and management of risk are key factors in safely conducting civil support operations. The Army teaches and uses the Composite Risk Management (CRM) program as the primary decision–making tool for the commander and staff while the other services use Operational Risk Management (ORM). Both programs are used to identify hazards associated with the conduct of required operations and assist in the mitigation and management of associated risks. Commanders implement both throughout the operations process. Both are implemented through the operations process and integrated throughout the operation from beginning to end to ensure mission completion.

B-3. FM 5-19 provides in-depth guidance in the CRM process with examples for required staff estimates (See also FM 5-0). The Army Combat Readiness / Army Safety Center created the Ground Risk Assessment Tool (GRAT) for NIPR and SIPR use as a tool for commanders and staff to integrate the CRM process. Fewer accidents occur when Soldiers are aware of hazards and hazard prevention measures. The intent of this information is to increase awareness and reduce risk.

B-4. OSHA, CDC, FEMA, READY ARMY and other U.S. Government websites contain excellent safety information to assist responders at all levels identify hazards and risks to safe mission completion and protect the civilian population. These web sites contain information for specific disasters to ensure responders at all levels have the safety tools to provide support and aid in the rapid return to normalcy after such incidents.

B-5. During a DHS / FEMA disaster response, an Incident Action Plan (IAP) is published that identifies the Incident Action Safety Officer. DOD personnel supporting these operations will contact the IA safety officer and participate in any safety boards or meetings conducted in support of these operations.

COMPOSITE RISK MANAGEMENT

B-6. Disaster response involves numerous hazards. Composite Risk Management (CRM) is the Army's primary decision-making process for identifying hazards and managing risks. CRM is integrated into all phases of mission or operational planning, preparation, execution, and recovery. CRM is a decision making process used to mitigate risks associated with all hazards that have the potential to injure or kill personnel, damage or destroy equipment, or otherwise impact mission effectiveness.

B-7. Hazards associated with civil support operations vary greatly based on the incident. For each situation, the Army uses appropriate equipment and procedures to prevent injury and equipment loss. This translates to effective and efficient mission accomplishment. Safety equipment can include hard hats, combat helmets, gloves, personal protective equipment, biohazard protection, respirators, water hazard

protection, personal flotation devices, goggles, face shields, and knee and elbow pads. Subordinate units should coordinate with their JTF-Safety Officer regarding the type of personal protective equipment, and ensure that the S-4 / G-4 submits the requisitions.

B-8. In general, recovery and rescue operations require Soldiers to—

- Be aware of the surroundings and know how to enter damaged structures as required.
- Be alert for exposed electrical, gas, other utility lines, fallen or flying debris and raw sewage.
- Wear appropriate protective gear.
- Avoid moving or tampering with propane tanks unless necessary.
- Watch for nails, glass, and other sharp objects.
- Follow appropriate procedures when they discover human remains.
- Do not attempt to recover human remains (unless serving as a trained member of a recovery crew.)
- Avoid domestic and wild animals when possible. Leave handling of such animals to trained personnel.

HAZARDS

B-9. To identify hazards, the Army obtains information about the characteristics of the specific geographical region and the overall effects of the disaster. For example, flooding of buildings has significant secondary effects in hot, humid environments. Toxic mold and fungus thrive in these conditions. Standing, water-damaged structures can become uninhabitable for humans but may shelter dangerous stray or wild animals, insects, and reptiles.

B-10. Specific types of disasters require specific types of safety equipment. For example, safety equipment for disasters triggered by high winds and water includes life preservers and other marine-specific safety gear, waterproof boots, and special handling equipment for stray pets. Engineering safety equipment for assessment of damaged infrastructure includes equipment for safe repair of damaged electrical facilities, towers, buildings, and bridges. Disasters triggered by chemical, nuclear, and biological terrorist events or accidents require both Army and civilian protective clothing and masks. The Army uses civilian masks and clothing because the Army protective mask does not filter certain chemicals and the MOPP suit may not protect against some chemical hazards. Purchase of civilian OSHA-approved filtration masks and clothing is required for specific contamination agents.

B-11. The work pace in response to disasters and other events is demanding. Leaders monitor their Soldiers to avoid physical exhaustion. Rotating personnel between more demanding tasks and less demanding tasks mitigates the accumulation of fatigue. Leaders need to establish and enforce viable sleep plans.

PERSONAL HYGIENE

B-12. Personal hygiene requires every leader's personal attention. Many natural and manmade contaminants pose risks during civil support operations. Precautions include providing potable water, sanitary laundry and bath facilities, and latrines. Soldiers should wash their hands often, and make sure that waste is disposed of properly.

FOOD SAFETY

B-13. Trained personnel should inspect food and water sources frequently for safety. Contamination may come from sources such as extreme heat, chemicals, biohazards, pest infestations, smoke, and flooding.

PREVENTABLE INJURIES

B-14. Many injuries to the eyes, ears, head, hands, back, and feet are preventable with appropriate safety gear. When appropriate, Soldiers wear protective lenses, goggles, or face shields. Leaders enforce the use of hearing protection when personnel are operating heavy equipment, generators, or chain saws. Helmets or hard hats must be worn in construction areas in accordance with civilian requirements. Combat helmets (such as Kevlar helmets) do not provide the same protection as civilian hardhats. Soldiers must remove

rings or other jewelry that conduct electricity or may become hooked or snagged or interact adversely with chemicals or heat. Soldiers must wear gloves as required. Soldiers must use proper lifting techniques and lifting equipment to avoid back injuries. Soldiers must wear the correct footwear for the job and follow preventative measures for trench foot and fungal infections.

RESPIRATORY HAZARDS

B-15. Respiratory hazards are common in any disaster area. These include smoke, ash, molds, various airborne contaminants, toxic chemicals, and radiation. Soldiers can be exposed to asbestos, carbon monoxide, nuisance dust, or other caustic vapors. Qualified individuals should conduct tests to identify hazards. When needed, Soldiers must use the appropriate Army or civilian gas, mist, fume, or dust protective masks to remove airborne toxins. Commanders and leaders must understand that current MOPP / JSLIST gear does not provide adequate protection against most Toxic Industrial Chemicals (TICs) and Toxic Industrial Materials (TIMs).

BLOOD BORNE PATHOGENS AND DISEASES SUCH AS TETANUS

B-16. Everyone involved in disaster response operations must be aware of the risk from blood-borne pathogens. At a minimum, Soldiers must have up-to-date hepatitis and tetanus immunizations. Soldiers must observe basic preventive medicine precautions. Soldiers must use the following equipment, whenever required:

- Latex or rubber gloves.
- Over-garments for clothing protection.
- Face masks for respiratory protection.
- Goggles for eye protection from splashes or spills.
- Bleach and chlorine for cleanup and decontamination of biohazards.
- Biohazard bags.

STRESS

B-17. Everyone involved in rescue and recovery operations experiences increased stress and anxiety. Medical Combat and Operational Stress (COSC) teams, Army Chaplains, leaders and Soldiers are trained to manage stress. For information on control of combat stressors and for details about specific leader and individual actions to control stress, see FM 4-02.51, and FM 6-22.5. Primary stress management support channels for civilians include local churches and the American Red Cross. The Red Cross has the ability to send stress management teams to help citizens affected by the disaster.

ANIMALS

B-18. Disaster conditions increase the risk of bites and scratches from domestic or wild animals, including venomous snakes and rats. Soldiers can become infested with lice and fleas. The danger from diseases such as rabies increases. Household pets can become more aggressive or dangerous than usual. Soldiers take precautions to avoid animal and snakebites. They do not taunt, play with, or handle animals unless trained and authorized.

BITING OR STINGING INSECTS AND SPIDERS

B-19. Soldiers need to be aware of and protect themselves from mosquitoes, ticks, chiggers, ants, venomous spiders, fleas, lice, wasps, and bees. Refer to Army Center for Health Promotion and Preventive Medicine at http://chppm-www.apgea.army.mil for information on health and personal safety

HAZARDOUS PLANTS

B-20. Numerous hazardous plants require special handling and safety procedures. Some species of brush, such as oleander, are poisonous. Oleander is used as an ornamental plant around parks and residential areas. Burning it releases toxic chemicals. Poison ivy and poison oak are harmful when touched or burned. Refer

to the Army Center for Health Promotion and Preventive Medicine website at http://chppm-www.apgea.army.mil. For additional detail, go to http://chppm-www.apgea.army.mil/ento/plant.htm.

ELECTRICAL HAZARDS

B-21. All electrical transformers pose severe risks. Electrical lines can present a lethal shock hazard. To avoid injuries, Soldiers—

- Do not attempt to move transformers during cleanup.
- Mark transformers and report locations to the chain of command.
- Do not touch, work or operate equipment near downed power lines. Electricity might be restored to downed power lines without notice.

B-22. As commercial power is re-supplied, all emergency generators should be taken offline. Only qualified utility or engineer personnel conduct the changeover. If a downed power line is difficult to see but is in a traffic area, Soldiers clearly mark the area so no one touches the downed wire.

B-23. Soldiers use caution when antennas are near power lines. They should avoid erecting antennas near power lines. They identify antennas that may fall on power lines or on people and take appropriate action to prevent accidents or injury.

POWER GENERATOR SAFETY

B-24. Generator usage during Civil Support operations can create special concerns. Soldiers entering homes and buildings need to be aware of the carbon monoxide threat posed by generators used indoors with inadequate ventilation. Military personnel using generators should ensure:

- Generators are only operated by trained personnel.
- Safe refueling.
- Proper grounding and bonding of generators.
- Carbon Monoxide hazards.
- Generator fire hazards and fire protection.
- Generator electrical load limits and capacity.
- Electrocution hazards, prevention and first aid.

HANDLING CONTAMINATED ITEMS

B-25. Soldiers take precautions when handling and collecting contaminated items. A collection site for contaminated items is established. In addition, sites are designated for showering and clothing changes before Soldiers move to non-contaminated areas. For more information, see the following websites—

- U.S. Army Maneuver Support Center: www.wood.army.mil.
- U.S. Department of Labor Occupational Safety and Health Administration: www.osha.gov.
- DOD Chemical, Biological, Radiological and Nuclear Defense Information Analysis Center: http://www.CBRNEiac.apgea.army.mil.
- Center for Disease Control and Prevention: http://www.cdc.gov for further information.

FIRE

B-26. Fires trigger extreme heat, toxic gases, fumes, and toxic dust hazards. Most Army units do not have all the equipment required to fight large fires. Special breathing and burn prevention equipment is required. For further information, refer to the U.S. Army Maneuver Support Center website at www.wood.army.mil, and Fire Rescue I at http://www.firerescue1.com.

USE OF CHAIN SAWS

B-27. Chain saws are inherently dangerous. Chain saw safety guidance is available through every chain saw manufacturer and the U.S. Department of Labor Occupational Safety and Health Administration

website, www.osha.gov. They require maintenance and prudent use to reduce risk of injury and death. Leaders ensure chainsaw operators—

- Receive training before operation. This includes procedures for chain saw use and maintenance, and how to ensure cut trees fall safely.
- Use personal protective equipment including eye protection, hearing protection, leg guards, and gloves (adjusted according to weather conditions).
- Check for nails, wire, and other metal objects before cutting.

USE OF VEHICLES AND TRANSPORTATION

B-28. Soldiers must drive defensively and remain alert to potential hazards. Leaders and operators of vehicles—

- Pair experienced drivers with inexperienced drivers for supervision and hands-on training.
- Use experienced drivers in difficult terrain.
- Remind drivers to slow down in limited visibility, on rough terrain, and during inclement weather.
- Secure vehicle antennas to prevent contact with power lines and other objects.
- Take into account the maximum fording depth for each vehicle type, and ensure proper fording equipment and accessories are installed before entering water areas.
- Use ground guides during periods of limited visibility.
- Ensure operators are licensed on their vehicle. Operators designated to transport HAZMAT and ammunition are licensed to load, transport and off-load said material.

B-29. All operators of vehicles perform—

- Preventive maintenance checks and services, especially under adverse or unusual conditions.
- Special requirements covered in the "Operating Under Unusual Conditions" section of their respective operator's manual.

B-30. Leaders conduct convoy briefings before movement. Additionally, leaders ensure all vehicle operators know how to—

- Conduct a physical reconnaissance of the route to avoid hazards. Mark unavoidable hazards on a strip map and include them in the convoy briefing.
- Reconnoiter the route for bridges or underpasses that might be too low for large vehicles.
- Assess roads, bridges, and overpasses that may not be posted with weight or height restrictions.
- Reconnoiter routes for hazards below the water line before operations begin.
- Check water height before driving on submerged surfaces. (A good rule of thumb is not to drive into running water deeper than the vehicle axle.)

ACCIDENT REPORTING

B-31. Army Regulation (AR) 385-10 and DA Pamphlet (DA PAM) 385-40 address accident reporting requirements. All accidents will be reported within 24 hours to the task force safety office. Accidents meeting the following criteria may require more in-depth investigations and/or US Army Combat Readiness / Safety Center investigator support:

- Injury to any military personnel that results in a lost workday.
- Estimated damage of $2,000 or more to any military property or equipment.
- Nonfatal injury or illness to any civilian resulting from military operations that requires either hospitalization of 24 hours or more or the loss of work. .
- Estimated damage to civilian property of $2,000 or more resulting from military operations.

B-32. At a minimum the following information is provided for each accident reported:

- Point of contact for the accident information and their duty.
- Point of contact telephone number.

- Unit involved in the accident.
- Location of the accident.
- Date and time of the accident.
- Name and rank of personnel involved.
- Extent of injuries.
- Type of property or equipment damage.
- Estimated cost of damage.
- Estimated environmental cost.
- Description of circumstances and events.

Appendix C

National Guard Civil Support Teams

The Weapons of Mass Destruction Civil Support Teams (WMD – CST) of the National Guard are units that provide a specialized capability to respond to a CBRNE incident within their state. They provide significant capabilities to assist local and state agencies that may be overwhelmed by an intentional or unintentional release of CBRNE. They can also respond to other types of disasters. The WMD-CST often provides support for smaller-scale incidents where specific technical capabilities are required.

ORGANIZATION

C-1. The WMD-CST includes twenty-two Title 32, full-time NG, Active Guard Reserve (AGR) Army and Air NG personnel and is comprised of six sections: command, operations, communications, medical/analytical, administration/logistical, and survey. WMD-CST members receive specialized training and state-of-the-art equipment (both commercial and military) to provide the teams the capability to rapidly and accurately identify and model the extent of chemical, biological, or radiological contamination in a given area and provide a technical reach back capability to other experts. The level of specialization within the team results in a structure that contains a greater number of senior personnel than normally found in a similar-sized military unit.

OPERATIONS

C-2. The mission of the WMD-CST is to support civil authorities at domestic CBRNE incident sites by identifying CBRNE agents and substances, assessing current and projected consequences, advising on response measures, and assisting with appropriate requests for additional support. This includes incidents involving the intentional or unintentional release of CBRNE, to include toxic industrial chemicals and Materials (TIM), and natural or man-made disasters that result or could result in the catastrophic loss of life or property in the United States.

EMPLOYMENT

C-3. In the event of an emergency resulting from actual or suspected use of a WMD, the National Guard Bureau's (NGB's) Current Operations Division facilitates WMD-CST employment through the response management plan (RMP). The RMP prescribes NGB-assigned national response categories for each WMD-CST and consists of three mission categories: Priority (gold), Ready (silver), or Standby (bronze). The assigned response category directs how rapidly a WMD-CST must be prepared to deploy to an incident scene after official notification. Non-mission-capable teams receive a "black" status, which alerts the National Guard Bureau to cover that state with other teams. Note that the legislation creating the WMD-CST program permits WMD-CSTs to deploy across state boundaries in Title 32 status without a formal written agreement, but based simply on a verbal agreement between the affected governors. Up to 22 CST's deployed to states impacted by Hurricane Katrina over a 45 day period in 2005.

C-4. Priority response (gold) requires the deployment of an advanced party of the WMD-CST no later than 90 minutes after the official time of notification (N-hour) and deployment of the remaining WMD-CST no later than N + 3 hours to support a response anywhere within the Nation. Ready response (silver) requires units to focus on preparing for possible priority response missions outside their home state. WMD-CSTs in this phase, once directed, must deploy to the event no later than N + 24 hours. Standby response (bronze) requires units to focus on areas such as training requirements and leave. WMD-CSTs in this category, once directed, must prepare for and deploy no later than N + 72 hours.

CAPABILITIES

C-5. The Analytical Laboratory System (ALS) is a self-contained, C-130 transportable, mobile, analytical platform. The ALS provides advanced technologies with enhanced sensitivity and selectivity for identification and characterization of CBRNE agents. Within the compartments of the ALS, operators have the ability to prepare, extract, analyze, and store environmental samples and to document the contaminated environmental conditions. They may also prepare samples for possible law enforcement evidence in the event of a criminal or terrorist incident, and send them to other national laboratory networks. The members of the ALS team provide the incident commander with the best available on-site analysis of hazards. This allows the state and federal agencies to determine appropriate follow-on response to a CBRNE incident. When linked to the Unified Command Suite (UCS), the ALS provides on-site data and analysis to national laboratories and subject matter experts.

C-6. The UCS is a self-contained, stand-alone C-130 air-mobile, fielded communications system that operates in urban and undeveloped areas using portable and fixed equipment. The UCS provides real-time voice, data, and video communications reach back (unclassified through secret information) among WMD-CST members, local and state emergency response agencies, lead federal agents, and supporting military activities. This enhanced communications system allows technicians with the WMD-CST to share on-scene data and analysis with any responding or supporting agency.

C-7. The Advanced Echelon (ADVON) of the team deploys using a specially equipped sport utility vehicle with capabilities similar to the UCS, but with limited encryption. It is interoperable with the UCS and first responders. En route ADVON capabilities allow mobile voice and data international maritime satellite (INMARSAT), satellite telephone communications, a media center with onboard navigational information, and intra-team communications.

C-8. Based on its original NIMS/ICS compliant design, the CST's integrated Command, Operations, Medical, and Communications sections can form the support nucleus of a much larger incident command staff. During large terrorists incidents such as 9-11 and natural disasters like Katrina CST have provided incident commanders critical communications, hazard predication modeling, medical assessments and support staff. Joint and inter-agency CBRNE response task forces of over 200 people have been structured around the CST's sections.

LIMITATIONS

C-9. Although WMD-CST can provide a wide array of support, the teams have limited endurance without follow-on support. The WMD-CST can conduct 24-hour continuous operations for limited periods. Extended CST deployments have lasted 60 days during sustained response operations. However, commanders should consider providing the team additional personnel for continuous operations extending beyond 18 hours. WMD-CST are one deep in most specialty functions. Factors such as ongoing training (including required schools), mission preparation requirements, leave, illness, and personal emergencies reduce the number of personnel available for contingency missions. Required response times require careful management by The Adjutant General to ensure mission readiness. To meet increased force requirements or sustained mission duration multiple CSTs are frequently employed to an incident

C-10. WMD-CST equipment receives rapid resupply in the form of push packages from the (CoMSUPCEN). Equipped with CBRNE detection and protection equipment found in many government and civilian agencies the CST can also purchase needed equipment during a response. These packages typically move by commercial carrier to the response location.

C-11. With 57 teams across the nation, CST's normally self-deploy using organic vehicles. Teams routinely practice airlift movement to reinforce responses in more remote states and territories.. Normally, the Air National Guard moves the teams using C-130 transports. Interstate movement times can vary widely due to distance, available airlift, and weather. Although WMD-CST equipment is rail mobile, that mode is the least timely.

C-12. WMD-CST is capable mainly of self-decontamination. Limited capabilities and supplies exist for decontamination of first responders.

C-13. The organic medical capability of WMD-CST, including formulary, is very limited. The team only has enough medical capability to support team personnel.

C-14. The WMD-CST is a National Guard response asset. Strategic planning normally excludes them from Army contingency force packages deployed outside the U.S. and its territories. However, the USNORTHCOM or PACOM commander may request one or more WMD-CST as part of a civil support mission.

Appendix D

National Guard CBRNE Enhanced Response Force

The National Guard CBRNE Enhanced Response Force Packages (CERFP) provide specialized consequence management capabilities required by local, state, or federal authorities. It is the "medium" Army response package, considerable larger than the WMD-CST, but much smaller than the CCMRF. Seventeen CERFP, distributed among the National Guards of Massachusetts, New York, Pennsylvania, West Virginia, Florida, Illinois, Texas, Missouri, Colorado, California, Hawaii, Ohio, Minnesota, Georgia, Virginia, Nebraska, and Washington, ensure that every FEMA region has at least one available

RESPONSIBILITY

D-1. The CERFP supports mass casualty decontamination operations at or near a military or civilian CBRNE incident site; provides casualty search and extraction; and emergency medical treatment, triage and patient stabilization. Requests for the CERFP originate from a variety of state sources, but will be channeled through the JFHQ-State and coordinated with the State Emergency Management Agency or equivalent. The CERFP can deploy within 6 hours of alert notification and perform their mission upon arrival at the incident site. With augmentation and support, the CERFP can continue operations for 72 hours or longer, at which time additional federal forces (civilian and military) will arrive to continue the mission.

ORGANIZATION

D-2. National Guard Soldiers and Airmen from TOE units form the CERFP. They organize and train for no-notice CBRNE consequence management. The CERFP deploys to an incident site and provides command and control, casualty decontamination operations, casualty search and extraction, and emergency medical triage and patient stabilization. When reinforced with a security element, the CERFP also conducts cordon and entry control point missions. The CERFP can be task organized with almost any National Guard or Regular Army headquarters. Operational parameters include:

- The CERFP will normally operate under state command and control as an element of the National Guard (Title 32).
- The CERFP supports the state's incident command system when requested through the State Emergency Management System.
- CERFP may be federalized (Title 10 status), and pass to the attachment or OPCON of a Federal military JTF or other higher headquarters. The modular combat support brigade is optimum force headquarters for the CERFP
- A single CERFP can operate a maximum capacity for up to 12 hours. If the incident commander requires continued high-tempo support, the force headquarters requests one or more additional CERFP.

D-3. The CERFP is comprised of four response elements: medical treatment; decontamination; search and extraction; and a command and control team. Other attachments may include a Fire Fighting Element, a Fatality Search and Recovery Team, Air and Ground Casualty Transportation assets, and ANG Expeditionary Medical Support Teams. The JFHQ–State is responsible for coordinating administrative and logistic requirements that will be required for training certification, orders, travel, equipment maintenance, and storage.

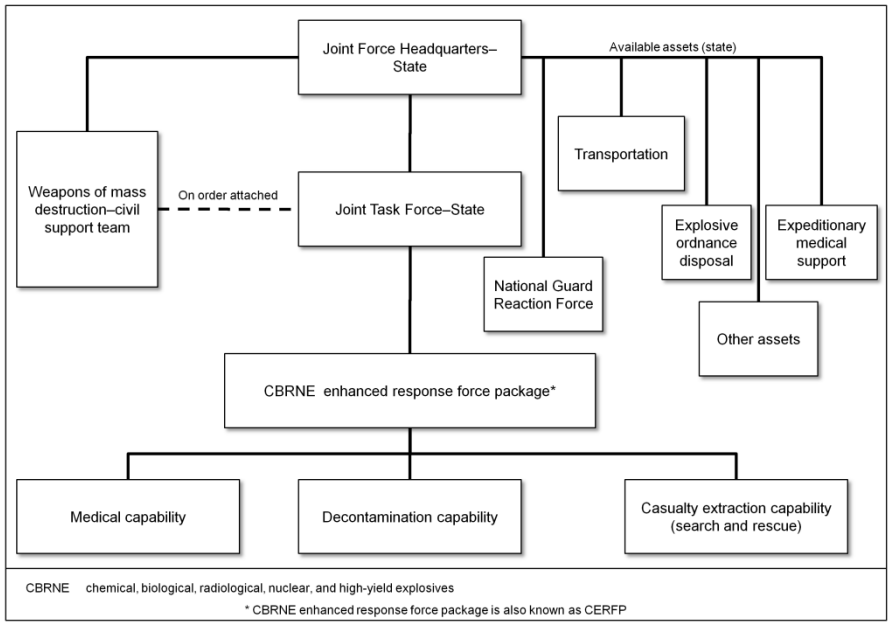


Figure D-1. Example of CERFP organization

D-4. The command and control (C2) element must be prepared to execute recall of the CERFP and coordinate adequate transportation for CERFP personnel and equipment to the incident site. At the incident site, the C2 element coordinates with the incident or task force commander.

D-5. The medical element provides short duration, pre-hospital emergency medical treatment during a CBRNE response mission and at rescue sites. Specifically, the team works with decontamination and/or casualty extraction teams to provide emergency medical treatment and triage in a contaminated environment and stabilization and treatment in the cold zone prior to evacuation.

D-6. The decontamination element conducts ambulatory and non-ambulatory patient decontamination under supervision of medical personnel. The decontamination element will don appropriate Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) (defined as a minimum of Level C) when conducting decontamination.

D-7. Unlike most search and rescue teams, Search and Extraction Element has capability to identify and recover casualties from a contaminated environment. As a type II collapse search and rescue team, the CERFP can conduct medium intensity operations, (as defined in FEMA 508-9) for 12-24 hours.

D-8. The parent National Guard JFHQ may attach a security element as shown. This normally comes out of that state's National Guard Response Force. The security element receives training in contaminated environment operating procedures. Note that if a WMD-CST is on scene, the CERFP may assume OPCON of it. Although not shown, the Defense Threat Reduction Agency (DTRA) can support the CERFP with technical information on contaminants and other hazards through reach-back to subject matter experts (SME). States should be prepared to task organize EOD and CERFP capabilities to respond to situations involving explosives. Detachments of the 52nd Ordnance Group (EOD), located around the country, provide EOD capability in response to requests for federal assistance. Many civilian law enforcement agencies also possess EOD capability.

OPERATIONS

D-9. The search and extraction element locates and removes the casualties from a contaminated area (the "hot zone") to an initial decontamination area known as a "warm zone." Medical personnel with the search element perform initial triage and prioritize casualties before decontamination. The decontamination element moves the patient to decontamination, records the casualty, and decontaminates the patient. Once decontaminated, the medical team provides medical treatment and stabilization in a contaminant –free area

(the "cold zone") prior to evacuation to an area hospital. If required, the security detachment controls all entry and exit from the CERFP area.

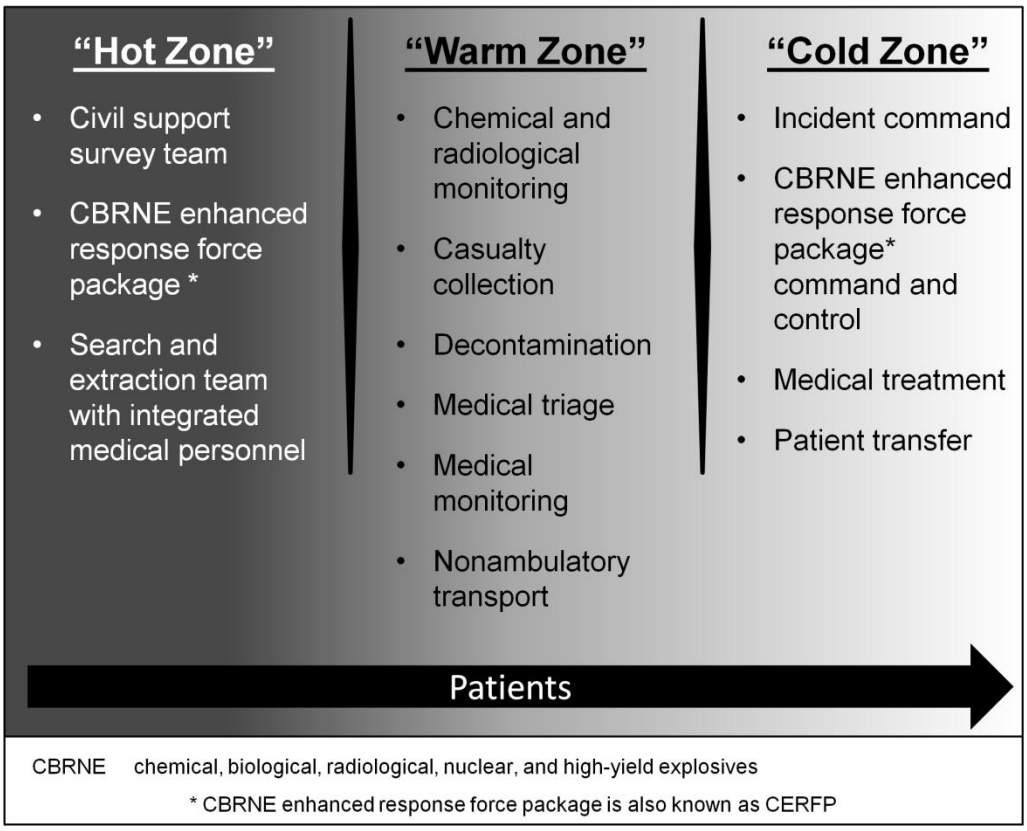


Figure D-2. Example of CERFP patient flow

DEPLOYMENT

D-10. When alerted, the CERFP members report to designated armories or staging areas and will deploy by the fastest means available to the incident site. The CERFP command and control element will establish liaison with the incident command staff and/or NG Task Force Commander. The CERFP will deploy with equipment to the incident site or staging area using organic transportation, and/or designated National Guard ground or air assets. An additional command element from the supporting state may deploy to coordinate the CERFP's employment and sustainment with the supported JFHQ-state. Table D-1 below highlights the authorities associated with various employment options.

SUSTAINMENT

D-11. The CERFP leadership works with the JTF-State, the JFHQ-State, CoMSUPCEN and the National Guard Support Center in Lexington, Kentucky to sustain extended operations. The CoMSUPCEN, should be prepared to provide immediate service and sustainment support for non-standard, commercial off the shelf equipment, as requested. Additionally, United States Property and Fiscal Officer (USPFO), Surgeon, Chaplain, Public Affairs, Operations, and state logistical staffs must be prepared to support the operational employment of the NG CERFP. Chaplain and Surgeon activities should comply with state and federal guidelines for employment. If federalized, the CERFP will receive support from the gaining unit commander.

Appendix E

CBRNE Consequence Management Response Force

The CBRNE Consequence Management Response Force (CCMRF) is the designated force that is trained and equipped to provide the DOD federal responds to a CBRNE incident. It is a multi-component and multi-service force package; however all forces are Federal military forces. This appendix provides a general overview of the CCMRF along with some considerations for its employment.

E-1. The CCMRF is the largest of the military forces trained for CBRNE consequence management. Should a significant CBNRE incident occur within the United States, USNORTHCOM would alert and prepare to deploy the CCMRF to augment Federal consequence management efforts. For planning purposes the force includes about 5,000 personnel task organized into three subordinate task forces. Units may vary depending upon forces provided by JFCOM to USNORTHCOM, but the capabilities remain constant. Joint Task Force Civil Support (JTF-CS), a standing USNORTHCOM JTF, will command and control the initial CCMRF committed. Additional CCMRFs will be employed under the C2 of other JTFs (TF-51 or TF-52 in CONUS) as the forces become available to CDR USNORTHCOM. Figure E-1 illustrates the state response CBRNE elements and the CCMRF.

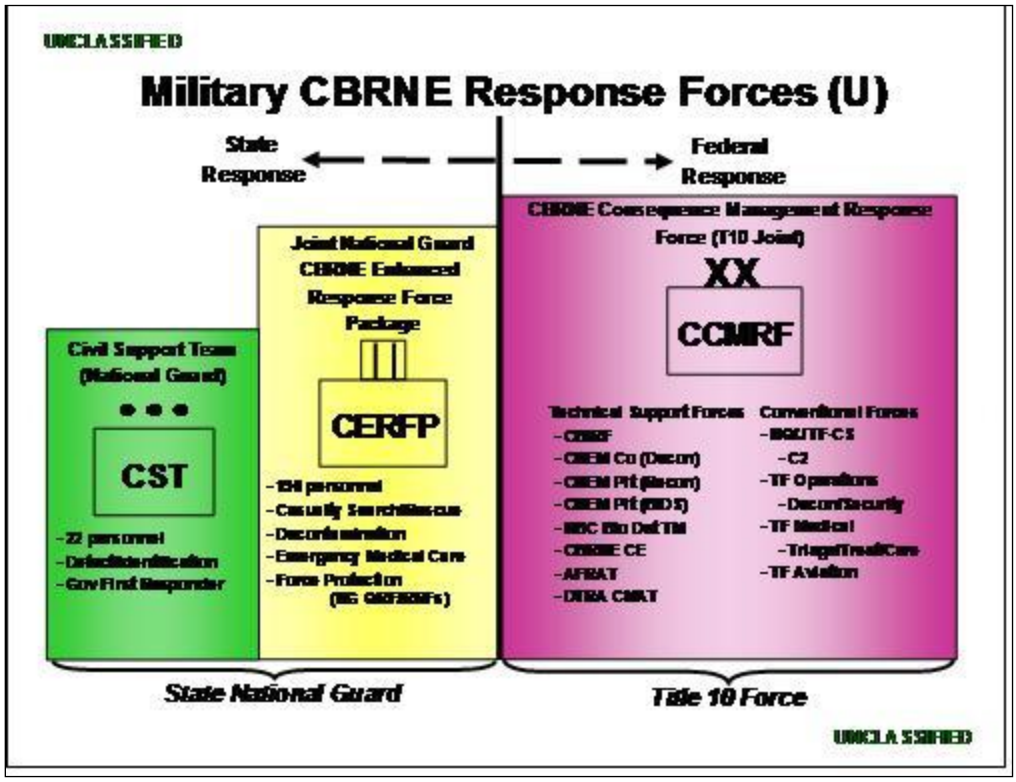


Figure E-1. The WMD-CST, CERFP, and CCMRF

ORGANIZATION

E-2. The CCMRF is a multi-service force drawn from the active and reserve components of the Air Force, Army, Navy, and Marines. Forces designated for the CCMRF remain under the administrative control (ADCON) of the parent Service. Commander USNORTHCOM exercises coordinating authority for

training of these forces through Commander JFCOM. Commander USNORTHCOM reviews training readiness, and mobilization plans for reserve component forces in the CCMRF.

JOINT TASK FORCE CIVIL SUPPORT

E-3. JTF-CS is a USNORTHCOM standing joint task force headquarters, commanded by a two-star officer, assigned to USARNORTH as the land component commander (JFLCC). The task force consists of active, Guard and Reserve military members drawn from all service branches, as well as civilian personnel, commanded by a federalized (Title 10) National Guard general officer. JTF-CS plans and integrates DOD support to the designated Primary Agency for domestic CBRNE consequence management operations. When approved by the Secretary of Defense and directed by USNORTHCOM, JTF-CS deploys to the incident site and executes command and control of designated DOD forces, providing support to civil authorities to save lives, prevent injury and provide temporary critical life support. JTF-CS focuses on responding to the effects of a CBRNE incident beyond the capability of local, state and civilian federal agencies. Some typical JTF-CS tasks include incident site support, casualty medical assistance and treatment, displaced populace support, mortuary affairs support, logistical support, and air operations. Additional CCMRFs will be commanded by a JTF with similar capabilities to JTF-CS. The role of the JTF within the CCMRF construct is illustrated in Figure E-2.

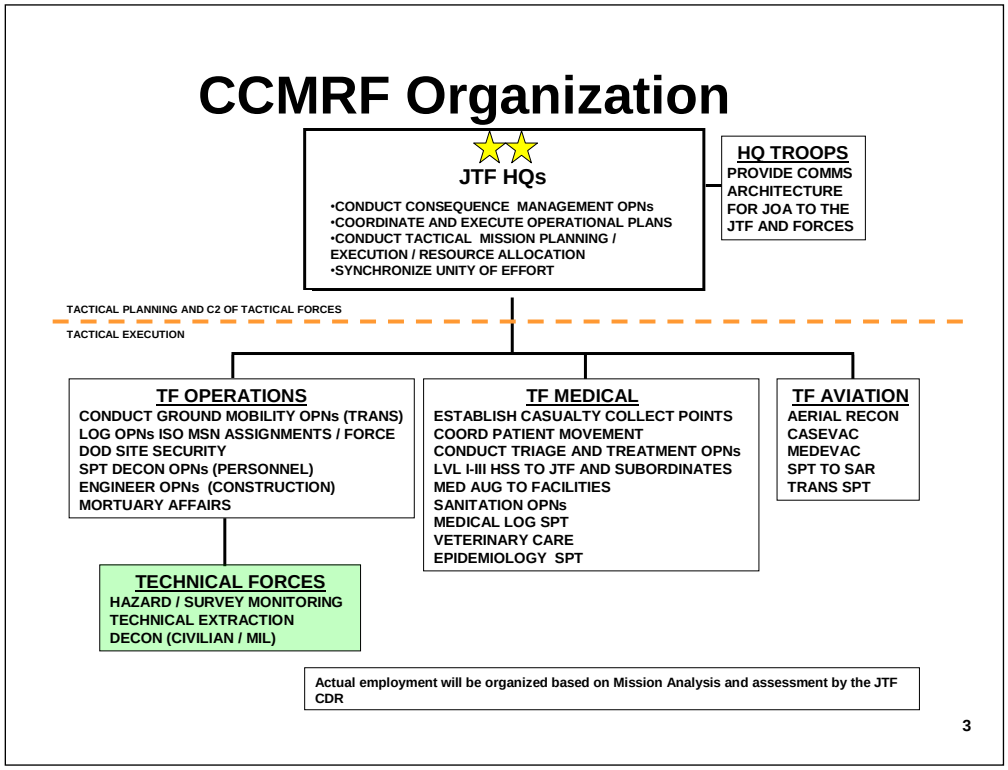


Figure E-2. Organization of the CCMRF

CCMRF SUBORDINATE TASK FORCES

E-4. The CCMRF normally consists of three subordinate, multi-service task forces: Task Force Operations (TF OPS); Task Force Medical (TF MED); and Task Force Aviation (TF AVN). Each task force has a Colonel or equivalent (O-6) in command, and is organized a brigade or equivalent headquarters. The composition of each task force varies according to the availability and organization of forces selected for the CCMRF. Subsequent paragraphs describe the CCMRF using example forces. The CCMRF is the tailored force based on the nature of CBRNE incident, it is also the base organization that additional forces sent by DOD to support the incident will work through. It is important to note that the logistic support to this force is limited and dependent on the Theater logistic support established by USARNORTH.

Task Force Operations

E-5. The largest task force in the CCMRF is TF OPS. The basic organization comes from an infantry brigade combat team or a combat support brigade (Maneuver Enhancement) (CSB-ME) although JFCOM may designate other brigades. A Marine Expeditionary Brigade (MEB) may also become TF OPS, but this manual uses the Army for illustration. The brigade commander task organizes the brigade and any attachments into multi-purpose subordinate task forces intended for area support, and functional task forces intended for specialized activities such as decontamination or mortuary affairs support. The brigade commander organizes subordinate task force elements around the battalion headquarters of the brigade.

E-6. In addition to the organic elements of the brigade, TF Operations normally receives specialized CBRNE units, and additional engineer assets. In the case of an Army IBCT, the Marines may provide a Chemical Biological Incident Response Force (CBIRF), itself a multi-functional task force. The Air Force and Navy may provide engineer assets in addition to any assigned to the Army brigade.

Task Force Aviation

E-7. Task force aviation provides rotary wing lift capabilities to the JTF. The task force normally includes an Army aviation brigade, minus its assigned attack aviation units. The task force also deploys with an aviation maintenance battalion tailored to support the mix of aircraft deployed. The task force also includes an air traffic control element to assist the JFACC with Army airfield operations. The aviation brigade provides direct support to JTF elements and general support as directed to the emergency support functions. When deployed TF Aviation may receive tactical control of Marine or Navy aircraft.

Task Force Medical

E-8. Task Force Medical is a multi-service task force that provides medical support to JTF CS. Typically the task force includes two battalion equivalent capabilities; a patient treatment and evacuation unit, and a medical support unit which provides logistical support and also includes ground evacuation assets. Specialized detachments unique to the CCMRF round out the medical capability. These may include contaminated patient care capabilities, CBRNE capable laboratory support, mental health specialists, veterinary care, and disease control sections.

E-9. TF Medical has three priorities of care. The first is to provide medical care to deployed forces within the JTF. The second is to provide reinforcing medical capabilities to civilian responders for collection, screening, emergency treatment, and evacuation of patients. The third priority is to provide health service support to Federal and state personnel when their medical requirements outstrip their agencies' capacity.

OPERATIONS

E-10. CCMRF response is rapid, flexible, and provides a clear chain of command for DOD CBRNE CM operations. When executed, DOD will support civil authorities IAW the NRF. CCMRFs are the planned initial response to anticipated mission assignments. Requests for Forces (RFF) will be used to request forces in addition to the CCMRF to meet anticipated mission assignments at execution. The CCMRFs are postured to rapidly respond to CBRNE incidents within the USNORTHCOMs AOR. The CCMRF conducts operations according to the six joint phases shown in figure E-3.

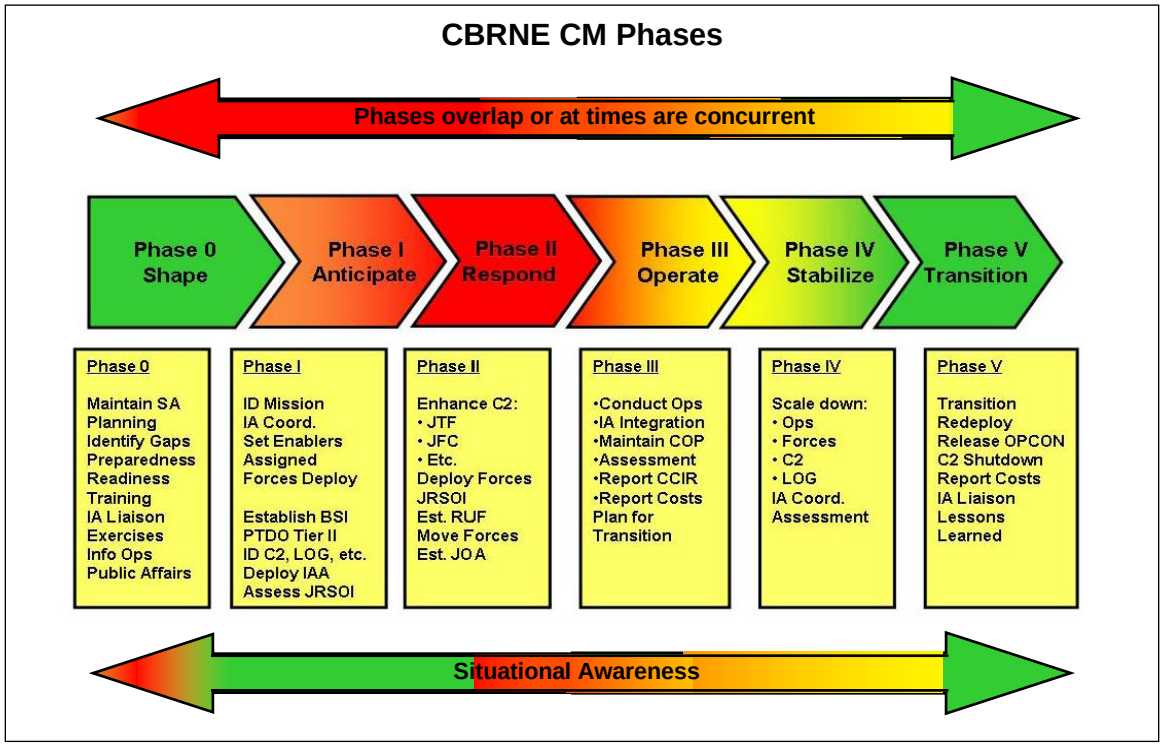


Figure E-3. Joint disaster response phases

PHASE 0 - SHAPING

E-11. Phase 0 is continuous situational awareness and preparedness. Actions in this phase include interagency coordination, planning, identification of gaps, exercises, and public affairs outreach. This phase sets conditions for increased CBRNE CM interoperability and cooperation with interagency partners and designated CCMRF units, through active engagement in planning, conferences and exercises; supports the implementation of USNORTHCOM's Theater Security Cooperation Plan (TSC) with bordering nations. These strategic activities continue through all phases. Readiness of designated response forces is the focus during this phase with priority on CBRNE CM operations and building command relationships. Commanders focus on training and rehearsals for CBRNE response, based on the training priorities provided through the ASCC. Selected commanders and staff participate in training provided by USARNORTH (DSCA courses I and II). Individuals and detachments receive training from experts on operations in a contaminated environment. The subordinate CCMRF unit staffs carefully review interoperability challenges, concentrating on C2 systems and liaison requirements with their C2 headquarters and the ASCC. Further, they identify shortfalls and submit requests for additional capabilities through their parent headquarters. These staffs also modify existing plans to fit their particular organization and capabilities, and review the plans with the JTF Commander. This includes updating and submitting time phased force deployment data (TPFDD) through the ASCC and their parent headquarters to USTRANSCOM. The TF commander pays particular attention to interoperability between elements from the other Services, and includes LNO and other requirements. Finally, the shaping phase includes a mission rehearsal exercise. The phase ends with the identification of a potential CBRNE CM mission through indicators and warning, SECDEF direction, or a CBRNE incident.

PHASE I – ANTICIPATE

E-12. The objective of this phase is to minimize the response time of DOD assets and provide CCDR with assessments that allow rapid and effective tailoring of the CCMRF and identification of additional capabilities and forces. During Phase 1 the DCOs and USNORTHCOM Situational Awareness Teams (NSATs) provide assessments to USNORTHCOM. The assessments determine the scope and magnitude of

the incident; identify potential theater response forces, CCMRF force requirements to expedite response; and identify potential C2 node requirements. This phase ends when CCMRF and follow-on forces receive prepare-to-deploy orders and are staged and ready to deploy; or when the CCDR determines that the scope and magnitude of the incident does not warrant CCMRF forces employment. In the former case, NORTHCOM deploys consequence management forces. In the latter case, the CCDR directs the return to Phase 0 operations.

E-13. At tactical level, once units receive a deployment order, OPCON passes from the supporting CCDR to the gaining CCDR. Each CCMRF TF deploys LNOs to a location designated by the JTF Commander. These LNOs provide communications connectivity for dissimilar systems and pass situational assessments back to their TF as the situation develops. Simultaneously, each task force deploys an advance party to the base support installation identified by the JFLCC or Joint Force Commander for JRSOI and base support. The TF commanders coordinate with the JTF commander on RUF, arming status, law enforcement missions, intelligence support and restrictions, public affairs guidance, deployment priorities, and mission assignments (if known). Because of the nature of the most likely CBRNE CM operations, forces will likely deploy into and remain in the JOA for the entire length of the CBRNE CM operation. For a catastrophic incident, the CCDR plans for force rotation.

PHASE II - RESPOND

E-14. During Phase II, JTF CS deploys forces to key theater nodes and to the JOA to save lives and maintain public trust. The JTF establishes command and control of all assigned Federal military forces; develops a Common Operational Picture (COP); and ensures efficient JRSOI. Commanders of subordinate units appoint a capable officer and small staff to continue to manage unit arrival and JRSOI. As units complete JRSOI they occupy their assigned operating bases and prepare for mission assignments. Leaders take every available opportunity to reinforce soldier skills they will need when operating in their AOs. They stress protective measures, RUF, and situation awareness and reporting. TF Commanders receive and integrate additional forces identified during Phase II. They provide updates to JTF CS and keep the supporting installations informed. Phase II success equals forces deployed with enough C2 and consequence management capability to safely and effectively begin operations. This phase ends when 1) response forces are prepared to conduct operations in the JOA; 2) when theater support and incident response forces are postured to conduct consequence management operations; and 3) the JFLCC and JTF establishes command and control Federal military forces and begins execution of approved Mission Assignments (MAs).

PHASE III - OPERATE

E-15. Phase III begins when CBRNE CM operations commence. Operations focus on mitigation of CBRNE effects, saving lives and preventing further injury, and providing temporary critical life support. The aim of operations is to enable community recovery through efficient employment of available capabilities. All commanders focus their efforts on protection of assigned forces.

E-16. At the tactical level, the JTF commander will begin assigning missions to units as soon as the units complete JRSOI. Each TF can expect to receive multiple missions in the form of FRAGOS together with a priority of effort. Commanders circulate constantly between their subordinates in order to experience and assess for themselves the situation on the ground. They also conduct information engagement actions with residents and responders working near CCMRF forces. Further, Task Force commanders at every level from company to brigade should become personally involved in coordination with National Guard commanders operating in proximity to CCMRF units. The OPLAN and FRAGOs, and e-mails cannot substitute for face to face coordination between commanders to achieve unity of effort.

E-17. If possible, commanders should meet with their Guard counterparts at least once a day. Certain units of the CCMRF may work closely with highly specialized personnel from other agencies, such as the Defense Threats Reduction Agency (DTRA) and the Department of Energy (DOE) as part of their mission assignment. The commander should designate a subordinate commander to provide any required support to these agencies and personally visit them to assess the progress of operations.

E-18. Normally Army TTP and METL conditions and standards are adequate to meet the tactical expectation of civil authorities. However in some circumstances, additional requirements will be established. Army forces should expect some local authority coordination and periodic work oversight to confirm that projects are progressing on time and confirm that performance is to acceptable civil standards. Phase III ends when deployed Federal military forces are present in sufficient mass that no additional forces are required to perform mission assignments. Further, Phase III ends with CBRNE effects are reduced and conditions are set for transition to stabilizing operations in preparation for transition to civil authorities or designated command.

PHASE IV - STABILIZE

E-19. Phase IV begins when the utilization of CCMRF capabilities are decreasing and the majority of assigned missions have been completed, or are under execution, and no other significant CBRNE mission assignments are anticipated. The purpose of this Phase is to allow the JTFs to scale down CBRNE-CM operations. Determining whether DOD has met transition criteria will require close coordination and day-to-day interaction with the primary agency. Forces begin preparation of any special equipment for turn in. Planning begins for movement to staging areas for redeployment to home-station. Selective redeployment of forces that are no longer required for operations may occur. Phase IV ends successfully when civil authorities can sustain consequence management operations with reduced DOD forces and capabilities.

PHASE V - TRANSITION

E-20. Phase V begins with the transition of operational responsibilities to designated civil authority or follow-on military forces. Civil authorities are postured for full recovery operations and have the ability to accommodate surge requirements. Well before this phase begins, TF and JTF planners develop transition criteria with specific measures of effectiveness for each mission assignment. As required, they modify reporting formats to indicate readiness for transition. Resource managers should assign particular attention to accountability for non-expendable items that are to be turned over to a civilian agency as part of transition. Site clean-up and turnover of HAZMAT is coordinated with Federal, State, local authorities for disposition. Lessons learned and after action reports are completed. Commanders review redeployment schedules and mode of transport details with their subordinates and ensure that leaders understand the schedule and requirements for a safe and efficient redeployment. Forces safely redeploy to home-station to reset and reconstitute.

E-21. The phase ends when the CCMRF has moved out of the JOA and is no longer under CDRUSNORTHCOM command and control. Success in Phase V is achieved when DOD Federal military forces have transitioned all operations back to civil authorities and redeployed to home station.

CONSIDERATIONS

E-22. Deliberate or unintentional / inadvertent Chemical, Biological, Radiological, Nuclear, and High-Yield Explosive (CBRNE) incidents / releases are one of the great challenges facing the United States today. Within the spectrum of potential CBRNE-related crises, a terrorist attack on US soil presents daunting challenges for civilian authorities. Unintentional CBRNE releases, whether the result of accidents or natural events, could create catastrophic results for civil authorities. CBRNE incidents may cause overwhelming, extensive environmental and infrastructure devastation; create general service disruptions; and produce mass casualties. Such situations may occur at one or multiple locations, simultaneously or at various intervals, thus potentially immediately overwhelming local resources.

E-23. Initial task organization for the task force should stress unit integrity above capability management. The CCMRF brings together many different elements in a dangerous environment with limited experience working with each other. Exercising command and control through a familiar chain of command, using mission orders, will improve mission effectiveness, even though it will appear to be less efficient. Whenever possible, commanders should specify a TACON or support relationship between units from different components and services. This also simplifies logistical support. As the operations progresses, subordinate elements will become accustomed to the mission and the environment, and commanders may change the task organization more frequently.

E-24. Request and integrate experts in CBRNE training and operations. Use them to assess training and mission preparation.

E-25. Strike a balance between mission accomplishment and risk. In order to evaluate the risks, commanders need to understand the hazards. This often requires individual study and expert advice. Some of the hazards will be difficult to understand, but commanders should press for explanations until they are satisfied that they understand both what the experts know, and what they don't know. Require subordinates to become familiar with the risks associated with the mission and the steps their subordinates need to take to mitigate potential hazards.

E-26. Stay flexible and be prepared to adapt to unforeseen circumstances. Keep in mind that previous CBRNE incidents differed in many ways from the current mission, and that what the units find on the ground may differ from what they expected. Be prepared to deal with panic-stricken citizens, many of whom will be very difficult to control.

Appendix F

Airspace Command and Control

This appendix provides guidance on civilian airspace control requirements and military airspace command and control during civil support. Multiple organizations use aircraft during disaster response operations. Army leaders and staff understand and adapt air command and control procedures to operate effectively with other organizations to reduce the chance of accident or injury.

F-1. Army aviation support for civil support operations includes air movement support of logistics and transportation operations; command and control support to federal, state, and local authorities; air evacuation, and reconnaissance and surveillance support of law enforcement operations. Active duty and National Guard aviation units support civil authorities for counterdrug programs, civil disturbances, and border surveillance operations. Aviation support during disaster assistance concentrates on air movement, medical evacuation, and command and control. Disasters may temporarily close ground lines of communication due to debris or higher priority traffic. Large metropolitan areas may experience traffic gridlock. Aviation units may include medium lift assets in the initial response to enhance distribution of critical personnel, supplies, and equipment over these obstacles. Early aerial incident awareness of the disaster area by federal, state, and local authorities helps to assess relief priorities.

AIRSPACE CONTROL

F-2. The guiding rule for airspace control in civil support operations is that **the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) is always the airspace coordinating authority (ACA)**. The national airspace remains under the control of the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA). The airspace control plan developed by the FAA for emergencies provides specific planning guidance and procedures that all organizations, civilians and military, follow for airspace control during civil support operations. FEMA air operations branch has guidance on aviation integration during incidents. For further information, query Disaster Air Operations under FEMA.

F-3. The airspace control plan is normally a separate document referenced in the National Response Framework. Each state is to have an airspace coordination plan (ACP) signed by the Adjutant General, maintained by 1st Air Force. As required the Joint Forces Air Component Commander (JFACC) coordinates with the FAA and issues supplementary instructions to air commanders to accommodate changes required for emergency operations by military aircraft.

F-4. The airspace coordination plan assumes that civilian air traffic control facilities and communications will control all air traffic to provide visual and instrument flight rules separation. DOD command and control assets will augment FAA capabilities when an incident disrupts civilian air command and control facilities. For large scale civil support operations, the military plan outlines airspace procedures for assessment, search, rescue, recovery, and reconstitution operations for all military organizations. The airspace coordination plan describes processes and procedures for the safe employment of air assets, both military and civilian, operating within the rescue and recovery area. The airspace control plan is used for other military operations within the scope directed by the JFACC.

F-5. The airspace coordination plan is directive for all assets, military or civilian, operating in or through the designated disaster recovery area. Strict adherences to the airspace control plan, combined with FAA air traffic procedures, are designed to ensure safe, efficient, and expeditious use of airspace while still allowing all participants the ability or complete their respective mission. The air component command for USNORTHCOM is Air Force North (AFNORTH). The Air Tasking Order (ATO) is used to build and promulgate the plan and pass information for air support during a given period of time. Airspace control measures can be adjusted on a daily basis according to mission requirements by making changes in the Special Instructions (SPINS) within the ATO. To assist with coordination, all military and civil agencies and organizations will provide liaisons to the JFACC, and all air activities will be coordinated with FAA

representatives. While this is true for DOD Federal Missions, AFNORTH offers the CRASS (Contingency Response Air Support Schedule) to all agencies supporting disaster response operations. Participation is voluntary; civil and other federal agencies are not required to participate with the CRASS, but are highly encouraged, as this makes the airspace safer for everyone

F-6. The Regional Air Movement Coordination Center (RAMCC) located at Tyndall AFB, assists DOD to provide assets and coordinate with the primary federal agency controlling disaster response predictability of arrival of transient DOD air assets within the Joint Area of Operations (JOA). DOD aircraft providing support within the JOA will not be included into the RAMCC.

F-7. Information flow during a major civil support operation can be challenging due to the rapidly changing nature of the situation and the resources available. It is imperative that information flows freely between the DOD and other participating agencies to ensure all units are operating on the most current information. The JFO Aviation Branch is the new and correct structure at the Federal level. The Aviation Branch is designed to facilitate coordination of aviation support assets during disaster operations.

Note: States may still use the ACG concept if they choose to do so. States are ultimately responsible for how they want to organize themselves during a disaster, but the ACG does not exist at the federal level.

F-8. When an Army aircraft supports the DSCA mission, airspace control is transferred to the JFACC. All military aircraft in the JOA, it will then be line-tasked in the ATO. For those assets not directly tasked by the JFACC, applicable mission information appears in the Air Control Plan and SPINS section of the ATO for command, control, and coordination purposes. All participating military aircraft adhere to the Air Control Plan and applicable ATO SPINS.

JOINT AIRSPACE CONTROL

F-9. The air component to USNORTHCOM is Air Forces Northern (First Air Force) (AFNORTH [1 AF]). The daily air domain and civil support operations are conducted by AFNORTH (1 AF). The daily air domain and civil support operations are conducted by AFNORTH (1 AF) from Tyndall Air Force Base, Florida. The AFNORTH (1 AF) standing “tailored” Air Operations Center is particularly suited for all homeland security operations taking place within the USNORTHCOM area of responsibility (except Alaska where the 11 Air Force Combined Air Operations Center - Air (CAOC-A) supports the ANR and JTF-Alaska). Additional tactical command and control systems (ground based or airborne) may be required to deploy to the area based on the availability of the local communications and command and control nodes.

F-10. 1st AF is responsible for coordinating DOD Search and Rescue (SAR) support within the continental United States (See Appendix H). In support of civil support operations, AFNORTH is prepared to deploy multiple Air Component Coordination Element (ACCE) elements as well as additional liaison elements to support other major commands.

F-11. Air National Guard Air Control Squadrons provide operationally ready command and reporting center mission control elements for support of theater air operations. These elements include radar surveillance and tracking, radar service to tactical aircraft, supervision of subordinate deployed air control units, and data-link of a combined air picture to higher headquarters.

F-12. Many U.S. Navy ships are well suited for air command and control support during civil support operations. They possess robust communications capabilities. For example, Navy Tactical Air Command and Control centers are located on amphibious naval assault ships. They are able to assist the JFACC in air space planning, integration, and de-confliction of multiagency air assets.

F-13. A U.S. Marine air support squadron (MASS) provides a direct air support Center (DASC) cell for coordination and control of aircraft operating in direct support of Marine Air Ground Task force (MAGTF). The entire DASC, or a portion of this cell, may deploy for civil support operations.

F-14. USAF AWACS aircraft may deploy to provide a detailed air picture to the airspace control authority. The AWACS can become the link between the FAA controllers on the ground, working out of a military facility, and aircraft in and around the incident site.

UNMANNED AERIAL SYSTEMS

F-15. Unmanned aerial systems have become an indispensable combat multiplier for US forces in combat. However, in civil support operations the FAA may severely restrict their use due to safety and control issues associated with an unmanned aircraft. Therefore, the JFACC remains the approving authority for Army UAS missions; there is no "free space" below coordinating altitudes for small tactical systems. The approval of UAS missions is not the JFACC, but the Secretary of Defense. Deconfliction of airspace below the coordinating altitude is the responsibility of the FAA and local authorities, unless the entire National airspace is put under military control. Army national Guard UAS, with the approval of the Secretary of Defense, can be used in support of local authorities. (See Appendix H)

F-16. Certain UAS systems such as Global Hawk can operate far above normal commercial traffic while providing situation assessment to ground commanders. Intermediate systems such as the Predator have supported recent disaster operations, dramatically increasing situational awareness at the field office level. If available and authorized, these systems can provide real time surveillance to command posts for extended periods. The approval process is not automatic. Requests for UAS surveillance support goes through the JFACC and JTF to the Joint Field Office for Joint staff approval. The JFACC coordinates with the FAA and includes the mission on the ATO when approved. The FAA issues notices to airmen (NOTAM) as required.

PLANNING CHECKLIST

F-17. This guideline provides some of the primary considerations for airspace coordination in domestic operations:

- Locate and establish contact with the Air Component Coordination Element (ACCE) and air command center.
- Locate the Combined Air Operations Center (CAOC).
- Identify who the centralized command is for all military air-assets and other federal air assets.
- Locate and establish contact with the Joint Field Office (JFO) Aviation Branch
- Get a copy of the airspace control plan and get Website addresses for updated information.
- Locate the FAA representatives.
- Find out what assets are JFACC controlled (such as Air Force, Army, and Navy) and non-JFACC controlled (such as Coast Guard, Marine Corps, and foreign support assets).
- Develop contacts with all supported and controlling agencies.

Appendix G

Search and Rescue

G-1. Search and Rescue (SAR) involves the use of available resources to assist persons and property in potential or actual distress. As a participant in the National SAR plan, DOD agrees to provide military support to Civil SAR in CONUS during Civil Support operations. The National SAR plan, International Aeronautical and Maritime Search and Rescue Manual, various international agreements, and DOD policy all provide the authoritative basis for military participation in civil SAR efforts. DOD provides this support only when it does not interfere with ongoing military operations. Types of Search and Rescue missions include mountain rescue, wilderness rescue, urban search and rescue, combat search and rescue, air-sea rescue, and mass rescue operations. Conducting Search and Rescue is hazardous and should only be undertaken by competent individuals under the supervision of instructors skilled in the various functional disciplines in accordance with FEMA recognized established standards for Search and Rescue personnel and equipment. The U.S. Government has developed a National Search and Rescue plan to identify the roles and responsibilities of various agencies conducting or supporting Search and Rescue.

SEARCH AND RESCUE INCIDENTS

G-2. The Air Force Rescue Coordination Center (AFRCC) at Tyndall AFB, FL, part of the First United States Air Force, coordinates military support to search and rescue efforts within the United States. The 11th Air Force Alaskan Air National Guard oversees SAR in Alaska. The Coast Guard also oversees SAR in the United States maritime environment, including Hawaii. The National Park Service has primary responsibility for SAR in national parks. State and local authorities designate a search and rescue coordinator for their respective jurisdictions to work with the agency having primary SAR responsibility. Each State coordinates SAR in a unique manner. The AFRCC ties into to the Federal Aviation Administration's alerting system and the U.S. Mission Control Center. In addition to the search and rescue satellite aided tracking information, the AFRCC computer system contains resource files that list federal and state organizations which can conduct or assist in search and rescue efforts throughout North America

G-3. While every SAR assignment is unique, search and rescue missions follows the pattern discussed in the succeeding paragraphs. Response usually begins at the local level with first responders. If the emergency (or disaster) is great enough, the local emergency manager requests assistance from the state.

G-4. Following the disaster, the local emergency manager requests assistance from the state, the state in turn can request DOD assistance through the through the DCO. A hasty SAR recon may be supported by both Federal military and State military rotary wing, UAS, or Civil Air Patrol assets. Coordination between DOD agencies allows prioritization of timely support to urgent needs. DOD Global Area Reference System (GARS) when combined with local SAR grid systems gives a visual representation of areas where SAR has been completed.

G-5. After arriving at a disaster site where there are damaged structures, structural specialists (licensed professional engineers) provide direct input to FEMA TF members about the structural integrity of buildings and the risk of secondary collapses when applicable. Search teams venture around and into collapsed structures, shoring up structures and locating trapped personnel. Teams use electronic listening devices, search cameras, and specially trained search dogs to locate victims. When a victim is located, the search group begins the task of breaking and cutting through the damaged structures to reach victims. They stabilize and support the entry and work areas. Army engineers may participate in these activities

G-6. Medical teams, composed of trauma physicians, emergency room nurses, and paramedics provide medical care for the victims as well as the rescuers, if necessary. A fully stocked mobile emergency room is part of the TF equipment cache. Army medics may be required to enter the unstable interior of the collapsed structure to render immediate aid. Throughout the effort, hazardous material specialists evaluate the disaster site and decontaminate rescue and medical members who may be exposed to hazardous

chemicals or decaying bodies. Army chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear, and high-yield-explosives assets may be required.

G-7. Heavy rigging specialists direct the use of heavy machinery, such as cranes and bulldozers. These specialists understand the special dangers of working in a collapsed structure and help to ensure the safety of the victims and rescuers inside. Army engineers may be required. Technical information and communication specialists ensure all team members can communicate with each other and the TF leaders, facilitating search efforts and coordinating evacuation in the event of a secondary collapse. Army signal corps assets may be required.

G-8. Logistics specialists handle the more than 16,000 pieces of equipment to support the search and extrication of the victims. The equipment cache includes such essentials as concrete cutting saws; search cameras; medical supplies; and tents, cots, food, and water to keep the TF self-sufficient for 72 or 96 hours. Army sustainment assets may be required.

DISASTER RESPONSE AND CIVIL SAR

G-9. Aspects of domestic disaster response and civil SAR tend to be confused. This is because they overlap in certain aspects, such as responsible agencies and resources used, and both involve emergency response. The following table points out some of the basic differences between disaster response and SAR in a way that may be helpful to Army personnel involved in both operations. However, it does not address how states or localities deal with these missions and their differences. Table G-1 compares domestic disaster response and civil search and rescue.

Table G-1. Comparison of disaster response and civil search and rescue

	Disaster Response	***Civil SAR***
Nature of operations	Typically responding to events involving large-scale loss of lives or property, with lifesaving efforts (mostly urban SAR); first responders are rapidly overwhelmed and substantial help is needed from outside the affected area	Locating and rescuing persons in distress in land (wilderness, caves, etc.), maritime (mostly oceanic environment), and aeronautical (involving persons in distress in aircraft on land or water) scenarios, including possible mass rescue operations; typically 4,000-5,000 lives saved annually by U.S. forces
Main concept	Federal backup to states with self-sufficient deployable urban SAR TFs (28 now), supplemented by mitigation and recovery efforts; does not cover beyond 3 miles from shore (e.g., passenger ship sinking)	The globe is divided into a patchwork of SAR regions, each with one rescue coordination center (RCC) that arranges for SAR services within its region; SAR is part of a global system of two specialized bodies of United Nations
Caseload	Typically 5-12 cases annually	Typically 40,000-50,000 cases annually
Alerting or requests for assistance	May start with initial contact by a government official to FEMA or to a local, federal, or military entity for assistance, but either initially or eventually involves a governor request to FEMA for a “major disaster” declaration by the President	Usually initiated automatically or by person in distress by communications equipment with distress alerting as a primary or secondary function, providing data to the responsible RCC

	Disaster Response	*Civil SAR*
Common basis for federal involvement	Disaster / Emergency declaration by the President based on request and justification from a governor; default response responsibility is with local/state authorities	Receipt of distress alert by any means; default response responsibility is federal military except where other arrangements are made, e.g., via agreements with states to handle inland SAR
Coordination of federal response	By a designated lead federal agency before a disaster declaration to ensure unity of effort. Often has involvement of local military command or other cognizant federal agency (e.g., National Park Service or Coast Guard) before a disaster declaration, and by FEMA after such declaration	By the responsible RCC, using own or arranged local, national, or international resources or by delegation based on plans or agreements
Primary legal authorities	Stafford Act, Presidential Directives, the NRF, and authorizing legislation relevant to various federal agencies (there are many) to provide or support federal response	International treaties, such as the International Convention on Maritime Search and Rescue, and the Convention on International Civil Aviation, the NRF, and agency-specific legislation authorizing conduct or support of SAR
Supplemental authorities other than agency directives	NRF	National search and rescue plan (NSP) available at www.uscg.mil/hq
Implementing guidance for the NRF and NSP	Mainly the National Incident Management System (NIMS)	Mainly the International Aeronautical and Maritime Search and Rescue Manual (IAMSAR Manual) and the National Search and Rescue Supplement to the IAMSAR Manual
Terminology	Mainly per NRF and NIMS	Mainly per IAMSAR Manual
Primary policy/oversight authorities	DHS/FEMA, Office of Foreign Disaster Assistance (OFDA)	International Civil Aviation Organization, International Maritime Organization, and the National Search and Rescue Committee
Typical operational coordination	NIMS	Mainly international SAR procedures at the federal level, with NIMS/incident command system used mainly within (or when coordinating with) state and local levels; RCC Langley also uses incident command
Compatibility of concurrent DR	Disaster response (DR) is carried out per the NRF and civil SAR (including	Compatibility of SAR procedures with NIMS typically achieved by assigning

	Disaster Response	*Civil SAR*
and SAR	mass rescue operations), if any, typically per the NSP and international SAR procedures; SAR coordination is separate from but "plugs into" the NIMS command structure	a SAR representative to support the incident commander in the operations section of the incident command post
Typical command structure	Incident commander /command post or unified command	SAR mission coordinator (usually in an RCC) and on scene coordinator
Factors affecting involvement of states	- State has primary responsibility for its DR - State sovereignty, laws, plans, and agreements - State capabilities - Responsibilities assigned to state agencies - Inter-state organizations for governors, emergency managers, etc. - Mutual-aid arrangements among states	- RCC Langley agreements with each state - Various other agreements, where appropriate - RCC plans - NSP provides for states to assume aeronautical and maritime SAR responsibilities that default to the federal government
Factors involving other countries	- Need for support - Arrangements via diplomatic channels - Coordination/guidance of International Search and Rescue Advisory Group	- Operational expediency - Coordination among international RCCs rather than via diplomatic channels
Primary civilian agencies	Many federal agencies signatory to the NRF under lead of FEMA; OFDA for international response	The Coast Guard operates 10 RCCs and arranges SAR services for waters around the U.S. including half of the North Atlantic and three-fourths of the North Pacific; the National Park Service handles SAR in national parks; primary supporting agencies are the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, the National Aeronautics and Space Administration, and the Federal Communications Commission
DOD role	Defense support of civil authorities usually, but not limited to, actions under the Stafford Act	Per the NSP (not defense support of civil authorities): primary responsibility for RCC functions in continental United States (RCC Langley) and Alaska (RCC Elmendorf); secondary support of civil SAR in rest of the world; local military commands have authority for immediate response
Search and	Mainly federal urban SAR TFs	Mainly aircraft and boats with SAR-

	Disaster Response	*Civil SAR*
rescue units	deployed under the NRF to support local efforts in the United States or deployed internationally per OFDA	trained crews and specialized SAR equipment, along with ships at sea and all other available resources; for land SAR, mostly state and local resources
Funding	Mainly various types of funding available under Stafford Act	Agency appropriated SAR funding or out-of-hide; no charge to survivors; each entity funds own services

URBAN SEARCH AND RESCUE

G-10. Urban Search and Rescue (US&R) is defined as the process of searching for, extricating and providing for the immediate medical treatment of victims trapped in collapsed structures. Urban search and rescue falls under ESF#6 within the National Response framework.

G-11. A major disaster, such as an earthquake, tornado, or a high yield explosion would result in a high degree of devastation in urban areas. Substantial numbers of persons could be in life-threatening situations requiring prompt rescue and medical care. Because the mortality rate will dramatically increase beyond 72 hours, search and rescue must begin immediately. Rescue personnel will encounter extensive damage to buildings, roadways, public works, communications, and utilities. In an earthquake, aftershocks, secondary events, and other effects such as fires, tsunami, landslides, flooding, and hazardous materials releases will compound problems and may threaten both survivors and rescue personnel.

G-12. DOD, with support from FEMA, civilian US&R task forces, and other Federal agencies, will provide support to State and local US&R operations under three Execution Phases, in addition to Pre-Event Activities. The Execution Phases include Notification, Initial Response Actions, and Continuing Actions. Because of the urgency to rescue trapped victims, the first two phases must be accomplished within 72 hours of the event.

G-13. During Pre-Event Activities, DOD components and supporting Federal Agencies will plan support for US&R, and as required, engage in training and other related activities in order to expeditiously execute US&R. An example of this is the Army's 911th Engineer Company (Technical Rescue). It is the only unit in the Army that specializes in collapsed structure, vertical, confined space, and mine rescue. The unit is located at Fort Belvoir, VA and is recognized for its response to the 9/11 attack on the Pentagon. The unit regularly trains with local, state, and federal first responders in the NCR as part of Joint Force Headquarters – National Capital Region.

G-14. Notification Phase. Upon notification that a disaster has occurred which requires US&R activities, FEMA will alert the Director of Military Support (DOMS), the civilian US&R task forces, and the Department of Health and Human Services (U.S. Public Health Service). Each civilian task force will alert its members regarding activation. DOMS will designate a Supported Combatant Commander and issue a warning order to all supporting CCDRs.

G-15. Initial Actions Phase. FEMA Headquarters, DOMS, and the supported CINC will assess the situation. Based on this analysis, DOMS will determine the allocation of civilian task forces for the response. FEMA will activate the civilian task forces and direct them to deploy to the scene. DOMS will evaluate alternatives and may direct the DOD Supported CINC or USTRANSCOM to move some civilian task forces by military aircraft. Other civilian task forces may move to the disaster area by their own ground transportation.

G-16. DOMS will direct the Supported CINC to execute US&R. The Supported CINC will deploy one or more tailored Joint Task Forces (JTF) to manage the overall civilian task force effort and conduct basic and light US&R. Each JTF will consist of a number of Medium and Heavy Rescue Teams, Basic and Light Rescue Units, and service support. The Basic and Light Rescue Unit is a military unit (and may be

augmented with FEMA-sponsored civilian US&R specialists and United States Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) personnel) tasked to conduct basic and light US&R.

G-17. The JTF will receive its mission direction from the Defense Coordinating Officer (DCO). The State Coordinating Officer (SCO) or the commonwealth or territorial counterpart, provides the DCO with requirements for the US&R. The DCO coordinates these requirements with the JTF, which assigns US&R units to one or more specific jurisdictions. In each jurisdiction, one or more local Incident Commanders will direct the specific operations of the subordinate units of the JTF. Continuing Actions Phase. The SCO may provide the DCO with additional requirements or change the priority for support. The DCO will coordinate with the JTF to provide civilian and/or military US&R units to other locations. If requested and made available, foreign US&R teams will be integrated into the operation. Units will be reassigned to other jurisdictions as required. Upon completion of the US&R mission, the JTF, if not needed for follow-on missions, will redeploy.

Appendix H

Unmanned Aircraft Systems in Civil Support

In full spectrum operations in different areas of the globe, the use of unmanned aircraft has grown exponentially. However, within the United States and its territories, the use of unmanned aircraft is severely restricted. Any use of UAS must be approved at very high levels by both the Department of Defense and the Federal Aviation Administration prior to employment in civil support operations. This appendix provides some considerations for the employment of unmanned aircraft systems (UAS) in support of civil authorities.

TYPES OF UNMANNED AIRCRAFT SYSTEMS

H-1. UAS employment considerations vary among the different types of UAS. For the purposes of this document, Joint UAS Center of Excellence group categories are utilized. Army UAS that may be suitable for domestic operations include Groups 1, 3, and 4. Group 1 UAS (e.g., Raven), by virtue of size and portability, have limited range and ability to support large areas of operation. Normally man-pack portable, hand-launched, and controlled with its own individual controller, the Group 1 UAS has a normal range of less than 20 miles. Group 1 UAS may be teamed with Unmanned Ground Vehicles (UGV), utilizing the same controller for both the UGV and the UAS, and may be tracked using Blue Force Tracker (BFT). Group 1 UAS have fairly limited endurance (typically two hours or less). Simplicity of launch and recovery operations allows the unit to employ Group 1 assets quickly, within constraints of airspace coordination. Group 3 UAS (e.g., Shadow) require a fairly robust Command and Control (C2) and support element, but may have employment advantages over larger UAS. Group 3 UAS are normally launched from a catapult, have increased payloads/weapons capabilities, and are controlled by a ground/shipboard control system. Based on weight, power, and size restrictions, this Group can be tracked by either BFT or a transponder and becomes a combat multiplier utilizing manned-unmanned teaming. Although still limited by Line of Sight (LOS) to the Ground Control Stations (GCS), Group 3-4 UASs can provide support in a larger geographic area than Group 1 UAS. Group 4 (Hunter MQ-5B and Sky Warrior) increased size and capabilities over Group 1 UAS requires increased airspace management requirements.

EMPLOYMENT CONSIDERATIONS

H-2. A-1.The preferred means of unmanned aircraft systems (UAS) employment during civil support is in direct support of a civilian agency. In direct support, the military unit generating the UAS Missions receives the tasks and priorities from the supported agency. The UAS collects the data and the data is down linked to the military detachment, which in turn passes the information directly to the supported agency. If required the military unit may provide on-site analysis of the data, but does not retain the data once provided to the supported agency.

H-3. Utilization of UAS during civil support should be a last resort when manned assets are not available or not practical. The driving force behind a decision to employ UAS must be the capability required for the operation in question. Unmanned aerial systems present the commander with many capabilities; but in many cases UAS may not be the most efficient, timely, or practical method of achieving the commander's desired effect. There may be cases where a manned platform can provide the desired capability in a much more timely and efficient manner. The decision to employ UAS must be judicious. UAS are well-suited for those missions characterized as dull, dirty or dangerous. Dull missions are those where persistence or long on-station dwell times are required. Persistence is one attribute that gives UAS an advantage over manned systems. Dirty missions are those missions that risk contamination to the vehicle or crew. An obvious application of a dirty mission is the CBRNE detection mission. Finally, dangerous missions are those missions where there is substantial risk to the airframe and/or operator of the system. This risk may

come from an adversary or the environment itself. The "dull, dirty or dangerous" paradigm is a good rule of thumb for planners and commanders to use when initially considering UAS employment. Attempts to use UAS simply because they are available must be avoided. The UAS needs to be the best available asset that enables the commander to provide the necessary capability.

MISSIONS

H-4. There are five missions normally associated with UAS during civil support: Provide Incident Awareness Assessment (IAA); Support Search and Rescue (SAR); Support to Law Enforcement Agencies (law enforcement agencies); Communications; and CBRNE detection.

H-5. Incident Awareness Assessment capabilities include Electro-optical (EO), Infra-red (IR) and Synthetic Aperture Radar imagery, as well as Full Motion Video (FMV). IAA requirements are based on the nature of the support requested, and these requirements will derive from the Primary Federal Agency. For example, after an earthquake, the primary federal agency may wish to ascertain the damage to a major highway running through the affected area for ground-based relief efforts. Broad area and point damage assessments are also components of IAA and all IAA operations must be fully compliant with the Posse Comitatus Act, Intelligence Oversight policy, as well as other U.S. laws and policies regarding the use of U.S. Armed Forces in a domestic setting.

H-6. SAR: In some situations, military forces supporting a SAR mission may plan for the use of UAS platforms in concert with manned platforms and ground teams. UAS can perform the "search" portion of this mission, locating and identifying victims in need of rescue, while manned aircraft and ground systems can complete the mission by performing the actual rescue. UAS, as the persistent search platform, allows the manned system to concentrate on rescue of survivors.

H-7. Support to Law Enforcement: Any non-traditional use of intelligence assets or capabilities must be approved by SECDEF. This includes the use of UAS with ISR capabilities, especially if domestic imaging is undertaken. Army forces upon SECDEF approval, when directed by HQDA, may provide UAS support to civilian law enforcement agencies (like the Federal Bureau of Investigation or Drug Enforcement Agency) during counterterrorism, foreign intelligence, counterintelligence, or counternarcotics support. Law and policy dictate permissible use of information and data gathered by UAS operating in support of civilian law enforcement agencies. JFLCC also anticipates non-intelligence UAS support to civilian law enforcement agencies such as civil disturbance, or IAA. Each use is subject to different authorities, procedures and law and policy limitations and all requests for UAS support to civilian law enforcement agencies utilizing DOD UAS must be processed in accordance with DOD Directive 5525.1; DOD Regulation 5240.1-R, Procedure 12; and/or CJCSI 3710.01B, DOD Counterdrug Operations, as appropriate.

H-8. Communications: UAS can be used to fill gaps and extend communication ranges within the area of interest. For example, after a natural disaster it is likely that cellular phone communications will be hampered due to power outages or antenna damage. UAS could be employed to fill these gaps in coverage, serving as airborne antennas. Communications relay services could also be provided by UAS, extending the range for example, of emergency first responder Land Mobile Radio systems.

H-9. CBRNE: UAS offer a natural advantage in CBRNE detection (particularly at standoff ranges) over manned systems due to the danger involved and the risk of contamination to the vehicle. UAS could efficiently and effectively gather data used to map out toxicity plumes, radiation fields, or collect damage assessment imagery without risk to human life. Additionally, potential contamination of the vehicle can be mitigated much more easily with a UAS than with a manned system.

COMMAND AND CONTROL

H-10. Command and control relationships with of UAS operations must be worked out in advance of mission execution to the maximum extent possible. In general, the controlling JTF will typically exercise operational control (OPCON) or tactical control (TACON) of the assigned or attached UAS.

H-11. UAS operators supporting domestic missions should anticipate coordinating their actions through the JTF to supporting the Joint Force Air Component Commander (JFACC) and anticipate inclusion of their

operations in the Air Tasking Order. Regardless of the nature of operations, UAS command and control structures must be well-thought out (in advance, when possible), responsive to both operator and user inputs, and flexible enough to handle changes to the operation. This is particularly important for re-tasking of UAS assets.

H-12. The JFACC will provide invaluable advice regarding the Certification of Authorization approval process due to their long-term relationship established with the FAA. Regardless of the status of a Certification of Authorization application, active coordination with the FAA when planning to operate military UAS in the domestic airspace of the United States cannot be overemphasized. Timely coordination with the FAA will give the operator a greater chance of gaining approval to operate UAS where and when required. In those instances where no pre-existing Certification of Authorization is in place, a process is in place between JFACC and the FAA to expedite Certification of Authorization approval for in extremis cases.

DISASTER SUPPORT

H-13. A-1. Prior to an incident with some warning (such as a hurricane) those units with UAS assets should evaluate the requirement and environment to determine whether UAS operations will be available to support possible requests for assistance. Unmanned aircraft systems normally do not have the speed or the range to allow for operations from their home station. They must deploy to a BSI near the incident area or assigned operating area. Deployment considerations include site surveys for possible operating locations. Planners should ensure UAS operations are conducted at smaller or remote sites, away from disaster relief traffic. Initial coordination for TFR or Certification of Authorization should be staffed through the NORTHCOM or PACOM and then through the JFACC to the FAA. An Army Regional Representative to the FAA is located at each of the FAA service centers to provide day- to-day UAS coordination.

H-14. A-2. During an immediate response situation or the initial stages of a larger response units with approved UAS assets move to their operating locations. Additionally, units should be prepared to meet and coordinate with local airspace users to facilitate safe operations within the UAS operating area. Under ideal conditions, the FAA will issue a TFR for disaster relief operations that authorize UAS operations. With or without a TFR, UAS operations will require a Certification of Authorization from the FAA to conduct operations. Units should ensure an additional site survey is conducted if their previously selected operating location sustained damage. Additions, modifications, or changes to the final Certification of Authorization must be coordinated with the JFACC for inclusion in the Airspace Control Plan and the Air Tasking Order.

H-15. In the aftermath of a disaster, the primary mission for UAS is assessing the extent of the devastation of the disaster. Additional UAS missions include conducting initial damage assessment of critical locations and infrastructure, and identification of those areas hardest hit. UAS operations may be used to assist with locating and identifying personnel requiring rescue. UAS operations may provide critical information to law enforcement agencies by providing persistent observation of critical facilities and affected areas.

LIMITATIONS:

H-16. There are numerous limitations involving UAS operations in the NAS. The three most important are legal restrictions; FAA restrictions; and weather restrictions.

Legal Restrictions:

H-17. Restrictions on the usage of UAS operations in domestic operations are numerous. Use of DOD intelligence capabilities for civil support missions, such incident awareness and assessment, damage assessment, and search and rescue, requires prior Office of the Secretary of Defense (OSD) together with approval of both the mission and use of the specific DOD Intelligence Community (IC) capabilities. Certain missions may require not only approval of the Secretary of Defense, but also coordination, certification, and possibly, prior approval by the Attorney General of the United States. Additionally, there are several DOD and CJCS instructions covering military support to civil authorities. For example, DODD 3025.12, Military Assistance for Civil Disturbances, DODD 5525.5, DOD Cooperation with Civilian Law Enforcement Officials, and CJCSI 3710.01B, DOD Counterdrug Support may apply to domestic UAS operations, depending on the mission. The CJCS DSCA EXORD, dated 081823Z Jun 07 provides OSD

approval for use of DOD IC capabilities for DSCA missions for other than intelligence activities, and provides guidance on operational parameters and limitations on use of DOD IC capabilities for DSCA missions. Further, per DOD Directive (DODD) 5525.5, military personnel are not to be used for surveillance and pursuit of individuals.

H-18. Currently, per the Office of the Secretary of Defense (OSD) Interim Guidance for the Domestic Use of Unmanned Aircraft Systems Memorandum, (28 Sep 06), all requests for UAS must be approved by Secretary of Defense for proper use memorandum. Operators of UAS supporting civilian law enforcement agencies must be cognizant of, and fully comply with, DOD Directive 5525.5 and any operational parameters and limitations specified in the DSCA EXORD regarding collection, retention, and dissemination of UAS sensor data and imagery. Operators cannot conduct surveillance on specifically identified U.S. persons, unless expressly approved by the Secretary of Defense, consistent with U.S. laws and regulations. Additionally, civilian law enforcement agencies will handle any data collected by such surveillance operations. Finally, per current OSD guidance, National Guard forces conducting domestic UAS operations will normally be in Title 10 status, unless the Secretary of Defense determines Title 32 status is more appropriate.

FAA Restrictions

H-19. By far the biggest challenge to operating UAS in the United States, its territories and possessions is access to the National Airspace System (NAS). Since UAS are by their very nature different from manned systems, UAS do not meet the same standards for operations in the NAS that are required for manned systems (the ability to "see and avoid" other aircraft, for example). In order to fly UAS in other than military restricted airspace or warning areas, UAS operators must apply for a Certificate of Waiver or Authorization (Certification of Authorization) from the FAA granting specific permission to fly the UAS in the National Airspace System. This Certification of Authorization process can take up to 60 days, although work is underway to shorten this process. Emergency Certification of Authorizations timeline can be reduced to hours if conditions dictate. Additionally, UAS operators should be prepared to meet other FAA requirements such as qualification training for operators and knowledge of the airspace regulations for the type of airspace the UAS will operate in.

H-20. The Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) will activate a Temporary Flight Restriction (TFR) under 14 CFR 91.137(a)(1) TFR in the Vicinity of Disaster/Hazard Areas or approved an Emergency Certification of Authorization for the UAS operation in civil support operations. UAS operations within an approved TFR should be added to the verbiage contained in the TFR. For operations outside the TFR, an additional Certification of Authorization will be required.

Weather Restrictions

H-21. Severe weather presents operational challenges to most UAS. Planners have to carefully consider the weather in the intended AO to determine if manned systems are more suitable for the desired mission. In-flight conditions such as icing, heavy precipitation or instrument meteorological conditions at the launch and recovery site will likely preclude UAS operations. Throughout the civil support mission, UAS employment depends on the current and forecasted weather conditions of the affected area. (Chapter Title)

Appendix I

Incident Command Sections and Support Functions

This appendix illustrates the joint field office manned for operations, with all emergency support functions activated. This appendix provides a breakout diagram of each section under the various incident command system function.

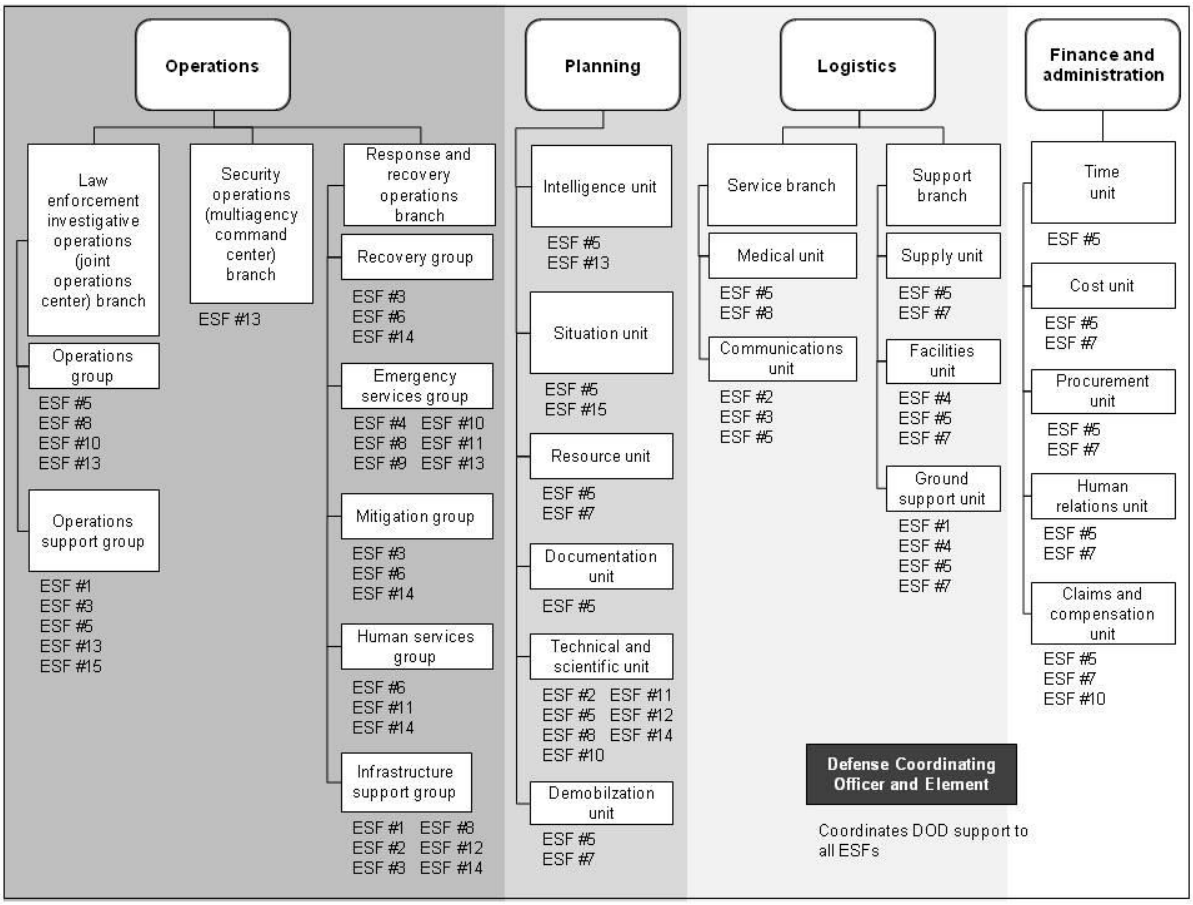


Figure I-1. The fully manned joint field office

I-1. As the primary agency (normally FEMA) activates each emergency support function the lead agency for that function provides personnel for the joint field office. In addition for personnel required for their specific function, shown below, the ESF lead agency also assigns personnel as required to other functions and ICS staff elements. Figure I-2 illustrates the ESF and the lead agency for that particular function. Keep in mind that agencies have both primary and support responsibilities within the National Response Framework. The Department of Defense is a supporting agency for all 15 emergency support functions.

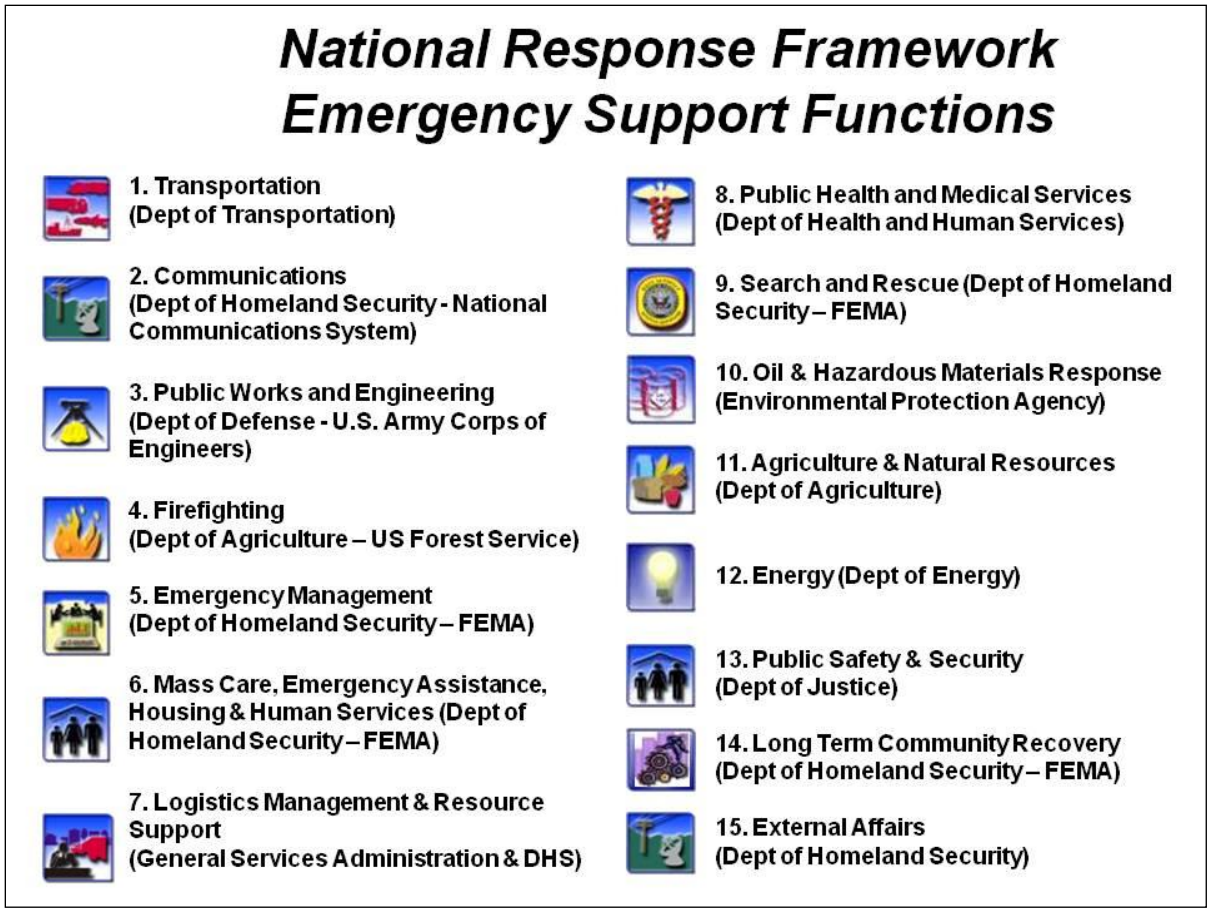


Figure I-2. The Emergency Support Functions (ESF) and their lead agencies

The Federal Government and many State governments organize much of their resources and capabilities – as well as those of certain private-sector and nongovernmental organizations – under 15 Emergency Support Functions (ESFs). ESFs align categories of resources and provide strategic objectives for their use.

During a response, ESFs are a critical mechanism to coordinate functional capabilities and resources provided by Federal departments and agencies, along with certain private-sector and nongovernmental organizations. ESFs may be selectively activated for both Stafford Act and non-Stafford Act incidents where Federal departments or agencies request DHS assistance or under other circumstances. Not all incidents result in the activation of ESFs.

ESFs may be activated to support headquarters, regional, and/or field activities. The Incident Command System provides for the flexibility to assign ESF and other stakeholder resources according to their capabilities, tasking, and requirements to augment and support the other sections of the Joint Field Office (JFO)/Regional Response Coordination Center (RRCC) or National Response Coordination Center (NRCC) in order to respond to incidents in a more collaborative and cross-cutting manner.

While ESFs are typically assigned to a specific section at the NRCC or in the JFO/RRCC for management purposes, resources may be assigned anywhere within the Unified Coordination structure. Regardless of the section in which an ESF may reside, that entity works in conjunction with other JFO sections to ensure that appropriate planning and execution of missions occur. For example, if a State requests assistance with a mass

evacuation, the JFO would request personnel from ESF #1 (Transportation), ESF #6 (Mass Care, Emergency Assistance, Housing, and Human Services), and ESF #8 (Public Health and Medical Services). These would then be integrated into a single branch or group within the Operations Section to ensure effective coordination of evacuation services.

National Response Framework Overview

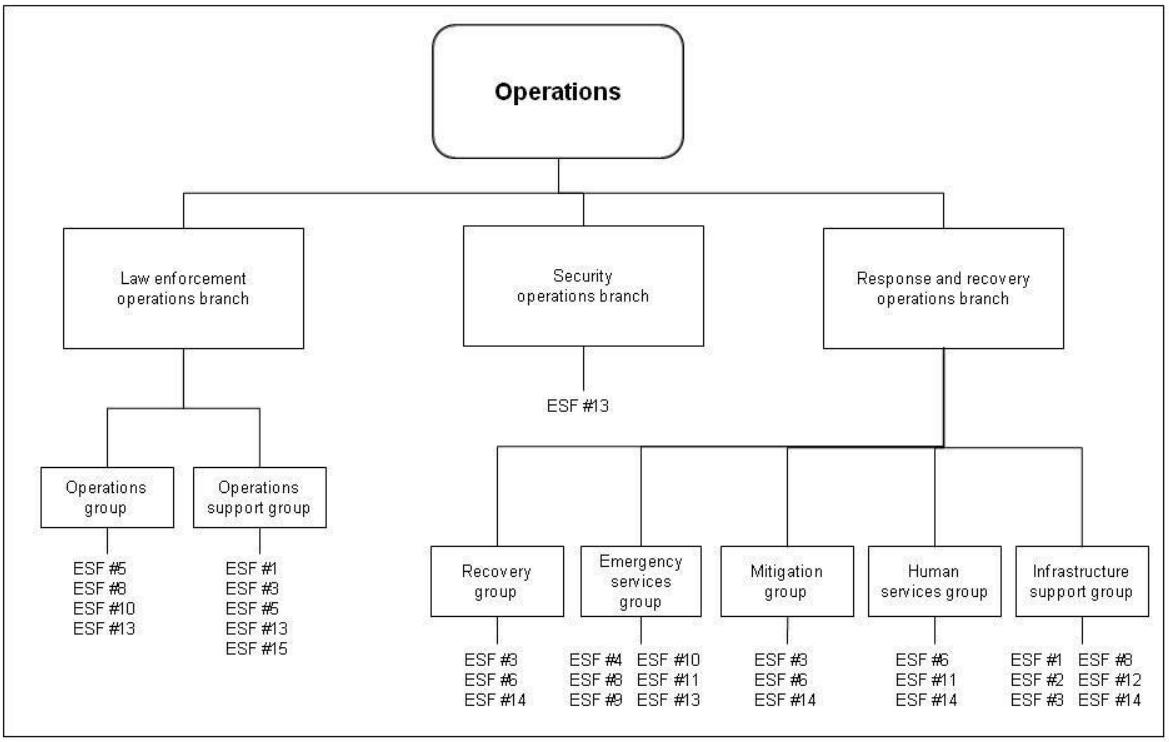


Figure I-3. The Operations Section of a Joint Field Office

I-2. The Operations Section has the most incident resources. It develops and implements strategy and tactics to carry out the incident objectives. The section expands from the bottom up.

- Organizes, assigns, and supervises the tactical field resources.
- Supervises air operations and those resources in a staging area.
- Directs and coordinates all incident tactical operations.
- Normally the first organizations to be assigned to the incident.
- May include staging areas and special organizations.

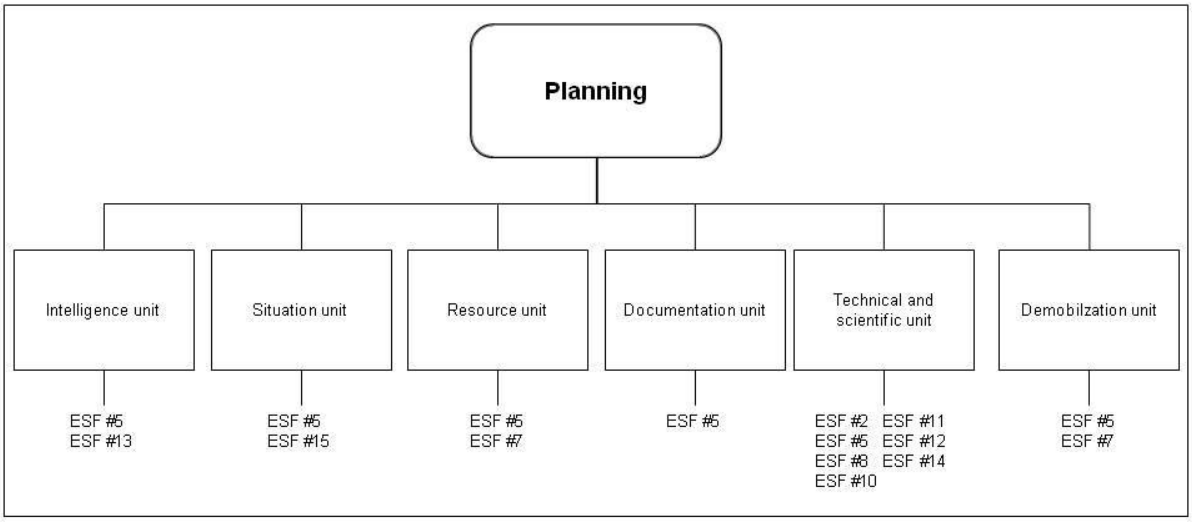


Figure I-4. The plans branch of a Joint Field Office

I-3. The Planning Section gathers, analyzes, and disseminates information and intelligence. The planning section -

- Manages the planning process.
- Compiles the Incident Action Plan.
- Manages Technical Specialists.
- Maintains resource status.
- Maintains and displays situation status.
- Prepares the Incident Action Plan.
- Develops alternative strategies.
- Provides documentation services.
- Prepares the Demobilization Plan.
- Provides a primary location for Technical Specialists assigned to an incident.

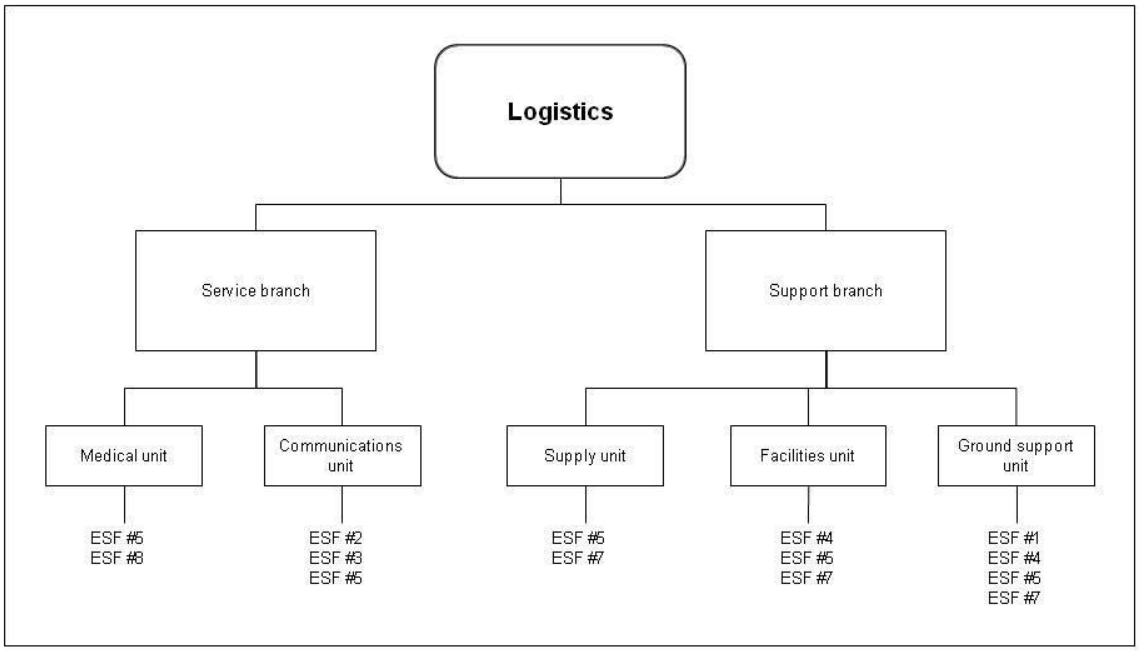


Figure I-4. The Logistics section of a Joint Field Office

I-4. The Logistics section provides resources and services required to support incident activities. The logistics section develops portions of Incident Action Plan and forwards them to Planning Section. The section –

- Contracts for and purchases goods and services needed at the incident.
- Coordinates communications support.
- Provides medical support to incident personnel.
- Provides food for incident personnel.
- Provides supplies.
- Provides facilities.
- Oversees ground support.

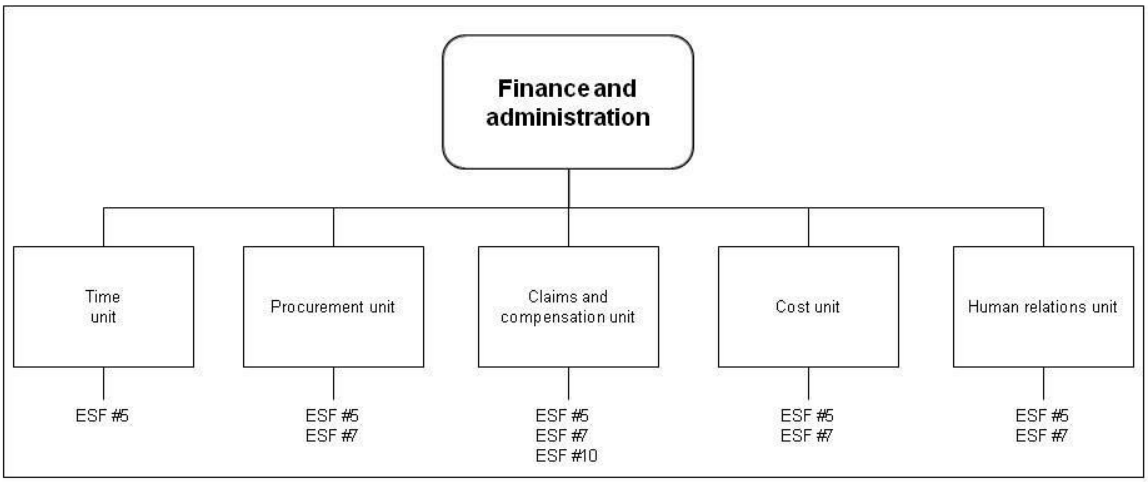


Figure I-5. The Finance and Administration section of a Joint Field Office

I-5. The Finance & Administration section handles financial transactions, accounting, and human resources support. This includes:

- Contract negotiation and monitoring;
- Timekeeping;
- Cost analysis and;
- Compensation for injury or damage to property.

Appendix J

AUTL Cross Walk for Stability and Civil Support

This section provides lists tactical tasks from the AUTL by warfighting function and full spectrum operations related tasks. Tasks that apply in stability operations and civil support are white. Tasks that only apply to stability operations contain light grey shading. Tasks that only apply to civil support operations appear in dark grey with white lettering.

Table J-1 omits the tasks for the fires warfighting function because none of these tasks applies directly to civil support or stability.

Table J-1. Stability and civil support AUTL cross walk

AUTL #	Title	STAB	Civil SPT	Remarks
1.1	Perform Tactical Actions Associated with Force Projection and Deployment	X	X	
1.1.1	Conduct Mobilization of Tactical Units	X	X	
1.1.1.1	Conduct Alert and Recall	X	X	
1.1.1.2	Conduct Home Station Mobilization	X	X	
1.1.1.3	Conduct Mobilization Station Activities	X	X	
1.1.2	Conduct Tactical Deployment/Redeployment	X	X	
1.1.2.1	Conduct Pre-deployment Activities	X	X	
1.1.2.2	Conduct RSOI	X	X	
1.1.2.3	Conduct Redeployment Activities	X	X	
1.1.3	Conduct Demobilization of Tactical Units	X	X	
1.1.4	Conduct Rear Detachment Activities	X	X	
1.2.2.7	Conduct Actions on Contact	X		
1.2.3	Employ Combat Patrols	X		
1.2.4	Conduct Counter-ambush Actions	X		
1.2.5	Exploit Terrain to Expedite Tactical Movements	X		
1.2.6	Cross a Danger Area	X		
1.2.7	Linkup with Other Tactical Forces	X	X	
1.2.9	Conduct a Relief in Place	X	X	
1.2.10	Navigate From One Point to Another	X	X	
1.2.12	Conduct Sniper Active Countermeasures	X	X	
1.2.13	Conduct Sniper Passive Countermeasures	X	X	
1.3	Conduct Tactical Troop Movements	X		
1.3.1	Prepare Forces for Movement	X	X	
1.3.1.1	Conduct Advance Party Activities	X	X	
1.3.1.2	Conduct Quartering Party Activities	X	X	
1.3.1.4	Conduct Pickup Zone Operations	X	X	
1.3.2	Conduct Tactical Road March	X		
1.3.3	Conduct Tactical Convoy	X		
1.4	Conduct Direct Fires	X		
1.4.1	Conduct Lethal Direct Fire Against a Surface Target	X		
1.4.2	Conduct Nonlethal Direct Fire Against a Surface Target	X	X	Nonlethal weapons only

AUTL #	Title	STAB	Civil SPT	Remarks
1.5	Occupy an Area	X	X	
1.5.1	Occupy an Assembly Area	X	X	
1.5.5	Conduct Landing Zone Operations	X	X	
1.6	Conduct Mobility Operations.	X	X	
1.6.1	Overcome Barriers, Obstacles, and Mines	X		
1.6.1.1	Conduct Breaching Operations	X		
1.6.1.2	Conduct Clearing Operations	X	X	
1.6.1.2.1	Conduct Area Clearance	X	X	
1.6.1.2.2	Conduct Route Clearance	X	X	
1.6.1.3	Conduct Gap Crossing Operations	X	X	
1.6.1.3.2	Conduct Line of Communications Gap Crossing Support	X	X	
1.6.2	Enhance Movement and Maneuver	X	X	
1.6.2.1	Construct/Maintain Combat Roads and Trails	X	X	
1.6.2.2	Construct and Maintain Forward Airfields and Landing Zones	X	X	
1.6.3	Negotiate a Tactical Area of Operations	X	X	
1.6.4	Provide Diver Support	X	X	
1.6.5	Conduct Non-Tactical Movement	X	X	
1.7.1	Site Obstacles	X	X	
1.7.2	Construct, Emplace, or Detonate Obstacles	X	X	
2.1	Support to Force Generation	X		
2.1.1	Provide Intelligence Readiness	X		
2.1.1.1	Perform Indications and Warnings	X		
2.1.1.2	Ensure Intelligence Readiness Operations	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.1.2	Establish Intelligence Architecture	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.1.2.1	Conduct Intelligence Reach	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.1.2.2	Develop/Maintain Automated Intelligence Networks	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.1.2.3	Establish and Maintain Access	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.1.2.4	Create/Maintain Intelligence Databases	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.1.3	Provide Intelligence Over watch	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.1.4	Generate Knowledge	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.1.4.1	Develop the foundation to Define Threat Characteristics	X		
2.1.4.2	Obtain Detailed Terrain Information and Intelligence	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.1.4.3	Obtain Detailed Weather and Weather Effects Information and Intelligence	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.1.4.4	Obtain Detailed Civil Considerations Information and Intelligence	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.1.4.5	Complete Studies	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.1.4.5.1	Conduct Area, Regional, or Country Study of a Foreign Country	X		
2.1.4.5.2	Conduct Specified Study	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.1.5	Tailor the Intelligence Force	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support

AUTL #	Title	STAB	Civil SPT	Remarks
2.2	Support to Situational Understanding	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.2.1	Perform Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.2.1.1	Define the Operational Environment	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.2.1.2	Describe Environmental Effects on Operations	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.2.1.3	Evaluate the Threat	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.2.1.4	Determine Threat Courses of Action	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.2.1.5	Conduct Geospatial Engineering Operations and Functions	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.2.2	Perform Situation Development	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.2.3	Provide Intelligence Support to Protection	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.2.4	Provide Tactical Intelligence Over watch	X		
2.2.5	Conduct Police Intelligence Operations	X		
2.2.5.1	Collect Police Information	X		
2.2.5.2	Complete Police Information Assessment	X		
2.2.5.3	Develop Police Intelligence Products	X		
2.2.6	Provide Intelligence Support to Civil-Affairs Operations	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.3	Perform Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.3.1	Perform ISR Synchronization	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.3.1.1	Develop Requirements	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.3.1.2	Develop the ISR Synchronization Plan	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.3.2	Perform Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Integration	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.3.2.1	Develop the Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Plan	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.3.2.2	Execute/evaluate and update the ISR Plan	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.3.3	Conduct Reconnaissance	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.3.3.1	Conduct a Route Reconnaissance	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.3.3.2	Conduct A Zone Reconnaissance	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.3.3.3	Conduct An Area Reconnaissance	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.3.3.5	Conduct A Reconnaissance Patrol	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.3.4	Conduct Surveillance	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.3.5	Conduct Related Missions and Operations	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.3.5.1	Establish a Mission Intelligence Briefing and Debriefing Program	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.3.5.1.1	Establish a Mission Intelligence Briefing Plan	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.3.5.1.2	Establish a Debriefing Plan	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.3.5.2	Conduct Intelligence Coordination	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support

AUTL #	Title	STAB	Civil SPT	Remarks
2.3.5.2.1	Establish and Maintain Technical Authority and Channels	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.3.5.2.2	Conduct Deconfliction and Coordination	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.3.5.3	Support Sensitive Site Exploitation	X		
2.3.5.4	Intelligence Support to Personnel Recovery	X		
2.3.5.4.1	Conduct PR Focused Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield	X		
2.3.5.4.2	Conduct Support to PR Planning, Preparation, and Execution	X		
2.4	Provide Intelligence Support to Targeting and Information Superiority	X		
2.4.1	Provide Intelligence Support to Targeting	X		
2.4.1.1	Provide Intelligence Support to Target Development	X		
2.4.1.2	Provide Intelligence Support to Target Detection	X		
2.4.2	Provide Intelligence Support to Information Tasks	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
2.4.2.1	Provide Intelligence Support to Activities Related to Information Engagement	X		
2.4.2.1.1	Provide Intelligence Support to Public Affairs	X		
2.4.2.1.2	Provide Intelligence Support to Psychological Operations	X		
2.4.2.2	Provide Intelligence Support to Command and Control Warfare (C2W)	X		
2.4.2.3	Provide Intelligence Support to Electronic Attack	X		
2.4.2.4	Provide Intelligence Support to Information Protection (IP)	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
4.1	Provide Logistics Support	X	X	
4.1.1	Provide Maintenance Support	X	X	
4.1.1.1	Perform Preventative Maintenance Checks and Services	X	X	
4.1.1.2	Recover/Evacuate Disabled Equipment	X	X	
4.1.1.3	Diagnose Equipment Faults	X	X	
4.1.1.4	Substitute Parts	X	X	
4.1.1.5	Exchange Parts	X	X	
4.1.1.6	Repair Equipment	X	X	
4.1.1.7	Return Repaired Equipment to the User	X	X	
4.1.1.8	Provide Maintenance Management	X	X	
4.1.2	Provide Transportation Support	X	X	
4.1.2.1	Provide Movement Control	X	X	
4.1.2.1.1	Provide Highway and Main Supply Route Regulation	X	X	
4.1.2.1.2	Regulate Movement	X	X	
4.1.2.1.3	Conduct Support to Movement Operations	X	X	
4.1.2.2	Conduct Terminal Operations	X	X	
4.1.2.2.1	Conduct Arrival and Departure Airfield Control Group Activities	X	X	
4.1.2.2.2	Conduct Trailer, Container, and Flatrack Transfer Operations	X	X	
4.1.2.2.3	Conduct Rail Transfer Operations	X	X	
4.1.2.2.4	Conduct Marine Terminal Operations	X	X	
4.1.2.3	Conduct Mode Operations	X	X	
4.1.2.3.1	Move by Surface	X	X	

AUTL #	Title	STAB	Civil SPT	Remarks
4.1.2.3.2	Move by Air	X	X	
4.1.2.3.3	Move by Water	X	X	
4.1.3	Provide Supplies	X	X	
4.1.3.1	Provide Subsistence (Class I)	X	X	
4.1.3.2	Provide Clothing, Individual Equipment, Tools, and Administrative Supplies (Class II)	X	X	
4.1.3.3	Provide Petroleum, Oil, and Lubricants	X	X	
4.1.3.3.1	Provide Bulk Fuel	X	X	
4.1.3.3.2	Provide Packaged Petroleum, Oils, and Lubricants Products	X	X	
4.1.3.3.3	Provide Petroleum Quality Assurance and Quality Surveillance	X	X	
4.1.3.3.5	Provide RETAIL Fuel	X	X	
4.1.3.4	Provide Barrier and Construction Material	X	X	
4.1.3.5	Provide Ammunition	X	X	
4.1.3.5.1	Provide Munitions	X		
4.1.3.5.2	Provide Separate Loading Munitions	X		
4.1.3.5.3	Provide Pyrotechnic and Specialty Items	X	X	
4.1.3.6	Provide Personal Demand Items	X	X	
4.1.3.7	Provide Major End Items	X	X	
4.1.3.8	Provide Medical Material and Repair Parts	X	X	
4.1.3.9	Provide Repair Parts	X	X	
4.1.3.10	Provide Supplies for Civilian Use	X	X	
4.1.3.11	Provide Water Support	X	X	
4.1.3.11.1	Purify Water	X	X	
4.1.3.11.2	Provide Packaged Water	X	X	
4.1.3.12	Provide Miscellaneous Supplies	X	X	
4.1.3.13	Conduct Forward Arming and Refueling Point Activities	X	X	
4.1.3.15	Provide Supply Management	X	X	
4.1.3.15.1	Request Supplies	X	X	
4.1.3.15.2	Receive Supplies	X	X	
4.1.3.15.3	Procure Supplies	X	X	
4.1.3.15.4	Issue Supplies	X	X	
4.1.3.16	Salvage and Retrograde Equipment and Materiel	X	X	
4.1.3.17	Prepare Configured Loads	X	X	
4.1.4	Provide field Services	X	X	
4.1.4.1	Conduct Mortuary Affairs	X	X	
4.1.4.2	Conduct Aerial Delivery Support	X	X	
4.1.4.3	Provide Base Camp Sustainment	X	X	
4.1.4.3.1	Provide Clothing and Textile Repair Support	X	X	
4.1.4.3.2	Provide Hygiene Support	X	X	
4.1.4.3.3	Provide Nutrition Support	X	X	
4.1.4.3.4	Provide General Purpose Shelters and Systems	X	X	
4.1.5	Provide Contracting Support	X	X	
4.1.5.1	Request Contracting Support	X	X	
4.1.5.2	Provide Logistics Civilian Augmentation Program (LOGCAP) Support	X		
4.1.6	Provide Distribution	X	X	
4.1.6.1	Conduct Distribution Management	X	X	

AUTL #	Title	STAB	Civil SPT	Remarks
4.1.6.2	Provide In transit Visibility (ITV)/Asset Visibility (AV)	X	X	
4.1.6.3	Conduct Unit Logistics Package Operations	X	X	
4.1.6.4	Establish Hub/Node	X	X	
4.1.6.4.1	Conduct APOD Operations	X	X	
4.1.6.4.2	Conduct SPOD Operations	X	X	
4.1.6.4.3	Conduct Hub Operations	X	X	
4.1.7	Provide General Engineer Support	X	X	
4.1.7.1	Restore Damaged Areas	X	X	
4.1.7.2	Construct and Maintain Sustainment Lines of Communications	X	X	
4.1.7.2.1	Construct and Maintain Roads and Highways	X	X	
4.1.7.2.2	Construct and Maintain Over-the-Shore Facilities	X	X	
4.1.7.2.3	Construct and Maintain Ports	X		
4.1.7.2.4	Construct and Maintain Railroad Facilities	X		
4.1.7.2.5	Construct and Expand Airfield Facilities	X		
4.1.7.2.6	Construct and Maintain Pipelines and Tank Farms	X		
4.1.7.2.7	Construct and Maintain Standard and Nonstandard Fixed Bridges	X		
4.1.7.3	Provide Engineer Construction Support	X	X	
4.1.7.4	Supply Mobile Electric Power	X	X	
4.1.7.5	Provide Facilities Engineering Support	X	X	
4.1.7.5.1	Provide Waste Management	X	X	
4.1.7.5.2	Acquire, Manage, and Dispose of Real Estate	X	X	
4.1.7.5.3	Provide Fire-Fighting Support	X	X	
4.1.7.5.4	Construct, Manage, Maintain Bases and Installations	X	X	
4.2	Provide Personnel Services Support	X	X	
4.2.1	Provide Human Resource Support	X	X	
4.2.1.1	Man the Force	X	X	
4.2.1.1.1	Perform Personnel Readiness Management	X	X	
4.2.1.1.2	Conduct Personnel Accounting and Strength Reporting	X	X	
4.2.1.1.2.1	Conduct Personnel Accounting	X	X	
4.2.1.1.2.2	Conduct Strength Reporting	X	X	
4.2.1.1.3	Provide Personnel Information Management	X	X	
4.2.1.1.4	Conduct Reception, Replacement, Return-to-Duty Operations, Rest and Recuperation and Redeployment Operations	X	X	
4.2.1.2	Provide Human Resource Services	X	X	
4.2.1.2.1	Conduct Casualty Operations	X	X	
4.2.1.2.2	Perform Essential Personnel Services	X	X	
4.2.1.2.2.1	Provide Identification Documents	X	X	
4.2.1.2.2.2	Operate Award and Decorations Programs	X	X	
4.2.1.2.2.3	Provide Promotions and Reduction Support	X	X	
4.2.1.2.2.4	Control Personnel Evaluations	X	X	
4.2.1.2.2.5	Operate Leave and Pass Program	X	X	
4.2.1.2.2.6	Complete Line of Duty Investigations	X	X	
4.2.1.2.2.7	Conduct Military Pay Transactions	X	X	
4.2.1.3	Provide Personnel Support	X	X	
4.2.1.3.1	Conduct Human Resource Programs	X	X	
4.2.1.3.2	Conduct Postal Operations	X	X	

AUTL #	Title	STAB	Civil SPT	Remarks
4.2.1.3.3	Provide Morale, Welfare, and Recreation and Community Support Activities	X	X	
4.2.1.3.4	Conduct Retention Operations	X	X	
4.2.1.4	Conduct Human Resource Planning and Operations	X	X	
4.2.1.4.1	Perform Human Resource Planning and Mission Preparation	X	X	
4.2.1.4.2	Operate Human Resource Command and Control Nodes	X	X	
4.2.2	Provide Financial Management Support	X	X	
4.2.2.1	Provide Support to the Procurement Process	X	X	
4.2.2.2	Provide Limited Pay Support	X	X	
4.2.2.3	Provide Disbursing Support	X	X	
4.2.2.4	Provide Accounting Support	X	X	
4.2.2.5	Provide Banking and Currency Support	X		
4.2.2.6	Develop Resource Requirements	X	X	
4.2.2.7	Provide Support to Identify, Acquire, Distribute and Control Funds	X	X	
4.2.2.8	Provide Support to Track, Analyze and Report Budget Execution	X	X	
4.2.2.9	Conduct Financial Management Planning and Operations	X	X	
4.2.3	Provide Legal Support	X	X	
4.2.3.1	Provide Military Judge Support	X		Installation task
4.2.3.2	Provide Trial Defense Support	X		Installation task
4.2.3.3	Provide International Law Support	X		Installation task
4.2.3.4	Provide Administrative and Civil Law Support	X	X	
4.2.3.5	Provide Contract and Fiscal Law Support	X	X	
4.2.3.6	Provide Claims Support	X	X	
4.2.3.7	Provide Legal Assistance	X	X	
4.2.4	Provide Religious Support Operations	X	X	
4.2.4.1	Deliver Religious Services	X	X	
4.2.4.2	Provide Spiritual Care and Counseling	X	X	
4.2.4.3	Provide Religious Support to the Command	X	X	
4.2.4.4	Provide Rites, Sacraments, and Ordinances	X	X	
4.2.4.5	Coordinate Military Religious Support	X	X	
4.2.4.6	Provide Religious Crisis Response	X	X	
4.2.4.7	Provide Religious Management and Administrative Support	X	X	
4.2.4.8	Provide Religious Education	X	X	
4.2.5	Provide Band Support	X	X	
4.3	Provide Health Service Support	X	X	
4.3.1	Provide Combat Casualty Care	X		
4.3.1.1	Provide Medical Treatment (Organic and Area Medical Support)	X	X	
4.3.1.2	Provide Hospitalization	X	X	
4.3.1.3	Provide Dental Services	X	X	
4.3.1.4	Provide Clinical Laboratory Services	X	X	
4.3.1.5	Provide Behavioral Health/Neuropsychiatric Treatment	X	X	
4.3.2	Provide Medical Evacuation (Air/Ground)	X	X	
4.3.3	Provide Medical Regulating Support	X	X	

AUTL #	Title	STAB	Civil SPT	Remarks
4.3.4	Provide Medical Logistics	X	X	
4.3.4.1	Provide Medical Equipment Maintenance and Repair	X	X	
4.3.4.2	Provide Optical Fabrication	X	X	
4.3.4.3	Supply Blood and Blood Products	X	X	
4.4	Conduct Internment/Resettlement Operations	X		
4.4.1	Perform Detainee Operations	X		
4.4.2	Perform Enemy Prisoner of War Operations	X		
4.4.3	Conduct Resettlement Operations	X		
5.1	Execute the Operations Process	X	X	
5.1.1	Plan Operations	X	X	
5.1.1.1	Conduct the Military Decision Making Process	X	X	
5.1.1.1.1	Receive the Mission	X	X	
5.1.1.1.2	Perform Mission Analysis	X	X	
5.1.1.1.3	Develop Courses of Action	X	X	
5.1.1.1.4	Analyze Courses of Action	X	X	
5.1.1.1.5	Compare Courses of Action	X	X	
5.1.1.1.6	Approve Course of Action	X	X	
5.1.1.1.7	Produce plans and orders	X	X	
5.1.1.2	Integrate Requirements and Capabilities	X	X	
5.1.1.3	Develop Commander's Critical Information Requirements Recommendations (CCIR)	X	X	
5.1.1.4	Establish Target Priorities	X		
5.1.1.5	Integrate Space Capabilities	X	X	
5.1.2	Prepare for Tactical Operations	X	X	
5.1.2.1	Establish Coordination and Liaison	X	X	
5.1.2.2	Perform Rehearsals	X	X	
5.1.2.3	Task Organize for Operations	X	X	
5.1.2.4	Revise the Plan	X	X	
5.1.2.5	Conduct Pre-operations Checks and Inspections	X	X	
5.1.2.6	Integrate New Units and Soldiers into the Force	X	X	
5.1.3	Execute Tactical Operations	X	X	
5.1.3.1	Perform Ongoing Functions	X	X	
5.1.3.1.1	Focus Assets on Decisive Operation	X	X	
5.1.3.1.2	Adjust CCIR and EEFI	X	X	
5.1.3.1.3	Adjust Graphic Control Measures	X	X	
5.1.3.1.4	Manage Sustainment Force Positioning	X	X	
5.1.3.1.5	Manage Use and Assignment of Terrain	X	X	
5.1.3.1.6	Maintain Synchronization	X	X	
5.1.3.1.7	Control Tactical Airspace	X		FAA maintains Airspace Control; Military may do airspace coordination
5.1.3.1.8	Control a Tactical Insertion of Forces	X		
5.1.3.2	Perform Planned Actions, Sequels, and Branches	X	X	
5.1.3.3	Adjust Resources, Concept of Operations, or Mission	X	X	
5.1.3.4	Synchronize Actions to Produce Maximum Effective Application of Military Power	X	X	
5.1.3.4.1	Coordinate Actions Within a Staff Section	X	X	
5.1.3.4.2	Synchronize Actions Among Staff Sections (Coordinating, Special, and Personal)	X	X	

AUTL #	Title	STAB	Civil SPT	Remarks
5.1.3.4.3	Review Orders of Subordinate Organizations	X	X	
5.1.3.4.4	Synchronize Force Operations	X	X	
5.1.3.5	Conduct Transitions	X	X	
5.1.4	Assess Tactical Situation and Operations	X	X	
5.1.4.1	Monitor Situation or Progress of Operations	X	X	
5.1.4.2	Evaluate Situation or Operation	X	X	
5.1.4.2.1	Develop Running Estimates	X	X	
5.1.4.2.2	Evaluate Progress	X	X	
5.2	Conduct Command Post Operations	X	X	
5.2.1	Conduct Command Post Operations	X	X	
5.2.1.1	Organize People, Information Management Procedures, and Equipment and Facilities	X	X	
5.2.1.2	Organize Command Post to Support Command and Control Functions	X	X	
5.2.1.3	Establish or Revise Standing Operating Procedures	X	X	
5.2.2	Displace the Command Post	X	X	
5.2.2.1	Prepare the Command Post for Displacement	X	X	
5.2.2.2	Select, Reconnoiter, and Evaluate the New Command Post Location	X	X	
5.2.2.3	Occupy the New Command Post Location	X	X	
5.2.2.4	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement	X	X	
5.2.3	Execute Sleep Plans	X	X	
5.2.4	Manage Stress	X	X	
5.2.5	Maintain Continuity of Command and Control	X	X	
5.3	Integrate Information Superiority Contributors	X	X	
5.3.1	Integrate Information Engagement Capabilities	X	X	
5.3.1.1	Conduct Leader and Soldier Engagement	X	X	
5.3.1.2	Conduct Psychological Operations	X		
5.3.1.3	Provide Visual Information Support	X	X	
5.3.1.4	Conduct Operations in Support of Diplomatic Efforts	X		
5.3.2	Conduct Military Deception	X		
5.3.3	Facilitate Situational Understanding Through Knowledge Management	X	X	
5.3.4	Manage Tactical Information and Data	X	X	
5.3.5	Establish a Tactical Information Network and System	X	X	Add condition / task: establish interoperable systems with civilian responders
5.3.5.1	Conduct Network Operations	X	X	
5.3.5.2	Collect Relevant Information	X	X	
5.3.5.2.1	Collect Friendly Force Information Requirements	X	X	
5.3.5.2.2	Integrate Intelligence Products	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
5.3.5.2.3	Assess quality of Collected Information	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
5.3.5.2.4	Process Relevant Information to Create a COP	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
5.3.5.2.5	Display a COP Tailored to User Needs	X	X	
5.3.5.2.6	Store Relevant Information	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support

AUTL #	Title	STAB	Civil SPT	Remarks
5.3.5.2.7	Disseminate COP and Execution Information	X	X	
5.3.5.2.8	Communicate with Non-English Speaking Forces and Agencies	X		
5.3.6	Conduct Electromagnetic Spectrum Management Operations	X		
5.3.6.1	Perform Spectrum Management	X	X	
5.3.6.2	Perform Frequency Assignment	X	X	
5.3.6.3	Perform Host Nation Electromagnetic Spectrum Coordination	X		
5.3.6.4	Monitor Spectrum Management Policy Adherence	X	X	
5.4	Conduct Civil-Military Operations	X	X	
5.4.1	Provide Interface/Liaison between U.S. Military Forces and Local Authorities/Nongovernmental Organizations	X	X	
5.4.2	Locate and identify Population Centers	X	X	
5.4.3	Identify Local Resources/Facilities/Support	X	X	
5.4.4	Advise Commanders of Obligations to Civilian Population	X	X	
5.4.5	Conduct Negotiations With and Between Other Governmental and Nongovernmental Organizations	X	X	
5.4.6	Conduct Civil Affairs Operations	X	X	
5.4.6.1	Provide Public Legal Support	X		
5.4.6.1.1	Provide Support to Indigenous judicial Systems	X		
5.4.6.1.2	Provide Property Control Support	X		
5.4.6.2	Provide Economic and Commerce Support	X		
5.4.6.2.1	Provide Food and Agricultural Support	X		
5.4.6.2.2	Provide Civilian Supply Support	X	X	
5.4.6.3	Provide Infrastructure Support	X	X	
5.4.6.3.1	Provide Public Communications Support	X	X	
5.4.6.3.2	Provide Public Transportation Support	X	X	
5.4.6.3.3	Provide Public Works and Facilities Support	X	X	USACE
5.4.6.4	Provide Government Support	X	X	
5.4.6.4.1	Provide Public Safety Support	X	X	
5.4.6.4.2	Provide Public Administration Support	X		
5.4.6.5	Provide Health and Welfare Support	X	X	
5.4.6.5.1	Provide Public Health Support	X	X	
5.4.6.5.2	Provide Cultural Relations Support	X		
5.4.6.5.3	Resettle Dislocated Civilians	X	X	
5.4.6.5.4	Provide Arts, Monuments, and Archives Support	X		
5.4.6.6	Provide Public Education and Information Support	X		
5.4.6.6.1	Provide Public Education Support	X		
5.4.6.6.2	Provide Civil Information Support	X	X	
5.5	Execute Command Programs	X	X	
5.5.1	Support the Commander's Leadership Responsibilities for Morale, Welfare, and Discipline	X	X	
5.5.1.1	Determine Morale and Moral Climate of Organization	X	X	
5.5.1.2	Establish and Maintain Discipline	X	X	
5.5.1.2.1	Provide Law and Order	X	X	
5.5.1.2.2	Perform Law Enforcement	X	X	
5.5.1.2.3	Conduct Criminal Investigations	X	X	

AUTL #	Title	STAB	Civil SPT	Remarks
5.5.1.2.4	Intern U.S. Military Prisoners	X		Installation task in US
5.5.1.2.5	Provide Customs Support	X	X	
5.5.1.2.6	Provide Straggler Movement Control	X		
5.5.1.3	Provide Military Justice Support	X	X	
5.5.1.4	Provide Operational Law	X	X	
5.5.1.5	Train Subordinates and Units	X	X	
5.5.1.5.1	Develop Mission Essential Task List	X	X	
5.5.1.5.2	Plan Training	X	X	
5.5.1.5.3	Prepare for Training	X	X	
5.5.1.5.4	Execute Training	X	X	
5.5.1.5.5	Assess Training	X	X	
5.5.2	Preserve Historical Documentation and Artifacts	X	X	
5.5.2.1	Collect Historical Documentation and Artifacts	X	X	
5.5.2.2	Protect Historical Documents and Artifacts	X	X	
5.5.2.3	Prepare Historical Reports of Military Operations	X	X	
5.5.2.4	Ship Historical Documents and Artifacts	X	X	
5.5.3	Conduct Official Ceremonial, Musical, Public, and Special Events	X	X	
5.5.4	Develop a Command Environmental Program	X	X	
5.6	Integrate Space Operations	X	X	
5.6.1	Provide Space Force Enhancement	X	X	
5.6.1.1	Provide Space Based Position, Navigation, and Timing Support	X	X	
5.6.1.2	Provide Reconnaissance and Surveillance Support	X	X	IAW intelligence oversight laws for civil support
5.6.1.3	Provide Satellite Communications Support	X	X	
5.6.1.4	Provide Weather and Environmental Monitoring Support	X	X	
5.6.3	Provide Army Space Control	X	X	
5.6.4	Provide Space Situational Awareness	X	X	
5.6.5	Coordinate Army Space Capabilities	X	X	
5.7	Conduct Public Affairs Operations	X	X	
5.7.1	Plan Public Affairs Operations	X	X	
5.7.2	Execute Information Strategies	X	X	
5.7.3	Facilitate Media Operations	X	X	
5.7.4	Maintain Community Relations	X	X	
5.7.5	Conduct Internal Information Program	X	X	
5.7.6	Implement Higher Headquarters Public Affairs Themes	X	X	
6.2	Conduct Personnel Recovery Operations	X	X	
6.2.1	Ensure Personnel Recovery Readiness during Pre-Mobilization	X		
6.2.1.1	Coordinate Code of Conduct, SERE (Survival, Escape., Resistance, and Escape) and Theater-related Personnel Recovery Education and Training	X		
6.2.1.2	Plan Personnel Recovery Coordination Cell/Personnel Recovery Officer Capability	X		
6.2.2	Perform Personnel Recovery Related Force Projection Tasks	X		
6.2.2.1	Conduct Personnel Recovery Related Mobilization Activities	X		

AUTL #	Title	STAB	Civil SPT	Remarks
6.2.2.2	Deploy Personnel Recovery Capability and Build Combat Power Through Reception, Staging, Onward Movement and Integration	X		
6.2.2.3	Sustain Personnel Recovery Capabilities	X		
6.2.2.4	Redeploy Personnel Recovery Capabilities	X		
6.2.3	Plan Personnel Recovery Operations	X		
6.2.3.1	Conduct Unassisted Personnel Recovery	X		
6.2.3.2	Conduct Immediate Personnel Recovery	X		
6.2.3.3	Conduct Deliberate Personnel Recovery	X		
6.2.3.4	Conduct External Supported Personnel Recovery	X		
6.2.3.5	Conduct Army Special Operations Forces (ARSOF) Personnel Recovery	X		
6.2.4	Provide Personnel Recovery Support to Civil SAR on a Non-Interference Basis	X	X	
6.2.5	Conduct Homeland Security Personnel Recovery Operations		X	
6.3	Conduct Information Protection	X	X	
6.3.1	Provide Information Assurance	X	X	
6.3.1.1	Ensure Information Security	X	X	
6.3.1.2	Employ Communication Security	X	X	
6.3.1.3	Maintain Emission Security	X		
6.3.2	Perform Computer Network Defense	X	X	
6.3.3	Perform Electronic Protection Actions	X	X	
6.3.4	Conduct Electronic Protection	X	X	
6.4	Perform Fratricide Avoidance	X		
Art 6.4.1	Detect and Establish Positive Identification of Friend, Foe, and Noncombatants	X	X	
6.4.2	Maintain Constant Situational Awareness	X	X	
6.5	Conduct Operational Area Security	X	X	
6.5.1	Conduct Area and Base Security Operations	X	X	
6.5.2	Conduct Critical Installations and Facilities Security	X	X	
6.5.3	Establish Local Security	X	X	
6.5.3.1	Establish Guard Posts	X	X	
6.5.3.2	Establish Checkpoints	X	X	
6.5.3.3	Establish Perimeter Security	X	X	
6.5.3.4	Establish Observation Posts	X	X	
6.5.3.5	Control Access to Equipment, Installations, Materiel, and Documents	X	X	
6.5.3.6	Employ Intrusion Detection Devices	X	X	
6.5.3.7	Conduct Command Post Security	X	X	
6.5.4	Provide Protective Services for Selected Individuals	X		
6.5.5	Conduct Response Force Operations	X		
6.5.5.1	Conduct Battle Handover From Base/Base Cluster Security Forces to Response Forces	X		
6.5.5.2	Conduct Battle Handover From Response Forces to Tactical Combat Forces	X		
6.5.6	Secure Supply Routes and Convoys	X		
6.5.6.1	Conduct Convoy Security Operations	X		
6.5.6.2	Conduct Route Security Operations	X		
6.6	Apply Antiterrorism Activities	X	X	

AUTL #	Title	STAB	Civil SPT	Remarks
6.6.1	Identify Potential Terrorist Threats and Other Threat Activities	X	X	
6.6.2	Reduce Vulnerabilities to Terrorist Acts/Attack	X	X	
6.6.3	React to a Terrorist Incident	X	X	
6.7	Conduct Survivability Operations	X		
6.7.1	Protect Against Enemy Hazards within the AO	X		
6.7.1.1	Protect Individuals and Systems	X		
6.7.1.2	Prepare Fighting Positions	X		
6.7.1.2.1	Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions	X		
6.7.1.2.2	Construct Crew-Served Weapon Fighting Positions	X		
6.7.1.2.3	Construct Individual Fighting Positions	X		
6.7.1.3	Prepare Protective Positions	X		
6.7.1.3.1	Construct Protective Earth Walls and Revetments	X	X	
6.7.1.4	Employ Protective Equipment	X	X	
6.7.1.4.1	Install Bridge Protective Devices	X		
6.7.1.4.2	Install or Remove Protective Obstacles	X	X	
6.7.1.5	React to Enemy Direct Fire	X	X	
6.7.1.6	React to Enemy Indirect Fire	X		
6.7.1.7	Conduct Improvised Explosive Device Defeat Operations	X		
6.7.1.7.1	Plan for Possible IED Threats	X		
6.7.1.7.2	Prepare for IED Defeat (Predict, Detect, Prevent, Neutralize, and Mitigate)	X		
6.7.1.7.3	Prepare for a Suspected IED Attack Against Static Position	X		
6.7.1.7.4	React to IED	X		
6.7.2	Disperse Tactical Forces	X		
6.7.3	Conduct Security Operations	X	X	
6.7.4	Conduct Actions to Control Pollution and Hazardous Materials	X	X	
6.8	Provide Force Health Protection	X	X	
6.8.1	Provide Preventive Medicine Support	X	X	
6.8.1.1	Perform Medical Surveillance	X	X	
6.8.1.2	Perform Occupational and Environmental Health Hazard Surveillance	X	X	
6.8.2	Provide Veterinary Services	X	X	
6.8.3	Provide Combat and Operational Stress Control Prevention	X	X	
6.8.4	Provide Preventive Dentistry Support	X	X	
6.8.5	Provide Area Medical Laboratory Services	X	X	
6.9	Conduct Chemical, Biological, Radiological, Nuclear and High Yield Explosives Operations	X	X	
6.9.1	Support Threat Reduction Cooperation	X		
6.9.4	Provide Chemical, Biological, Radiological, and Nuclear (CBRN) Passive Defense	X	X	
6.9.4.1	Provide Chemical, Biological, Radiological, Nuclear (CBRN) Protection to Friendly Forces	X	X	
6.9.4.1.1	Employ Contamination Avoidance	X	X	
6.9.4.1.2	Identify Chemical, Biological, Radiological, Nuclear (CBRN) Hazards	X	X	
6.9.4.1.3	Warn Personnel/Units of Contaminated Areas	X	X	

AUTL #	Title	STAB	Civil SPT	Remarks
6.9.4.1.4	Report Chemical, Biological, Radiological, Nuclear (CBRN) Hazards Throughout the AO	X	X	
6.9.4.2	Decontaminate Personnel and Systems	X	X	
6.9.4.2.1	Perform Immediate Decontamination	X	X	
6.9.4.2.2	Perform Operational Decontamination	X	X	
6.9.4.2.3	Perform Thorough Decontamination	X	X	
6.9.4.2.4	Perform Area Decontamination	X	X	
6.9.4.2.5	Perform Patient Decontamination	X	X	
6.9.5	Conduct Chemical, Biological, Radiological, Nuclear, and High Yield Explosive (CBRNE) Consequence Management	X	X	
6.9.5.1	Provide logistical and engineering support of operations for WMD protection	X	X	
6.9.5.2	Handle, process, store, and transport CBRN contaminants	X	X	
6.9.5.3	Handle, process, store, and transport CBRN-contaminated human remains	X	X	
6.9.5.4	Protect against exposure and effects of high-yield explosives	X	X	
6.9.5.5	Conduct Tactical CBRNE CM Crisis Action Planning (CAP)	X	X	
6.9.5.6	Assess the CBRNE operations environment	X	X	
6.9.5.7	Conduct tactical CBRNE CM C2	X	X	
6.9.5.8	Perform CBRNE incident/hazard risk communication	X	X	
6.9.5.9	Establish and maintain access/egress controls and hazard zone perimeter	X	X	
6.9.5.10	Conduct CBRNE victim and casualty search, rescue, and extraction	X	X	
6.9.5.11	Provide temporary housing, processing operations, and evacuation of affected population	X	X	
6.9.5.12	Conduct decontamination operations	X	X	
6.9.5.13	Isolate, quarantine, and manage potentially contaminated/infectious human and animal population	X	X	
6.9.7.5	Plan for mitigation of potential tactical WMD elimination collateral effects.	X		
6.9.7.7	Exercise command and control in the preparation for and conduct of WMD elimination operations.	X		
6.9.7.12	Conduct security support for WMD elimination			
6.9.7.13	Search facilities and spaces for WMD materials.	X	X	
6.9.7.17	Contain WMD-related material for final disposition to include defeat, neutralization, storage, or transport.	X	X	
6.9.7.18	Conduct neutralization of suspect WMD-related agent or material.	X	X	
6.9.7.19	Store WMD-related material for final disposition.	X	X	
6.9.7.20	Transport WMD-related material for final disposition.	X	X	
6.9.7.21	Gather forensic evidence in support of elimination mission.	X		
6.9.7.22	Maintain control of materials related to WMD elimination mission.	X		
6.9.7.23	Establish tactical containment and temporary safe storage of suspect materials.	X	X	
6.10	Employ Safety Techniques	X	X	
6.10.1	Conduct Composite Risk Management	X	X	

AUTL #	Title	STAB	Civil SPT	Remarks
6.10.2	Develop and Implement Command Safety Program	X	X	
6.10.3	Minimize Safety Risks	X	X	
6.11	Implement Operations Security	X	X	Select units, NSSE
6.11.1	Conduct Operations Security	X	X	Select units, NSSE
6.11.1.1	Identify EEFI	X	X	Select units, NSSE
6.11.1.2	Apply Appropriate OPSEC Measures	X	X	Select units, NSSE
6.11.2	Implement Physical Security Procedures	X	X	
6.11.2.1	Employ Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoy Techniques	X		
6.11.2.2	Employ Noise, Light, Thermal, and Physical Evidence Controls	X		
6.11.3.1	Conduct Counterintelligence Operations	X		
6.11.3.3	Perform Counterintelligence	X		
6.12	Provide Explosive Ordnance Disposal Protection Support	X	X	
6.12.1	Conduct Unexploded Ordnance and Explosive Remnants of War Operations	X	X	
6.12.4	Conduct Explosive Ordnance Chemical Operations	X	X	
6.12.5	Conduct Weapons of Mass Destruction Operations	X	X	
6.12.6	Conduct IED/UXO Protection	X	X	UXO support provided by EOD
6.12.6.1	Provide Chemical, Biological, Radiological, Nuclear and High Yield Explosive Site Surveys	X	X	
6.12.6.2	Provide Explosive Ordnance Disposal Support to Weapons Storage Site Inspections	X	X	
6.11.6.3	Provide Explosive Ordnance Disposal Support to Amnesty and Weapons Buy Back Programs	X		
6.12.6.5	Conduct Technical Intelligence on unexploded explosive ordnance; Improved Explosive Devices; and Chemical, Biological, Radiological and Nuclear Hazards	X	X	EOD support, with DOD support
6.12.6.6	Conduct Crater, Fragmentation and Post blast Analysis	X		
6.12.7	Respond to Accidents or Incidents involving Military Chemical, Biological, Radiological, and Nuclear Munitions	X	X	
6.12.8	Provide Explosive Ordnance Disposal Sustainment Support	X	X	
6.12.8.3	Provide Explosive Ordnance Disposal Support to the Defense Environment Restoration Program		X	
6.12.8.4	Provide Explosive Ordnance Disposal Support to Homeland Security Operations		X	
6.12.8.5	Provide Explosive Ordnance Disposal Support to Civil Authorities	X	X	
6.12.8.6	Provide Specific Training to Personnel on Explosive Ordnance	X	X	
6.12.8.7	Provide Explosive Ordnance Disposal Support to the Secret Service		X	
7.3.1	Establish Civil Security	X	X	Selected measures only
7.3.1.1	Restore and Maintain Order	X	X	Civil disturbance operations
7.3.1.2	Conduct Disarmament, Demobilization, and Reintegration of ex-Combatants	X		
7.3.1.2.1	Forcibly Separate Belligerents	X		
7.3.1.2.2	Disarm Belligerents	X		

AUTL #	Title	STAB	Civil SPT	Remarks
7.3.1.2.3	Demobilize Belligerents	X		
7.3.1.2.4	Establish Protected Areas	X		
7.3.1.3	Establish Border Patrol, Border Security, and Freedom of Movement	X	X	Select measures only
7.3.1.4	Protect Reconstruction and Stabilization Personnel and Facilities	X	X	Select measures only
7.3.2	Establish Civil Control	X	X	Select measures only
7.3.2.1	Restore Public Safety and Order	X	X	Select measures only
7.3.2.2	Establish Interim Criminal Justice System	X		
7.3.2.3	Perform Host Nation Police Training and Support	X		
7.3.2.4	Support Judicial Reform	X		
7.3.2.5	Support Dispute Resolution Process	X		
7.3.2.6	Support Human Rights Initiatives	X		
7.3.2.7	Support War Crimes Courts and Tribunals	X		
7.3.3	Restore Essential Services	X	X	
7.3.3.1	Provide Essential Civil Services	X	X	
7.3.3.2	Control Movement of Dislocated Civilians	X	X	
7.3.3.3	Resettle Dislocated Civilians	X		
7.3.3.4	Conduct Populace and Resource Control	X	X	
7.3.3.5	Support Famine Prevention and Emergency Food Relief Programs	X		
7.3.3.6	Support Shelter and Non Food Relief Programs	X	X	
7.3.3.7	Conduct Medical Stability Operations	X		
7.3.3.8	Provide Public Health Support	X	X	
7.3.4	Support Governance	X		
7.3.4.1	Support Transitional Administration	X		
7.3.4.2	Support Development of Local Governance	X		
7.3.4.3	Support Elections	X		
7.3.5	Support Economic and Infrastructure Development	X		
7.3.5.1	Support Economic Development and Stabilization	X		
7.3.5.2	Support Private Sector Development	X		
7.3.5.3	Protect Natural Resources and Environment	X	X	
7.3.5.4	Support Infrastructure Reconstruction Programs	X	X	
7.4.1	Provide Support in Response to Disaster or Terrorist Attack	X	X	
7.4.1.1	Provide Disaster Relief	X	X	
7.4.1.2	Provide Humanitarian Relief	X	X	
7.4.2	Provide Support to Civil Law Enforcement	X	X	
7.4.2.1	Support Department of Justice Counterterrorism	X	X	
7.4.2.2	Conduct Civil Disturbance Operations	X	X	
7.4.2.3	Provide General Support to Civil Law Enforcement	X	X	
7.4.3	Provide Other Support as Required		X	
7.6.1.5	Military Support to Counterdrug Operations	X	X	
7.6.1.5.1	Detection and Monitoring of Drug Shipments	X	X	
7.6.1.5.2	Provide C4 & ISR to Counterdrug Efforts	X	X	
7.6.1.5.3	Provide Planning Support to Counterdrug Efforts	X		
7.6.1.5.4	Provide Logistic Support to Counterdrug Efforts	X	X	
7.6.1.5.5	Provide Training Support to Counterdrug Efforts	X	X	
7.6.1.5.6	Provide Manpower for Counterdrug Efforts	X	X	

AUTL #	Title	STAB	Civil SPT	Remarks
7.6.1.5.7	R&D Acquisition Support to Counterdrug Efforts	X		

Appendix K

Media Considerations

This appendix provides an overview of the interaction between the media and the military during a disaster or other serious incident. It emphasizes interagency coordination, coordination with the media, and general considerations for commanders and Soldiers when dealing with the domestic media.

K-1. Modern news reporting provides valuable information to citizens before, during, and after a civil disaster or other civil support event. The news media are a key, independent asset that can assist or impede civil support. Army leadership and public affairs planners, in coordination with the lead federal authority, coordinate closely with the news media and help them obtain information to inform the public accurately and rapidly. Military public affairs activities support the lead federal and state agencies and conform to their guidance. Civil support by the military is secondary to the overall task of the supported government leader. Therefore public affairs officers establish and maintain close contact with the information director supporting the Federal and State coordinating officers.

INTERAGENCY COORDINATION

K-2. News media organizations collect and report information from virtually any location. Unlike journalists reporting on combat operations, local and national media representatives report freely on DSCA, based on all available sources. Interagency coordination of public affairs information by the lead civil authority ensures accurate information is communicated to the news media. Civil and Army leadership, public affairs officers, and Soldiers must understand the primary mission and end state and how this information is conveyed to the media. Every organization and individual working for the government, including the Army, should coordinate messages to ensure that they are accurate and confined to their sphere of responsibility when dealing with the media.

K-3. Within civil support operations, Army leadership and public affairs officers (PAOs) operate in an interagency environment with emphasis on unity of effort. The lead civil authority establishes guidance for release of public affairs information. This follows the guidelines within Emergency Support Function #15 for public affairs. Generally a local and federal joint information center is established by to provide accurate and timely information. The joint information centers are usually collocated with the state or local emergency operations center. Army PAOs work in concert with the joint information centers.

K-4. To the public, a Soldier in a camouflage uniform is in the Army; most citizens do not understand the differences between the National Guard and Regular Army in domestic situations. Therefore, Regular Army and State National Guard PAOs coordinate closely with one another. They discuss common ground and differences before speaking to the news media. While working together, regular Army and National Guard PAOs ensure compliance with the doctrine and procedures contained within NIMS and the NRF. The NRF

COORDINATION WITH THE NEWS MEDIA

K-5. Most news media organizations are willing to work with the Army to convey vital information to the public. Soldiers should understand how the media function and be prepared to help news media organizations obtain accurate information on military DSCA to inform the public. Experience garnered in combat dealing with the media provides useful lessons, but may need review as part of an ongoing DSCA operation. A first rule of thumb is to assume that the domestic media will “get the story” sooner rather than later, so they might as well have the whole story initially. The second rule of thumb is to “stick to your lane” and discuss only those things for which the unit is responsible and has experienced. Avoid speculation or opinion, and always refer the media to the supported agency responsible for function for additional information.

K-6. Members of the media will be present in large numbers during the initial stages of any disaster or civil disturbance. Depending on the situation, Army leaders assist members of the media to the extent they can, without impeding higher priority work. For example, the Army may provide shower facilities, a cup of coffee, a place to park, or other essential needs for media personnel. Other needs include latrines, meals, power generation, lighting, sleeping facilities, office areas with phone and internet access, access to plans and operations centers (when security is not jeopardized), and involvement in certain planning events. Before providing the media with any support not readily available to citizens and relief workers, Commanders obtain clearance from their controlling headquarters. If media control procedures require accreditation in order to work in the area, local commanders should assist members of the media with getting that accreditation from the issuing authority, normally the local disaster coordination center.

PROVIDING APPROPRIATE INFORMATION

K-7. Different media outlets, such as television, radio, internet, newspapers and magazines, have varying information requirements. Media information and packaging requirements are discussed below, to enable Soldiers to help the media get accurate information to the public on time.

K-8. Television and commercial radio are the two media systems used the most by the general public for dissemination of domestic disaster information. People often react to warning sirens with disbelief until confirmation through radio or television is obtained. Television and radio usually cover the same types of information. Packaging methods are different. For example, the television medium prefers visuals; and a telephone conversation is not an adequate substitute. Television is predisposed to a headline approach that emphasizes succinct, easily remembered twenty-to-thirty-second statements. Radio reaches audiences almost anywhere and tends to broadcast information almost as soon as received. Radio reporters generally limit reports to a short duration and are selective in detail for civil disasters or other significant events. These media are essential for successful dissemination of high priority information to the public.

K-9. Generally, print news does not have the same time constraints experienced by radio and television. Therefore it allows for more background and in-depth material. Print media reports include analysis and commentary, and stories may build day-after-day as the disaster progresses. They want depth and graphics. With the use of the internet, many newspapers are now much like television and radio in capability. It enables rapid dissemination of real time domestic disaster information worldwide. The Web is also used to collect information about an incident for later reference. In general, information packaging for the internet is a combination of the material used by television, radio, newspapers, and magazines. During disaster support missions, Soldiers remain aware that information they send with cell phone, email, or internet links may not remain private. It may be intercepted or shared beyond the intended recipient.

K-10. Local news organizations are interested in all phases of the actual disaster since they may have long-range, home-town concerns. They attempt to provide specific information to area residents to help them face the disaster: warning information, evacuation advice, where help is available, and how long utilities are expected to be out of service. National news media organizations are more concerned with the overall picture, such as the scope of the impact, the number of dead and injured, and the activities of federal response organizations. National news media concern with long-term recovery from the disaster is unlikely. Almost all reporters present at a disaster, regardless of their news medium, share information with one another. Therefore, the Army must coordinate with the lead federal agency to give accurate and consistent information.

REFERRING QUESTIONS TO THE JOINT INFORMATION CENTER

K-11. Soldiers should anticipate a mixture ranging from very credible reporting by experienced teams (e.g. the Weather Channel) through "niche" outlets focused on the outlandish. Ideally, every Soldier understands the media guidance provided by the joint information center. However, as the operation continues around the clock, Soldiers on the street may not receive timely guidance. Therefore leaders at each level should remind their subordinates to limit their discussion to their personal experiences. "What did you see? Were you scared? How did you feel after you rescued the animals?" Leaders should also anticipate that media members will ask questions that Soldiers should always defer to the controlling civil authorities. Common examples include:

- Casualty Information. How many were killed or injured? Of those injured, how serious is their condition? How many escaped? How was escape hindered? Were any of the victims prominent persons? Where were they taken? What was the disposition of the dead?
- Property Damage. What is the estimated value of property loss? What kinds of structures are involved? Did the damage include any particularly important property (e.g., historical buildings, art treasures, homes of prominent figures)? Is other property threatened? What measures are being undertaken to protect property? Is the damage covered by insurance? Has this area been damaged by disasters before?
- Response and Relief Activities. Who discovered the emergency? Who summoned the alarm? How quickly were response units on the scene? What agencies responded? How many are engaged in the response? What acts of heroism occurred? How was the emergency kept from spreading? How are the displaced and homeless being cared for?
- Other characteristics of the Crisis. Did you hear about any blasts or explosions? Do you think this was terrorism? Collapse of structures? Crimes or violence? Attempts at escape or self rescue? What was the extent of the disaster? The duration? Number of spectators? Crowd problems? Were there other unusual happenings? What accompanying accidents have occurred? What were the resulting effects (such as anxiety, stress) on the families and survivors?
- Causes of the Disaster. Were there any previous indications of danger? Could the disaster have been prevented? How? (Questions about blame are more likely to surface in technological disasters such as nuclear or other hazardous materials accidents). Is there a coroner's inquest? Lawsuits? Insurance company actions? Criminal investigation?

K-12. In addition to inappropriate questions, Soldiers should be prepared to deal with inappropriate behavior. Most members of the media are experienced professionals and very good at their jobs. Occasionally the media oversteps its limits and Soldiers should be prepared to deal professionally with the situation before it becomes a major news story in itself. Considerations include:

- Police or National Guard forces should intercede to control members of the media whenever their presence interferes with mission accomplishment. If time permits, coordinate with the incident commander for assistance. If external assistance is not available, the unit leaders should confer with the media and ask them to modify their activity to allow the Soldiers to complete their mission. Unless life or limb is at risk, avoid using any level of force.
- Never attempt to seize cameras or other media equipment. That is a task for civilian law enforcement.
- Remember that the rights of citizens outweigh the rights of the press. Whenever the activities of the press appear to upset citizens be prepared to offer assistance to all parties. Citizens view members of the military as neutral parties and the respect that media and citizens give them can diffuse emotional situations.
- In a major disaster, the press is exhausted just as Soldiers are. Remind Soldiers that the media are also professionals with an important job and that they will bond with fellow professionals. Be courteous, and offer hospitality if possible. Keep in mind that the American media has an underlying affection for Soldiers and Marines; it’s the military bureaucracy that tends to draw their ire.

BASIC CONSIDERATIONS FOR IMPROVING NEWS COVERAGE

K-13. The news media are more effective when their personnel understand the nature of the disaster and what information may be communicated to the public. Army leaders and PAOs work with the media to help them understand what information the public requires during civil disasters. For example, newscasters may be encouraged not to withhold news information, warnings, and instructions to the public for fear of causing panic. Evidence indicates the public is capable of handling facts.

- The news media may know that a disaster warning is less likely to be taken seriously if it is followed by resumption of normal programming.
- Newscasters may know the importance of announcing the areas not hit by the disaster. The effect of this information may be a reduction of the number of calls by persons who believe they have loved ones in the impact zone.

- Reporters may know that acquisition of precise information and accurate figures on deaths, injuries, and damage in the initial aftermath of a disaster is unrealistic.
- Previously inaccurate information that was conveyed to the public is corrected as soon as possible.

BASIC MEDIA GUIDELINES FOR SOLDIERS

K-14. Some basic guidelines for media contact include:

- Commanders or senior staff should be ready for interviews. These interviews serve as opportunities to ensure the public receives accurate, timely, and useful information concerning the Army's response to the situation.
- Use simple, concise language free of military jargon and acronyms.
- Soldiers doing their duty always make a good impression. When questioned, try to ignore the cameras and talk directly to the reporter. They remove sunglasses and headgear if appropriate. They use appropriate posture and gestures.
- Soldiers should pause and think before answering a question. They answer questions accurately, but not necessarily instantly. Answer one question at a time.
- If a question seems unclear, a Soldier asks the reporter to rephrase it.
- Assume everything is on the record.
- Soldiers should be friendly but businesslike. The interviewer chooses the questions; the Solder chooses the answers.
- Soldiers speak about what they know. If he or she doesn't know the answer, the Soldier's reply is, "I don't know." When possible, Soldiers direct a reporter to the most appropriate individual with the required knowledge.
- It is never appropriate to lie to the media.
- A Soldier does not divulge or confirm classified information even when a reporter may have knowledge of such information.

MEDIA CARDS

K-15. Media cards include the basic information Soldiers are required to know for dealing with news media organizations. The PAO is responsible for their development. Items to include in a media card are:

- The appropriate person to contact and how to contact him or her if a reporter arrives in the unit's area.
- Responsibilities of a media escort.
- What information can and cannot be discussed.
- When to allow a media interview.
- How to treat reporters.
- How to conduct an interview.
- The best techniques to use in telling the correct information.

1 .

Glossary

Revised before Publication; terms and acronyms will be used in the final version of FM 3-28 listed in the DSCA EXORD.

SECTION I – ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS

SECTION II – TERMS

***all-hazards**

In the context of emergency preparedness, any possible incident, natural or manmade, that warrants action to protect life, property, the environment, public health or safety, and minimize disruptions of government, social, or economic activities.

References

Index (Chapter Title)

F

first, 1-1

M

main, 1-1

S

second, 1-1

1